



**unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Notes
&
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Questions**

Version 4

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Notes

Date: 2020-05-01

Version: 4

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Questions

Date: 2020-04-24

Version: 3

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories

Date: 2020-04-24

Version: 8

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Notes

Copyright © 2020 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License (CC BY-SA). To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from <https://openbiblestories.org>". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at <https://unfoldingword.org/contact/>.

Table of Contents

Open Bible Stories Study Notes & Open Bible Stories Study Questions	7
A Guide to Using the Stories in the OBS	8
1. The Creation	9
Study Notes	9
Study Questions	26
2. Sin Enters the World	28
Study Notes	28
Study Questions	41
3. The Flood	43
Study Notes	43
Study Questions	60
4. God's Covenant with Abraham	62
Study Notes	62
Study Questions	72
5. The Son of Promise	74
Study Notes	74
Study Questions	85
6. God Provides for Isaac	87
Study Notes	87
Study Questions	95
7. God Blesses Jacob	97
Study Notes	97
Study Questions	108
8. God Saves Joseph and His Family	110
Study Notes	110
Study Questions	126
9. God Calls Moses	128
Study Notes	128
Study Questions	144
10. The Ten Plagues	146
Study Notes	146
Study Questions	159
11. The Passover	161
Study Notes	161
Study Questions	170
12. The Exodus	172
Study Notes	172
Study Questions	187
13. God's Covenant with Israel	189
Study Notes	189
Study Questions	205
14. Wandering in the Wilderness	207

Study Notes	207
Study Questions	223
15. The Promised Land	225
Study Notes	225
Study Questions	239
16. The Deliverers	241
Study Notes	241
Study Questions	260
17. God's Covenant with David	262
Study Notes	262
Study Questions	277
18. The Divided Kingdom	279
Study Notes	279
Study Questions	293
19. The Prophets	295
Study Notes	295
Study Questions	314
20. The Exile and Return	316
Study Notes	316
Study Questions	330
21. God Promises the Messiah	332
Study Notes	332
Study Questions	348
22. The Birth of John	350
Study Notes	350
Study Questions	358
23. The Birth of Jesus	360
Study Notes	360
Study Questions	371
24. John Baptizes Jesus	373
Study Notes	373
Study Questions	383
25. Satan Tempts Jesus	385
Study Notes	385
Study Questions	394
26. Jesus Starts His Ministry	396
Study Notes	396
Study Questions	407
27. The Story of the Good Samaritan	409
Study Notes	409
Study Questions	422
28. The Rich Young Ruler	424
Study Notes	424
Study Questions	435
29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant	437

Study Notes	437
Study Questions	447
30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People	449
Study Notes	449
Study Questions	459
31. Jesus Walks on Water	461
Study Notes	461
Study Questions	470
32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman	472
Study Notes	472
Study Questions	489
33. The Story of the Farmer	491
Study Notes	491
Study Questions	501
34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories	503
Study Notes	503
Study Questions	514
35. The Story of the Compassionate Father	516
Study Notes	516
Study Questions	530
36. The Transfiguration	532
Study Notes	532
Study Questions	540
37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead	542
Study Notes	542
Study Questions	554
38. Jesus Is Betrayed	556
Study Notes	556
Study Questions	572
39. Jesus Is Put on Trial	574
Study Notes	574
Study Questions	587
40. Jesus Is Crucified	589
Study Notes	589
Study Questions	599
41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead	601
Study Notes	601
Study Questions	610
42. Jesus Returns to Heaven	612
Study Notes	612
Study Questions	624
43. The Church Begins	626
Study Notes	626
Study Questions	640
44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar	642

Study Notes	642
Study Questions	652
45. Stephen and Philip	654
Study Notes	654
Study Questions	668
46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus	670
Study Notes	670
Study Questions	681
47. Paul and Silas in Philippi	683
Study Notes	683
Study Questions	698
48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah	700
Study Notes	700
Study Questions	715
49. God's New Covenant	717
Study Notes	717
Study Questions	736
50. Jesus Returns	738
Study Notes	738
Study Questions	756
Contributors	758
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Notes Contributors	758
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Questions Contributors	758
unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Contributors	758



Open Bible Stories Study Notes & Open Bible Stories Study Questions

A Guide to Using the Stories in the OBS

The Reason for the Stories

The stories in the OBS tell about things that happened in the Bible. However, the stories are shorter than the Bible accounts, and the language is often easier to understand. The stories can help people learn about who God is and about what he has done. Also, each paragraph of a story has an image that can help people understand what happened in Bible times when clothing, houses, and culture were very different than they are today.

The Parts of the Stories

The Stories in the OBS can be used by individuals or groups of people who want to learn about God. The OBS includes several things to help people use the stories:

- The text of the stories
- The images in the stories
- The study notes in the stories
- The questions for the stories

How to Use the Stories

We suggest you use the stories in the following way:

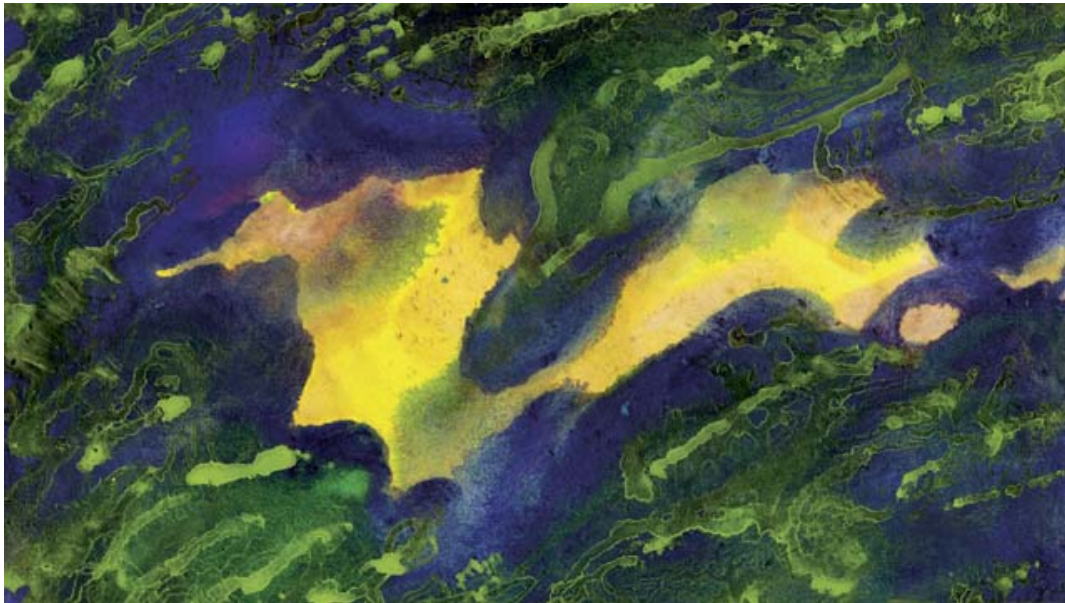
1. **Choose a story to read.** The stories will be easier to understand if you read the stories in order, beginning with the first story.
2. **Read the story.** In a group, one person may read the story aloud, or the people may take turns reading portions.
3. **Look at the images.** Use the images to help you understand what happened in the time of the story. Try to identify the people in the images.
4. **Refer to the Notes.** Read the study notes whenever there is a word or something else that you do not understand in the story.
5. **Discuss the Questions.** Read each question and think about the answer. The first set of questions help you see what the story says. The next set of questions help you think about what the story means to you. If you are in a group, allow different people to offer answers to the questions. Look at the answer to each question and see how it is the same as your answer, or different from it.
6. **Read the Summary.** Read the story summary at the end of the questions. Think about what you have learned about God in the story. If you are in a group, ask the group what they have learned from the story.

1. The Creation

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 1-2

01:01



This is how **God** made everything in **the beginning**. He **created** the universe and everything in it in six days. After God created the earth it was dark and empty because he had not yet formed anything in it. But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.

God

The term **God** refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is 'Yahweh.'

the beginning

This refers to the time before anything except God existed.

created

This term here means that God made it from nothing.

God's Spirit

This is the Holy Spirit (See: [24:08](#), [42:10](#)).

01:02



Then God said, "Let there be **light!**" And there was light. God saw that the light was **good** and called it "day." He separated it from the darkness, which he called "night." God created the light on the first day of **creation**.

light

This light was different than the sun. God did not create the sun until the fourth day (See: [01:06](#)).

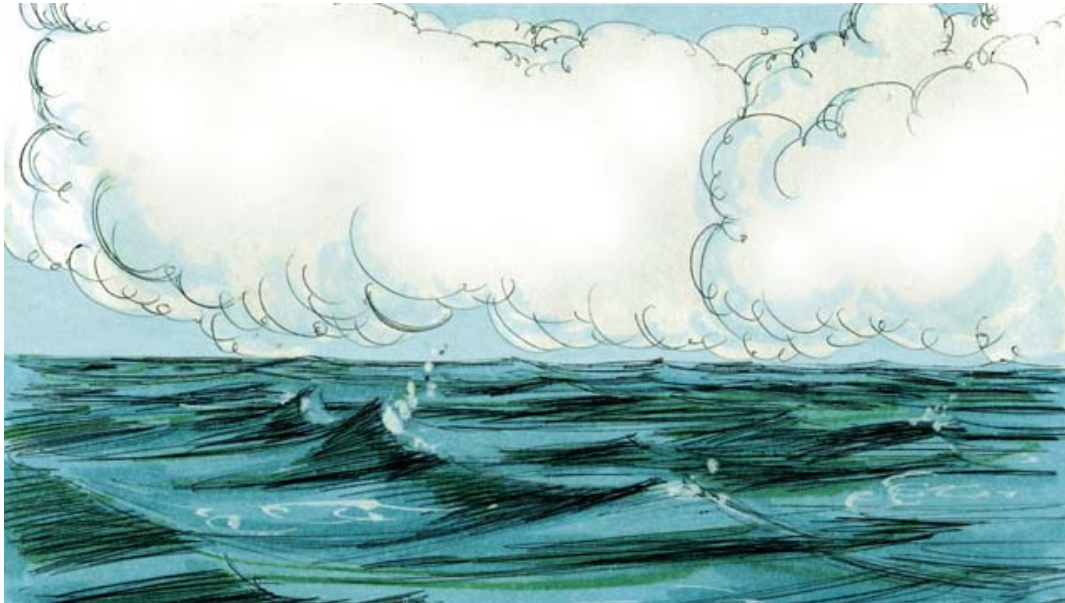
good

Each time God created something, it was good. When he finished creating everything, it was very good (See: [01:15](#)).

creation

This refers to the six-day period when God created everything.

01:03

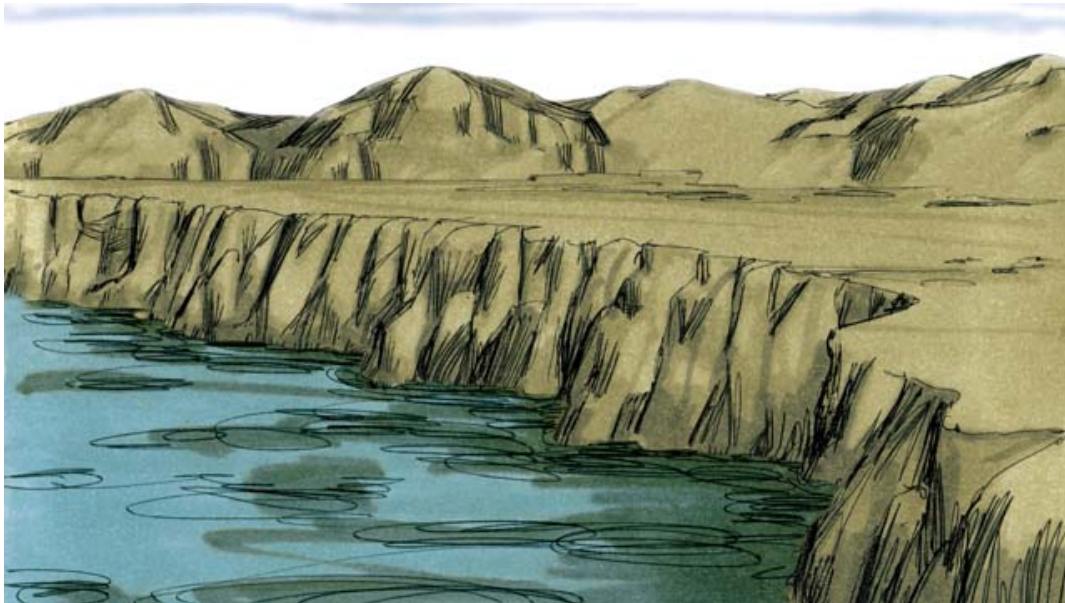


On the second day of creation, God said, "Let there be an expanse above the waters." And there was an expanse. God called this expanse "**sky**."

sky

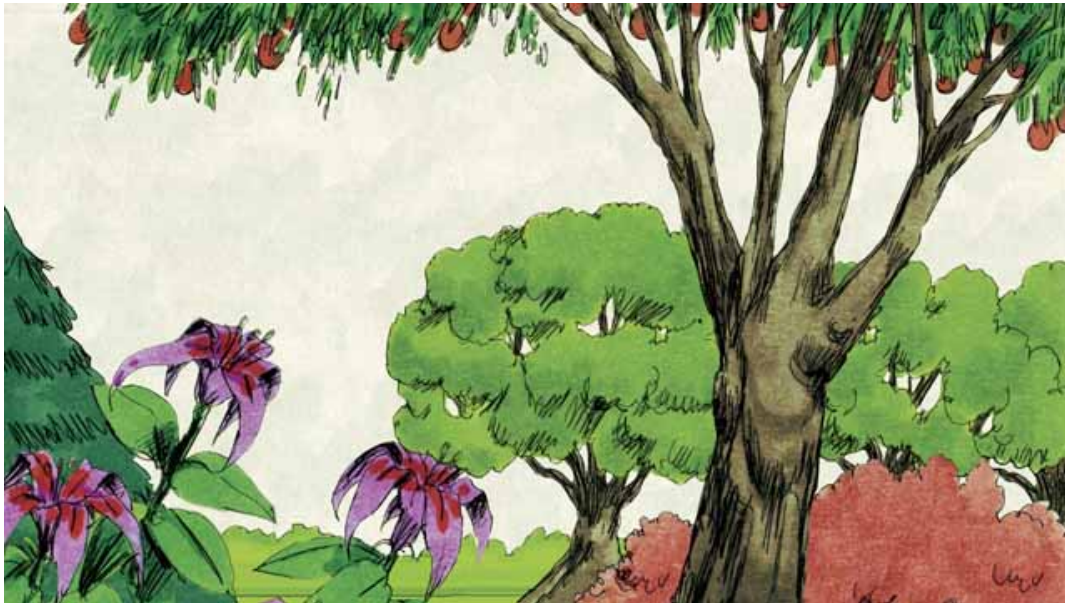
This refers to all the space above the earth including, the air we breathe and the heavens. God did not create the sun, moon, and stars until the fourth day (See: [01:06](#)).

01:04



On the third day, God said, "Let the water come together in one place and the dry land appear." He called the dry land "earth," and he called the water "seas." God saw that what he had created was good.
(No study notes for this frame)

01:05



Then God said, "Let the earth produce all kinds of trees and plants." And that is what happened. God saw that what he had created was good.
(No study notes for this frame)

01:06



On the fourth day of creation, God said, "Let there be lights in the sky." And **the sun, the moon, and the stars** appeared. God made them to give light to the earth and to mark day and night, seasons and years. God saw that what he had created was good.

the sun, the moon, and the stars

God created these and placed them in the empty sky that he had created on the second day (See: [01:03](#)).

01:07



On the fifth day, God said, "Let living things fill the waters, and birds fly in the sky." This is how he made everything that swims in the water and all the birds. God saw that it was good, and he blessed them.
(No study notes for this frame)

01:08



On the sixth day of creation, God said, "Let there be all kinds of land animals!" And it happened just like God said. Some were farm animals, some crawled on the ground, and some were wild. And God saw that it was good. (No study notes for this frame)

01:09



Then God said, "Let **us** make human beings **in our image** to be **like us**. They will rule over the earth and all the animals."

us...our...us

God used plural words to speak about himself. Kings sometimes speak about themselves in that way. However, God the Father may have been speaking to the Son and the Spirit, who are all God.

in our image

People are similar to God in many ways, but they are not equal to him, or the same as he is.

like us

Perhaps God was saying that people are like God in ways that animals are not.

01:10



So God **took some soil, formed it** into a man, and **breathed life into him**. This man's name was Adam. God planted a large garden where Adam could live, and put him there to care for it.

took some soil, formed it

When God created all the other things, he simply spoke and they appeared. But God formed the man from the soil.

breathed life into him

When God breathed into the man, he became alive.

01:11



In the middle of the garden, God planted two special trees—the tree of life and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would die.
(No study notes for this frame)

01:12



Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's helper**.

Adam's helper

None of the animals was similar enough to Adam to be able to help Adam do what God wanted him to do.

01:13



So God made Adam fall into a deep sleep. Then God took **one of Adam's ribs** and made it into a woman and brought her to him.

one of Adam's ribs

God made the woman from a part of Adam, rather than making her from the soil.

01:14



When Adam saw her, he said, “**At last!** This one is **like me!** Let her be called ‘**Woman,**’ for she was made from Man.” This is why a man leaves his father and mother and becomes one with his wife.

At last!

Adam knew there was no one like him. He had been waiting for her.

like me

The woman was the same kind of being as Adam, even though she was not exactly the same as he was.

Woman

This is the feminine form of the word ‘man.’

01:15



God made man and woman **in his own image**. He blessed them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth!" And God saw that everything he had made was **very good**, and he was very pleased with all of it. This all happened on the sixth day of creation.

in his own image

God made people to show some of his qualities, but not to be equal to him.

very good

As God made each thing, it was good. But, together, everything he created was very good because it was complete.

01:16



When **the seventh day** came, God had **finished all the work that he had been doing**. He blessed the seventh day and made it **holy** because on this day he stopped creating things. This is how God created the universe and everything in it.

the seventh day

In modern calendars, the seventh day is Saturday.

finished all the work that he had been doing

God finished creating the earth and everything in it. He continues to do other work.

holy

God set the seventh day apart from the other days. He did not want people to use it the same way as the other six days of the week.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What all did God create?

God made the universe and everything in it. He made light. He made the sun, moon, and stars. He made the earth with its sea and dry land. He made all the plants, birds, and animals. And he made the first man and woman, and a made a garden where they could live.

2. What did God do in order to create everything except the first people?

God only spoke, and the universe and everything in it appeared. In that way, he showed his great power.

3. In what way did God decide to make people to be different than the animals?

God decided to make people in God's image and to be like him. He also decided to give them power over all of the earth and over the animals (See: [01:09](#)).

4. What two special trees did God plant in the garden?

God planted many trees in the garden, but he also planted two special trees. He planted the tree of life in the garden and told Adam that he could eat its fruit. He also planted the tree of the knowledge of good and evil there and told Adam he would die if he ate fruit from that tree (See: [01:11](#)).

5. What did God do so that the man would not be alone?

God wanted Adam to have a helper who would be like Adam. But none of the animals were like Adam, so they could not be his helper. Therefore, God took one of Adam's ribs and made the woman from it to be a helper for Adam (See: [01:12](#), [01:13](#)).

6. What did God do after he finished making everything?

After God finished making everything in six days, he rested on the seventh day. God was not tired, but he had finished his work of making everything. He blessed the seventh day and made it a special day (See: [01:16](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think God made the man and the woman in a different way than he made the universe and the other things in the earth?

God creates people in a more personal way than he created everything else. He formed the man from dust and breathed life into him. Then God formed the woman from one of the man's ribs. In this way, he showed that people were very important to him, and that they have a special purpose in creation (See: [01:10](#), [01:13](#)).

2. In what way are people like God and made in his image? How are they different than God?

God made people to be like God, but not the same as God. That is, people have some of the characteristics of God that the animals do not have. However, people are not equal to God. They are in God's image because they are like God in some ways (See: [01:09](#)).

3. Why do you think God put the tree of the knowledge of good and evil in the garden when he did not want Adam to eat its fruit?

God wanted Adam to be able to choose whether or not to obey God. Therefore, God planted the tree of the knowledge of good and evil in the garden where Adam was. However, he warned Adam clearly that he

would die if he ate fruit from that tree. And God allowed Adam to eat fruit from every other tree, so there was no reason for Adam to disobey God (See: [01:11](#)).

4. Why do you think God made the woman from the man rather than from the soil?

God wanted the man and the woman to become one. Therefore, he did not make the woman separately from Adam. Instead, God took part of Adam and made her from that. When Adam saw her, he understood that she was very much like Adam, and that God had made her especially for him (See: [01:13](#)).

5. How do you think a man becomes one with his wife?

God wants a man and his wife to have a special bond that is closer than their connection to any other person. It is even closer than the bond with their parents. As they grow to know each other more, they begin to think in similar ways and value the same things. People who have been married a long time often seem to know what each other is thinking without even speaking (See: [01:14](#)).

6. Why did God say that everything he had made was very good?

God created everything so that everything would work together to accomplish what he wanted to happen (See: [01:15](#)).

7. What did God want people to do on the seventh day?

God made the seventh day a special day. On that day, he wanted people to stop doing their normal work. Instead, they should remember that God created them and everything around them. Because they would not work on the seventh day, they would have more time to honor God and think about him than they did on the other days of the week (See: [01:16](#)).

Summary

God created everything that exists. He simply spoke, and the entire universe appeared out of nothing. However, God formed the first man and woman in a more personal way. He breathed life into the man, and then formed the woman from the man. God wanted people to be like him in ways that animals are not. God finished his work in six days, and set the seventh day apart as a time for people to remember how he had made everything.

2. Sin Enters the World

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 3

02:01



Adam and his wife were very happy living in the beautiful garden God had made for them. Neither of them wore clothes, but this did not cause them to feel any shame because there was no sin in the world. They often walked in the garden and talked with God.
(No study notes for this frame)

02:02



But there was **a snake** in the garden. He was very crafty. He asked the woman, **“Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”**

a snake

Some scholars think the snake represents Satan. Other scholars think the snake was a real snake, and that Satan was the one who was speaking through it.

Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?

The snake asked this question to cause the woman to think about the things that God told her not to do, instead of the things he said she could do.

02:03



The woman answered, "God told us we could eat the fruit of any tree except from the tree of the knowledge of **good** and **evil**. God told us, 'If you eat that fruit **or even touch it**, you will die.'"

good

Something is **good** if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will. Good is the opposite of evil.

evil

Something is **evil** if it is opposed to God's holy character and will. Evil is the opposite of good.

or even touch it

God told the man and the woman not to eat the fruit of that tree, but he did not tell them not to touch it.

02:04



The snake responded to the woman, "**That is not true!** You will not die. God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and **will understand good and evil like he does.**"

That is not true!

The snake now plainly implied that God was a liar.

will understand good and evil like he does

They already understood **good** from what God had done for them. Now the snake says they will also understand evil. The snake spoke as if this was good for them. Instead, understanding evil would cause them to die.

02:05



The woman saw that the fruit was beautiful and looked delicious. She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it. Then she gave some to her husband, who was with her, and **he ate it too**.

The woman saw

The woman decide to eat the fruit because of what she saw, instead of rejecting it because of what God had said.

he ate it too

The man also decided to eat the fruit, even though he knew that God had told him not to do that.

02:06



Suddenly, their eyes were opened and they realized they were naked. **They tried to cover their bodies** by sewing leaves together to make clothes.

They tried to cover their bodies

Before this time, people were not ashamed, and did not have any reason to be ashamed. Their shame began when they disobeyed God.

02:07



Then the man and his wife heard the sound of God walking through the garden. **They both hid from God.** Then God called to the man, "**Where are you?**" Adam replied, "I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked. So I hid."

Where are you?

God knew where Adam was. He asked this question to make Adam say that he had disobeyed God.

They both hid from God

When people sin, they feel shame. They know that they have done wrong and that God is angry with them.

02:08



Then God asked, "Who told you that you were naked? **Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?**" The man answered, "You gave me this woman, and she gave me the fruit." Then God asked the woman, "**What have you done?**" The woman replied, "The snake tricked me."

Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?

Adam did not answer the question, but instead blamed the woman. He also meant to blame God who gave the woman to him.

What have you done?

The woman also refused to answer God. Instead, she blamed the snake.

02:09



God said to the snake, **"You are cursed! You will slide on your belly and eat soil. You and the woman will hate each other, and your children and her children will hate each other too. The woman's descendant will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."**

You are cursed!

This means that God will cause bad things to happen to the snake because he deceived the woman.

You and the woman will hate each other, and your children and her children will hate each other too.

People and snakes became enemies at this time, and still hate each other.

The woman's descendant

Most scholars think this refers to the Messiah who would later rescue people from Satan.

will crush your head

Most scholars think this means the woman's descendant will fatally wound Satan.

will wound his heel

Most scholars think this means Satan will wound the Messiah.

02:10



God then said to the woman, "I will make childbirth very painful for you. You will desire your husband, and **he will rule over you.**"

he will rule over you

God will punish the woman by giving her husband power over her.

02:11



God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and disobeyed me. Now the ground is cursed, and you will need to **work hard to grow food**. Then you will die, and **your body will return to soil**." The man named his wife **Eve**, which means "life-giver," because she would become the mother of all people. And **God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins**.

work hard to grow food

Because the man ate the fruit his wife gave him, God would make it hard for him to grow food to eat.

your body will return to soil

Adam was made from soil (See: [01:10](#)). When he died, his body would become soil again.

Eve, which means "life-giver,"

The name **Eve** sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'living.'

God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins

Adam and Eve tried to cover themselves with leaves (See: [02:06](#)). God did not accept that. Instead, he covered them with the skins of animals. This is the first instance of animals being sacrificed in order to cover the sins of people.

02:12



Then God said, “Now that the human beings have become like us by knowing good and evil, **they must not be allowed to eat the fruit of the tree of life and live forever.**” So God sent Adam and Eve away from the garden. God placed powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.

they must not be allowed to eat the fruit of the tree of life and live forever

Adam and Eve were now sinners and ashamed. God did not want them to live forever in that condition. Therefore, he did not allow them to eat from the tree of life.

the tree of life

This is the same tree God planted in the garden (See: [01:11](#)).

angels

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Adam and Eve need that they did not have in the garden?

Adam and Eve had everything they needed in the garden. There was no sin or shame, and they were able to walk with God and speak directly to him (See: [02:01](#)).

2. How did the snake convince the woman to eat the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil?

The snake first questioned what God said (See: [02:02](#)). He next called God a liar (See: [02:04](#)). Finally, he told the woman that she could be like God (See: [02:04](#)).

3. Why did the woman eat the fruit?

Eve thought the fruit looked good, and she wanted to be wise like God. Therefore, she decided to disobey God and to eat the fruit.

4. What did Adam and Eve do after they ate the fruit?

They were both ashamed, and tried to cover themselves with leaves. Then they tried to hide from God (See: [02:06](#), [02:07](#)).

5. What answer did Adam give when God asked if he had eaten the fruit?

Adam did not admit that he had sinned. Instead, he blamed his wife.

6. What answer did Eve give when God asked her what she had done?

Eve did not admit that she had sinned. Instead, she blamed the snake.

7. What would the snake do to Eve's descendant, and what would he do to the snake?

Eve's descendant would kill the snake by crushing its head. The snake would wound Eve's descendant by biting him on the heel of his foot.

8. What did God use to cover Adam and Eve?

God covered them with animal skins. Most scholars think this was the first animal sacrifice. God killed the animals and took their skins to cover Adam and Eve.

9. What did God want to say when he said that Adam's body would return to the soil?

God made Adam from the soil (See: [01:10](#)). When he died, he would become soil once again.

10. Why did God send Adam and Eve out of the garden?

God did not want them to eat from the tree of life in the garden and live forever as sinners.

What the Story Means to Us

1. How did the snake convince Eve to eat the fruit?

The snake did not begin by telling Eve to disobey God. Instead, he asked questions that caused Eve to think about the one fruit that God had told her not to eat. Then the snake convinced her that God did not do the right thing when he told her not to eat the fruit.

- Why do you think Eve forgot about all the things God had given her, and only focused on the one fruit that God told her not to eat?

People often do not like someone telling them not to do something. They want to do whatever they want to do. Eve did not care that it was God who told her not to eat the fruit, or that God told her not to eat it in order to protect her.

3. Why do you think Adam and Eve tried to cover their shame and hid from God?

When they disobeyed God by eating the fruit, they became sinners. They were so ashamed that they did not want God to see them.

4. How did Adam and Eve answer God when he asked them what they had done?

Adam and Eve both blamed someone else for what they had done. Adam blamed Eve, and Eve blamed the snake. Neither of them was willing to tell God the truth about what they did.

5. How did the curses match the way that Adam, Eve, and the snake disobeyed God?

Adam ate the fruit, so God made it difficult for him to grow food. Eve caused Adam to sin, so God gave Adam power over Eve. The snake spoke as if he were wiser than God, so God made him crawl on his belly.

6. Why was it bad for Adam and Eve to know good and evil?

Their knowledge of good and evil was knowledge gained by personal experience. That experience of making an evil choice caused them to be separated from God. Their fellowship with him was broken (See: [02:12](#)).

Summary

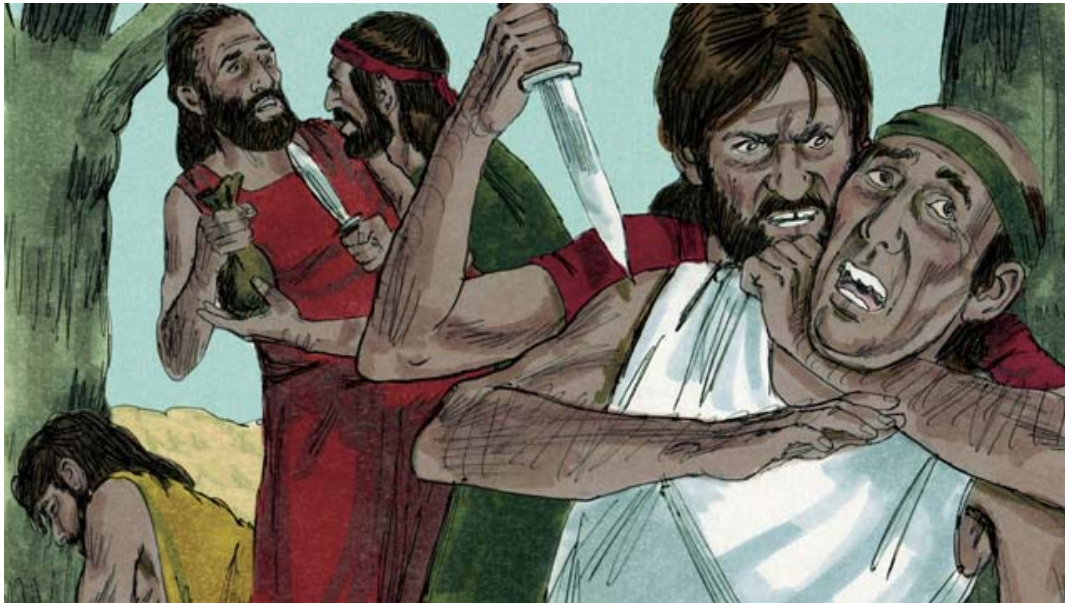
God provided everything Adam and Eve needed in the garden. The fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil was the only thing they could not have. The snake convinced Eve that God did not want them to be wise, and that was why God told them not to eat the fruit. So Adam and Eve disobeyed God and sinned by eating the fruit. They immediately were ashamed and hid from God. God cursed Adam, Eve, and the snake because of what they had done. Then God drove them out of the garden so they would not eat the fruit of the tree of life and live forever as sinners. But God also promised him that a descendant of the woman would later come and kill the snake.

3. The Flood

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 6-8

03:01



After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent. It became so bad that God decided to destroy the whole world with a huge flood.
(No study notes for this frame)

03:02



But **God was pleased with Noah**. He was **a righteous man** living among wicked people. God told Noah that he was going to make a big flood. Therefore, he told Noah to build a huge boat.

God was pleased with Noah

God was pleased with the way that Noah lived. Therefore, God decided to tell Noah to build a boat to protect him and his family from the flood.

a righteous man

The term **righteous** describes a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.

03:03



God told Noah to make **the boat** about 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 13.5 meters high. Noah was to build it with wood and to make three levels, many rooms, a roof, and a window. The boat would keep Noah, his family, and every kind of land animal safe during the flood.

the boat

The boat needed to be big enough to hold eight people, two of every kind of animal, and food for them to eat for about a year.

03:04



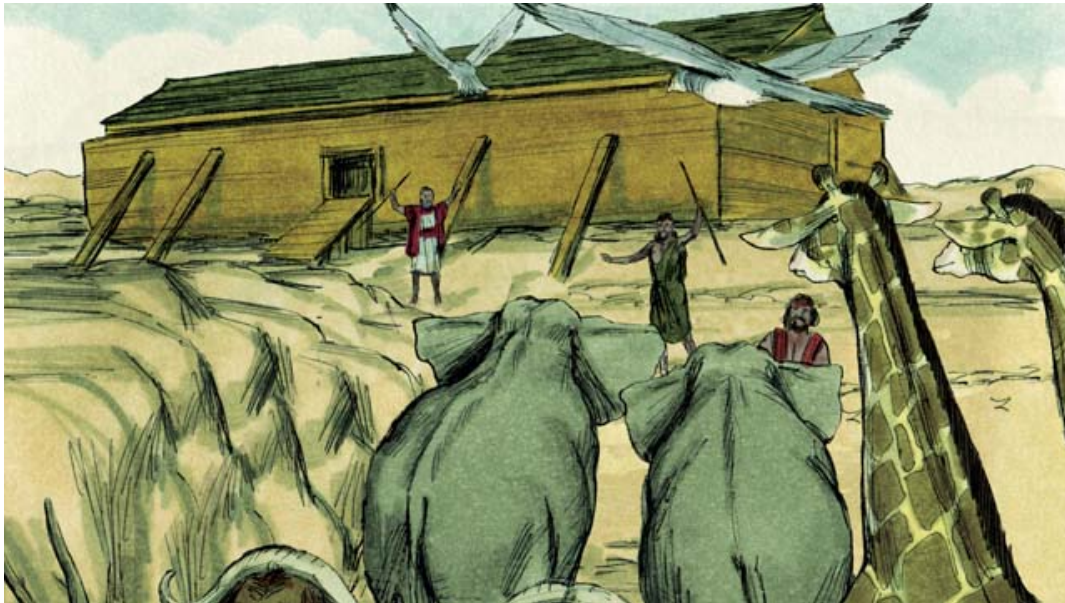
Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them. It took many years to build the boat because it was so big. Noah warned the people about the flood that was coming and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.
(No study notes for this frame)

03:05



God also commanded Noah and his family to gather enough food for themselves and the animals. When everything was ready, God told Noah it was time for him, his wife, his three sons, and their wives to get into the boat—eight people in all.
(No study notes for this frame)

03:06



God sent a male and a female of **every kind of animal and bird** to Noah so they could go into the boat and be kept safe during the flood. God sent seven males and seven females of every kind of animal that could be used for sacrifices. When they were all in the boat, God himself closed the door.

every kind of animal and bird

Only the animals and birds who could not live on the water came to Noah. Animals that lived in the sea did not need to come to the boat.

03:07



Then it began to rain, and rain, and rain. It rained for 40 days and 40 nights without stopping! Water also came gushing up out of the earth. Everything in the whole world was covered with water, even the highest mountains. (No study notes for this frame)

03:08



Everything that lived on the dry land died except the people and animals that were in the boat. The boat floated on the water and kept everything inside the boat safe from drowning.

Everything that lived on the dry land died

The other people and animals could not enter the boat because God had shut the door before the rain started.

03:09



After the rains stopped, the boat floated on the water for five months, and during this time the water started going down. Then, one day, **the boat rested on the top of a mountain**, but the world was still covered with water. After three more months, the tops of the mountains were visible.

the boat rested on the top of a mountain

The boat was stuck on the top of the mountain that was still under the water.

03:10



After 40 more days, Noah sent out a bird called a raven to see if the water had dried up. The raven flew back and forth looking for dry land, but **it could not find any**.

it could not find any

Perhaps the dove was not able to fly far enough to find dry ground, although the tops of the mountains were visible far away.

03:11



Later Noah sent out a bird called a dove. But it also **could not find any dry land**, so it came back to Noah. A week later he sent the dove out again, and it came back with **an olive branch** in its beak! The water was going down, and the plants were growing again!

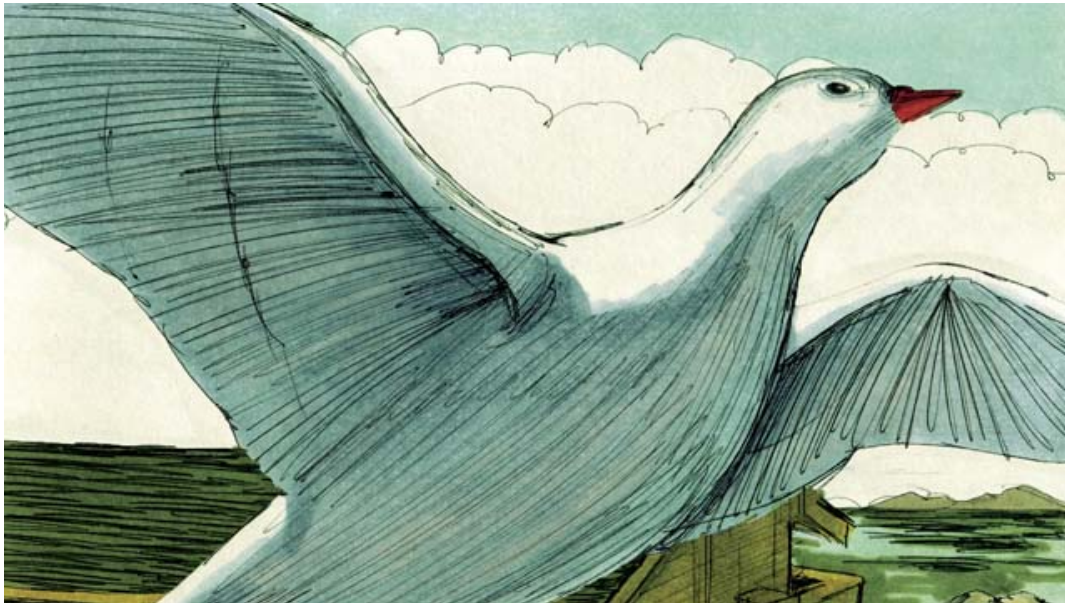
could not find any dry land

Perhaps the dry land on the mountain tops were too far away for the dove to fly there.

an olive branch

Plants were beginning to grow in the wet ground.

03:12



Noah waited another week and sent out the dove a third time. This time, it found a place to rest and did not come back. The water was drying up!
(No study notes for this frame)

03:13



Two months later, God said to Noah, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So Noah and his family came out of the boat.

Two months later

The land was already dry enough for the dove to live. But it took two more months until there was enough dry land for Noah's family and all of the animals to be able to leave the boat.

03:14



After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed some of each kind of animal that could be used for a sacrifice**. God was happy with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.

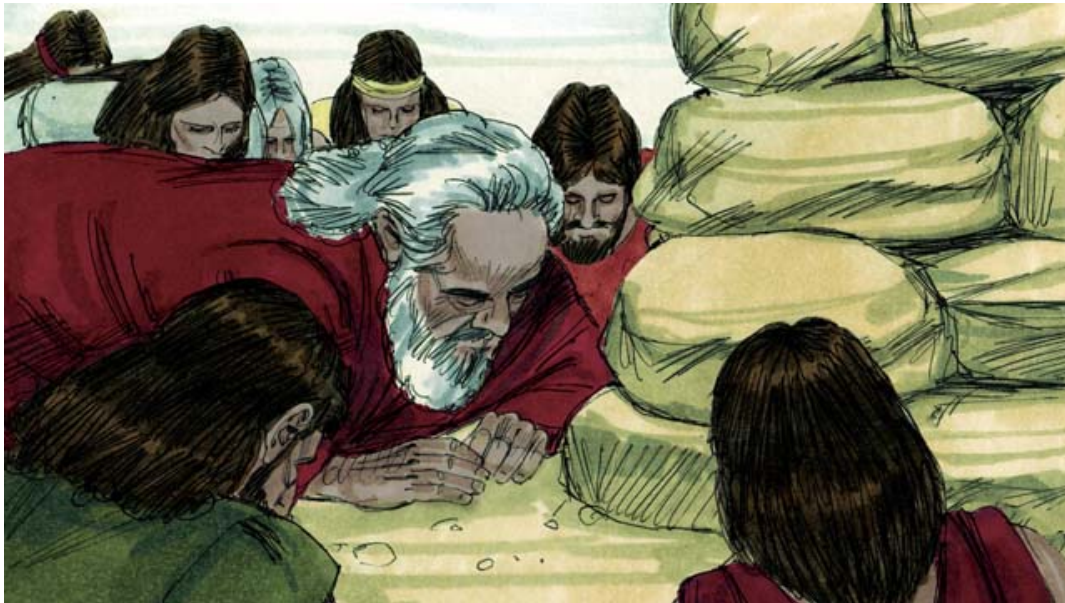
sacrificed some of each kind of animal

People offered animals as special gifts to God as a way of worshiping him. They normally killed the animals and then burned them in a fire on an altar.

each kind of animal that could be used for a sacrifice

These were seven males and females of these animals in the boat (See: [03:06](#)). After Noah sacrificed some of them, there were still enough left to fill the earth again.

03:15



God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."
(No study notes for this frame)

03:16



God then made the first rainbow as a sign of **his promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.

his promise

This refers to God's promise not to destroy the earth with a flood again (See: [03:15](#)).

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did God decide to do about the wicked and violent people on the earth?

He decided to destroy them with a huge flood (See: [03:01](#)).

2. How was Noah different than the other people?

Noah was a righteous man even though he lived among wicked people (See: [03:02](#)).

3. What was the purpose of the boat that God told Noah to build?

The boat would keep Noah and his family safe during the flood (See: [03:03](#)).

4. How many people entered into the boat?

Eight people entered into the boat—Noah and his wife, and his three sons and their wives. No one else believed the flood would happen (See: [03:04](#), [03:05](#)).

5. Why did the animals come to the boat?

God sent some of each kind of the animals to the boat (See: [03:06](#)).

6. How long did the rain last?

The rain continued for 40 days and 40 nights (See: [03:07](#)).

7. What happened to all the people and animals during the flood?

Noah's family and the animals that were inside the boat were safe. Every person and animal that was outside the boat died (See: [03:08](#)).

8. How long did the flood continue on the earth?

The boat floated on the water for five months, it took three more months for the mountains to be visible (See: [03:09](#)). It was several more months before the land was dry enough for Noah and his family to come out of the boat ([03:10](#) to [03:13](#)).

9. What was the first thing Noah that did when he came out of the boat?

Noah built an altar and sacrificed some of the animals to God (See: [03:14](#)).

10. What promise did God make to Noah after the flood?

God promised that he would not destroy the earth with a flood again. He put a rainbow in the sky as a sign of this promise (See: [03:15](#), [03:16](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did God decide to destroy the world?

God created people to be with him. But God is good and cannot accept things that are evil. Because almost all the people became wicked and disobeyed him, he decided to destroy all those evil people (See: [03:01](#)).

2. Why did God save Noah and his family?

God did not want to destroy all that he had made. Therefore, he chose to save Noah and his family because Noah was a righteous person who honored God. God would allow Noah's descendants to fill the earth after the wicked people died.

3. Why was no one else besides Noah's family ready when the flood came?

The boat was very large, and it took Noah and his sons a very long time to build it. Many other people would have seen Noah building the boat and would have asked him about it. But none of them believed God would destroy them, so none of them were ready when the flood came (See: [03:04](#)).

4. Why did other people not come into the boat when the rain began?

God himself closed the door of the boat before the rain began. After God did that, it was too late for people to enter into the boat and be saved from the flood (See: [03:06](#)).

5. Why did Noah build an altar and offer a sacrifice to God?

Noah was a righteous man who honored God both before and after the flood. He knew that God had saved him and his family. Therefore, the first thing he did when he left the boat was to honor God with a sacrifice (See: [03:14](#)).

6. Why is the rainbow important?

The rainbow that appears after a rain reminds God and people of God's promise. He said he will never destroy the earth again with a flood.

Summary

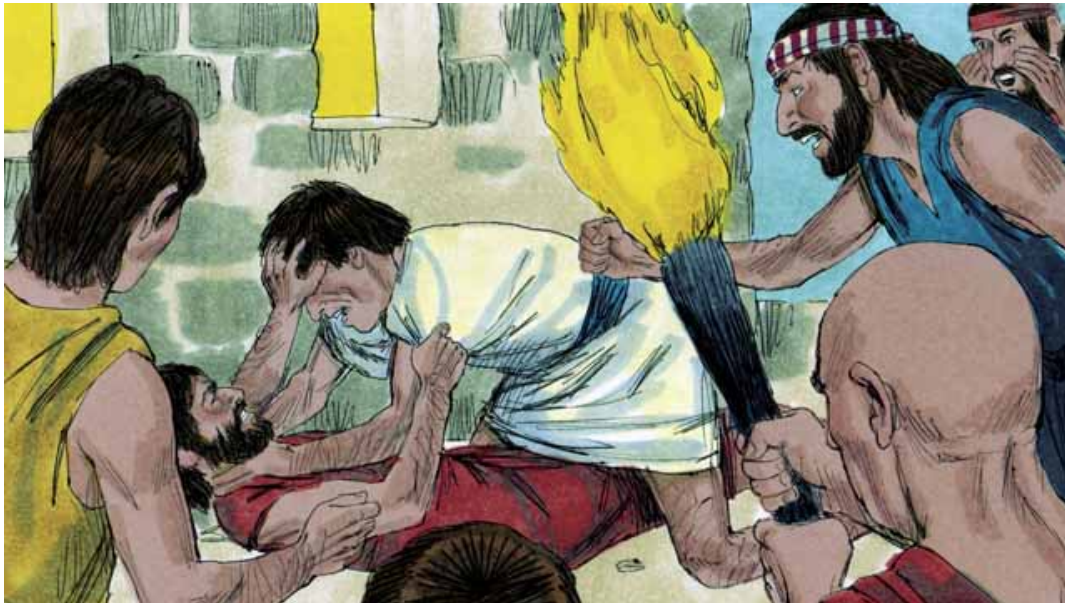
The story of the flood shows that God must punish people who sin against him. But he also wants to save people who honor him. Noah lived in a time when almost everyone was wicked. In spite of that, Noah honored God, and taught his family to honor him as well. Therefore, God made a way for Noah and his family to escape God's punishment. Noah obeyed God. He built the boat and took his family into it. God then closed the door and protected them from the flood. After the flood, God told them to fill the earth again. Noah continued to honor God, and God promised never to destroy the earth with a flood again.

4. God's Covenant with Abraham

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 11-15

04:01

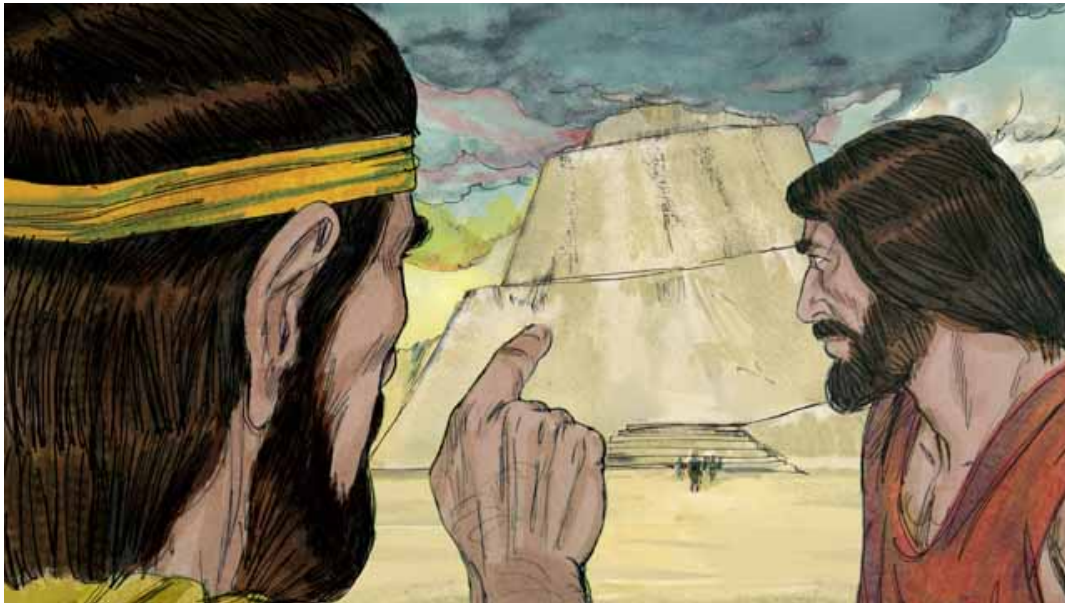


Many years after the flood, there were again many people in the world, and they still sinned against God and each other. Because they all spoke the same language, they gathered together and built a city instead of **spreading out over the earth as God had commanded**.

spreading out over the earth as God had commanded

God told Noah and his family to spread out over the earth after the flood (See: [03:13](#)).

04:02



They were very proud, and they did not want to obey God's commands about how they should live. They even began building a tall tower that would reach heaven. God saw that, if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
(No study notes for this frame)

04:03



So God changed their language into many different languages and **spread the people out all over the world**. The city they had begun to build was called Babel, which means **"confused."**

spread the people out all over the world

The people did not stay together because they could no longer speak to each other in the same language.

confused

The people were confused by what other people said. They were confused because God changed their language so they could not understand each other.

04:04



Hundreds of years later, God spoke to a man named **Abram**. God told him, "**Leave your country and family** and go to the land I will show you. I will **bless you** and make you a great nation. I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. **All families on earth will be blessed because of you.**"

Abram

God would later change Abram's name to Abraham.

Leave your country and family

God told Abram to leave his relatives and the place he lived, but not to leave his wife.

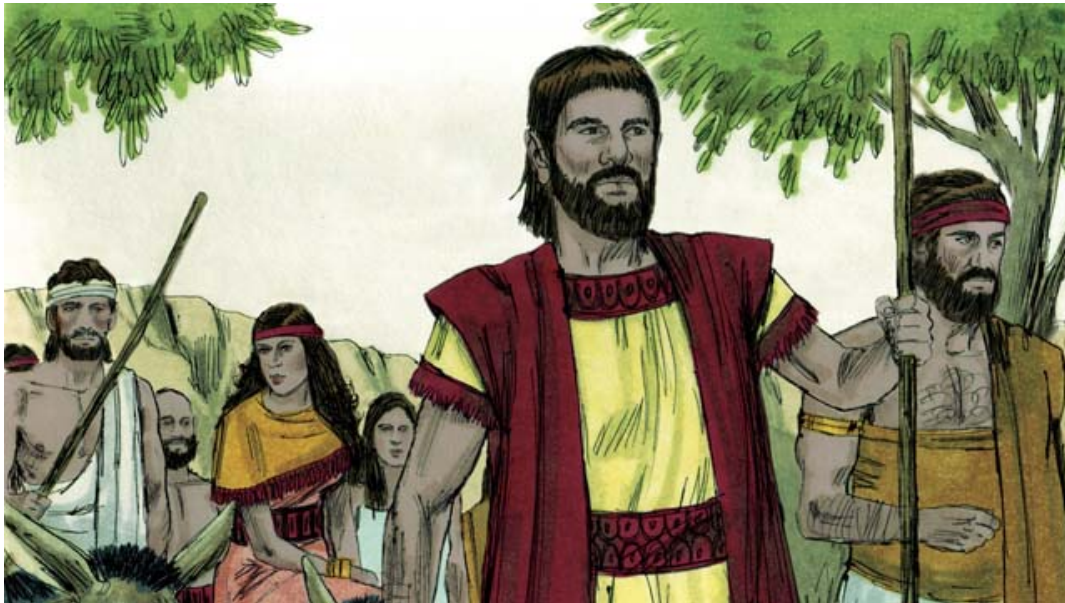
bless you

To **bless** someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

All families on earth will be blessed because of you

When Abram obeyed God, God used him to bless every people group.

04:05



So Abram obeyed God. He took his wife, Sarai, together with all of his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of Canaan.
(No study notes for this frame)

04:06



When Abram arrived in **Canaan**, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you all this land, and **your descendants will always possess it.**" Then Abram settled in the land.

Canaan

This is the land that is called 'Israel' in modern times.

your descendants will always possess it

God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants in the same way a father gives his land to his children.

04:07



There was a man named Melchizedek who was a priest of God Most High. One day, after Abram had been in a battle, he and Abram met. Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram." Then **Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything he had won in the battle.**

Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything he had won in the battle

Abram gave this gift to Melchizedek to honor God. Melchizedek was a representative of God in Canaan.

04:08

Many years went by, but **Abram and Sarai still did not have a son**. God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise. **God declared that Abram was righteous** because he believed in God's promise.

Abram and Sarai still did not have a son

Abram needed to have a son because God had promised to make him a great nation (See: [04:04](#)). God also said he would give the land of Canaan to Abram's descendants (See: [04:06](#)).

Sarai

God would later change Sarai's name to Sarah.

God declared that Abram was righteous

Because Abram believed God, God decided to treat Abram as if he had fully obeyed God in everything he had done.

04:09



Then **God made a covenant with Abram**. Normally, a covenant is an agreement between two parties to do things for each other. But in this case, God made a promise to Abram while Abram was in a deep sleep, but he could still hear God. God said, "I will give you a son from your own body. I give the land of Canaan to your descendants." But Abram still did not have a son.

God made a covenant with Abram

God had already said he would give Canaan to Abram's descendants (See: [04:06](#)). Now God stated the same thing again to Abram as an official promise.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why was it wrong for the people to gather together in one city?

God had commanded Noah and his descendants to fill the earth again after the flood (See: [03:13](#)).

2. What was the purpose of the tower the people built in the city?

They built the tower to be tall enough to reach heaven (See: [04:02](#)). Some scholars think they wanted to be able to go up to heaven. Other scholars think they wanted the gods to be able to come down from heaven.

3. Why did God change their language?

God changed their one language into many languages so they could not understand each other (See: [04:03](#)). As a result, they could not work together to continue building the tower or living together well. So they spread out over the earth in different language groups.

4. Who did God say he would bless through Abram?

God would bless all the people groups on earth through Abram and his descendants (See: [04:04](#)).

5. What land did God give to Abram?

God gave the land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants (See: [04:05](#), [04:06](#)). He said they would always possess it. This is the land of Israel today.

6. Why did Abram give a tenth of his possessions to Melchizedek?

Melchizedek was a priest of God (See: [04:07](#)). That is, he spoke for God and helped people worship God. Abram gave a tenth of his possessions to Melchizedek as an offering to God. In this way, Abram honored God.

7. Why might it have been difficult for Abram to believe that he would have many descendants?

Abram and Sarai did not yet have a son (See: [04:08](#)). Without a son, he could not have many descendants.

8. Why did God declare that Abram was righteous?

God said Abram was righteous because Abram believed God (See: [04:08](#)). Abram believed he would have many descendants even though he did not yet have a son.

What the Story Means to Us

1. Noah was a righteous man. Why did his descendants begin to sin?

God destroyed all the wicked people in the flood (See: [03:08](#)). So only the family of Noah survived to fill the earth. Although Noah obeyed God, he was not perfect. He received wicked desires from his ancestors, Adam and Eve. And he passed these on to his descendants.

2. Why did the people want to live in one city?

The descendants of Noah became proud and wanted other people to honor and remember them. Therefore, they decided they did not want to obey God. Instead, they settled in one place where they could honor each other (See: [04:01](#), [04:02](#)).

3. Why do people today speak different languages?

People today speak different languages because God gave them different languages at Babel (See: [04:03](#)). He wanted each language group to spread out across the earth and learn to honor him.

4. Why did God send Abram to Canaan?

Abram already honored God where he lived. But, God told him to go to Canaan, the land that God would give to him. God wanted Abram's descendants to have a land where they could honor God. In this way, all the families of the earth could learn through them how to honor God.

5. Why did Abram give his tenth to Melchizedek instead of directly to God?

Melchizedek was the first priest of God. Before that, Noah and other righteous people offered their sacrifices directly to God. But now God was providing a priest to help people honor God and to speak to them for him.

6. Why was God's promise to Abram so surprising?

God promised that Abram would have more descendants than the stars in the sky. No one is able to count all the stars! But Abram and Sarai did not yet have a son. It would not have seemed possible that they could have so many descendants.

Summary

Many descendants were soon born to Noah. But, even though Noah was a righteous man, his descendants did not obey God. They refused to fill the earth. Instead, they built a city and a tower to honor themselves. Therefore, God confused their language so they would separate into groups. Later, God chose Abram and promised to bless every language group through his descendants. Abram believed God would do this, even though he did not have a son. Therefore, God was pleased with Abram and declared him righteous.

5. The Son of Promise

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 16-22

05:01



Ten years after Abram and Sarai arrived in Canaan, they still did not have a child. So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children, and now **I am too old to have children**, here is my servant, Hagar. **Marry her also** so she can **have a child for me.**"

I am too old to have children

Sarai did not believe God could cause her to have a child when she was very old. She decided she should find a way to help God keep his promise.

Marry her also

The custom of that time allowed a man to have more than one wife.

have a child for me

Because Hagar was Sarai's servant, she did not have the same rights as Sarai. Sarai would treat any children she had as if they were Sarai's children.

05:02



So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael. But **Sarai became jealous of Hagar**. When Ishmael was thirteen years old, God again spoke to Abram.

Sarai became jealous of Hagar

Even though Sarai told Abram to take Hagar as his wife, she was jealous that Hagar was able to have a child when Sarai was not able.

05:03



God said, "I am God Almighty. **I will make a covenant with you.**" Then Abram bowed to the ground. God also told Abram, "You will be the father of many nations. I will give you and your descendants the land of Canaan as their possession, and I will be their God forever. You must **circumcise every male** in your family."

I will make a covenant with you

God had already made this covenant with Abram (See: [04:09](#)). Now, God added to that covenant by telling Abram to circumcise the males in his family.

circumcise every male

The term **circumcise** means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

05:04



“Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be **the son of promise**. Name him Isaac. I will make my covenant with him, and he will become a great nation. I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but **my covenant will be with Isaac**.” Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.” God also changed Sarai’s name to Sarah, which means “princess.”

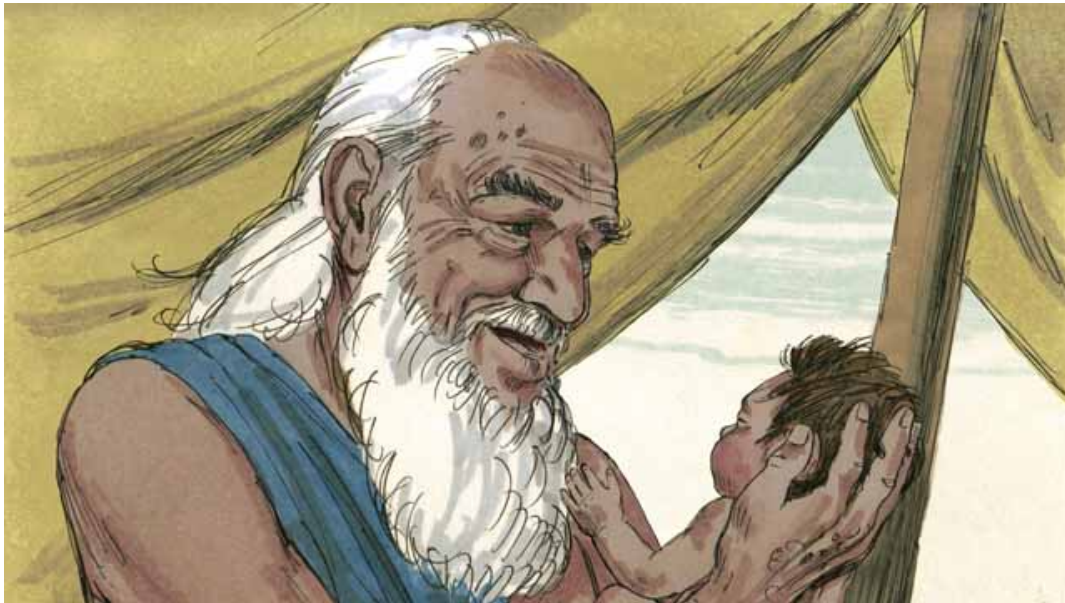
the son of promise

Through Isaac, God would keep his promise to make Abram a great nation and to give the land of Canaan to his descendants.

my covenant will be with Isaac

God would bless Abram’s son, Ishmael. However, God would cause Abram’s other son, Isaac, and his descendants to receive the blessings of God’s covenant with Abram.

05:05



That day Abraham circumcised all the males in his household. About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, **Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son**. They named him Isaac, as God had told them to do.

Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son

Sarai had been wrong to believe that God could not give her a son when she was very old (See: [05:01](#)).

05:06



When Isaac was a young man, **God tested Abraham's faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me." Again, Abraham obeyed God. He prepared to sacrifice his son.

God tested Abraham's faith

God wanted to show that Abram would obey God in whatever he asked. He did not want Abraham to actually kill Isaac. However, Abraham did not yet know that he would not have to kill Isaac.

05:07



As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of sacrifice, Isaac asked, "Father, we have **wood for the sacrifice**, but where is **the lamb**?" Abraham replied, "God will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son."

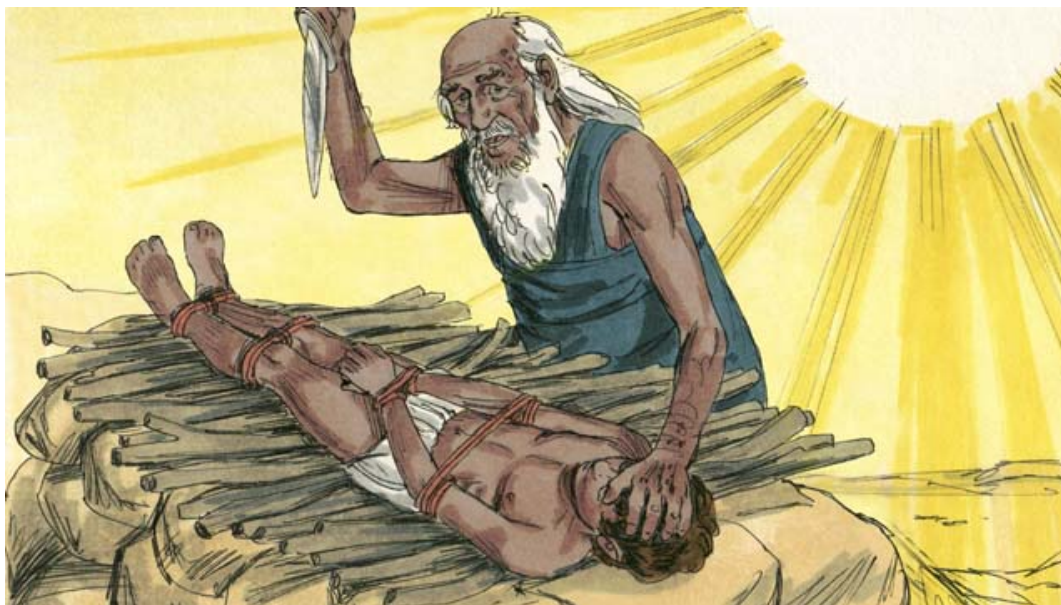
wood for the sacrifice

Abraham planned to kill Isaac and offer him as a burnt offering. He brought the wood to make the fire.

the lamb

A lamb was the normal sacrifice to God in that day.

05:08



When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. **He was about to kill his son** when God said, **"Stop! Do not hurt the boy!** Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me."

He was about to kill his son

Abraham showed that he was willing even to kill Isaac if God told him to do that.

Stop! Do not hurt the boy!

God did not want Abraham to kill Isaac. He only told Abraham to do that so that he could test Abraham's faith (See: [05:06](#)).

05:09

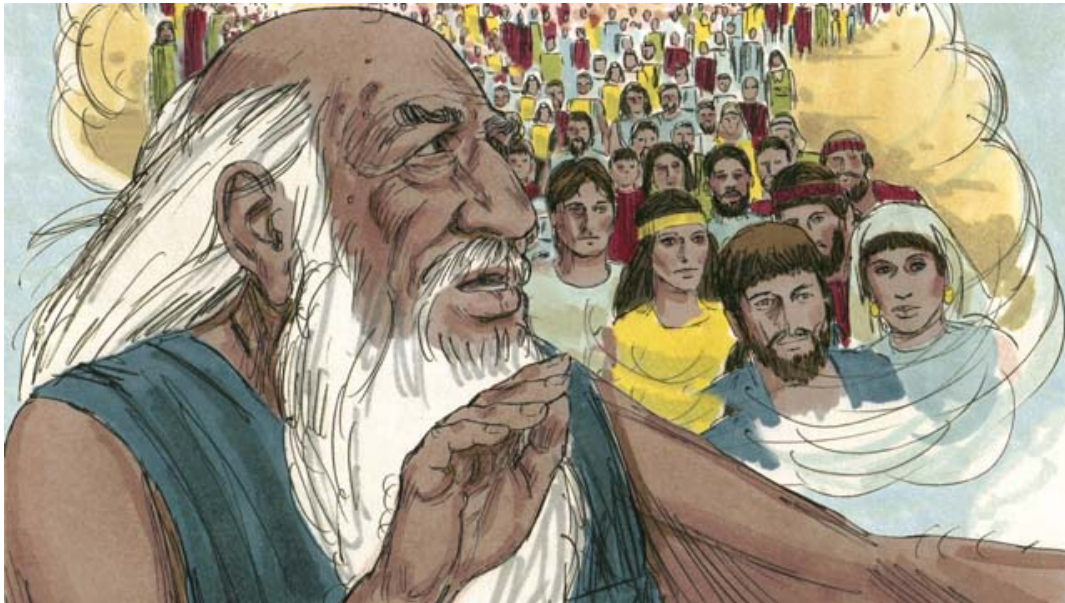


Nearby, Abraham saw **a ram that was stuck in a bush**. God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac. Abraham happily offered the ram as a sacrifice.

a ram that was stuck in a bush

God provided this ram. It would be very unusual for a ram to be stuck in a bush.

05:10



Then God said to Abraham, "Because you were willing to give me everything, even your only son, I promise to bless you. Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have obeyed me, I will bless **all the families of the world** through **your family**."

all the families of the world

This refers to the other people groups who are not descendants of Abraham.

your family

This refers to the Jews, because they are the descendants of Abraham.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did Sarai tell Abram to have a child with Hagar?

Sarai was now too old to have children (See: [05:01](#)). The custom of that time allowed a woman to have a child through their servant.

2. What was the name of the son born to Abram through Hagar?

Abram named the son that Hagar bore him Ishmael (See: [05:02](#)).

3. What did God tell Abram to do to show his covenant with God?

As a sign of the covenant God made with Abram, God told Abram to circumcise every male in his family (See: [05:03](#)).

4. Who would be the **son of promise**?

Sarai would bear a son for Abram. His name would be Isaac. He would be the **son of promise** (See: [05:04](#)).

5. What were the meanings of the new names that God gave to Abram and Sarai?

Abraham means 'father of many' and Sarah means 'princess' (See: [05:04](#)).

6. How old were Abraham and Sarah when Isaac was born?

Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90 years old (See: [05:05](#)).

7. What did God tell Abraham to do to his son Isaac?

God told Abraham to kill Isaac as a sacrifice to God (See: [05:06](#)).

8. Where did Abraham tell Isaac that they would get the lamb for the sacrifice?

Abraham told Isaac that God would provide the lamb for the sacrifice (See: [05:07](#)).

9. Did God want Abraham to actually kill Isaac as a sacrifice?

No, God told Abraham not to kill Isaac. God was only testing Abraham to see if he would obey God. God provided a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac (See: [05:08](#), [05:09](#)).

10. Why did God say that he would bless Abraham?

God said he would bless Abraham because Abraham was willing to give God everything, even his only son ([05:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Should Sarai have told Abram to have a son with her servant Hagar?

The custom of the day allowed Sarai to have a son through her servant. But perhaps Sarai did this because she did not believe God could give Abram a son in their old age.

2. Why was Isaac called the **son of promise**?

Isaac was the **son of promise** because God would fulfil his promise to bless all nations through him. Even though Ishmael was also Abram's son, God had chosen to bless Abraham's descendants through Isaac instead of through Ishmael (See: [05:04](#)).

3. Why did God give new names to Abram and Sarai?

In the Old Testament, people were often named according what kind of people they were, or what they would do. God gave Abram and Sarai new names to show that they would have many descendants and would be honored by them.

4. Why did God test Abraham by asking him to kill Isaac?

God tested Abraham to show that Abraham would obey God no matter what God asked him to do. He would even sacrifice Isaac, his son of promise.

5. Was Abraham willing to kill Isaac as God asked?

Yes, Abraham was willing to obey everything God told him to do. He was ready to kill Isaac when God told him to stop (See: [05:08](#)).

6. Why did God provide a ram for the sacrifice?

Abraham told Isaac that God would provide a lamb for the sacrifice. But at that time, God provided a ram instead (See: [05:09](#)). Abraham was speaking about a sacrifice in the future when God would provide a perfect lamb.

7. Why did God say that Isaac was Abraham's only son?

Ishmael was also the son of Abraham. But Isaac was the son of promise that God had chosen to bless. Isaac was the only son through whom God would keep his covenant.

Summary

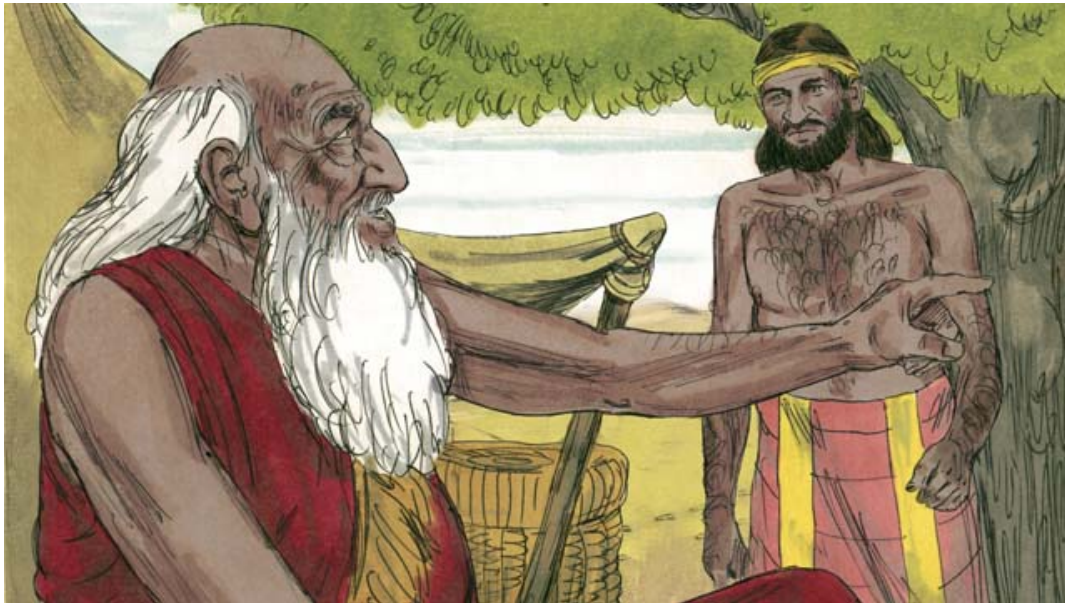
When Abram and Sarai were old, they still did not have a son as God had promised. Therefore, Sarai told Abram to have a son through her servant. Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram, but God had not chosen to keep his covenant with Abram through Ishmael. Instead, God allowed Sarai to give birth to Isaac in their old age. He was the son of promise. God tested Abraham to see if he would obey God and kill Isaac. When Abraham showed he was ready to do that, God stopped him and provided a ram for the sacrifice. God promised to bless the world through Abraham's family because Abraham obeyed him.

6. God Provides for Isaac

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 24:1-25:26

06:01



When Abraham was very old, his son Isaac had grown to be a man. So Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to bring back **a wife for his son**, Isaac.

a wife for his son

The people of Canaan did not worship God. Therefore, Abraham did not want Isaac to marry a woman from Canaan. Instead, he sent his servant to bring a wife for Isaac from Abraham's relatives where Abraham lived before coming to Canaan.

06:02



After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to Rebekah. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
(No study notes for this frame)

06:03



Rebekah agreed to leave her family and go back with the servant to Isaac's home. Isaac married her as soon as she arrived.

Rebekah agreed to leave her family

Although parents arranged marriages in that day, they apparently asked Rebekah if she was willing to go to Canaan and marry Isaac.

06:04



After a long time, Abraham died. **God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac** because of the covenant he had made with Abraham. One of God's promises in that covenant was that Abraham would have countless descendants. But Isaac's wife, Rebekah, could not have children.

God then blessed Abraham's son Isaac

God chose to give to Isaac and his descendants the things he promised in his covenant with Abraham (See: [05:04](#)). Ishmael did not receive those blessings, even though he was a son of Abraham.

06:05



Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. The two babies struggled with each other while they were still in Rebekah's womb, so Rebekah asked God what was happening.
(No study notes for this frame)

06:06

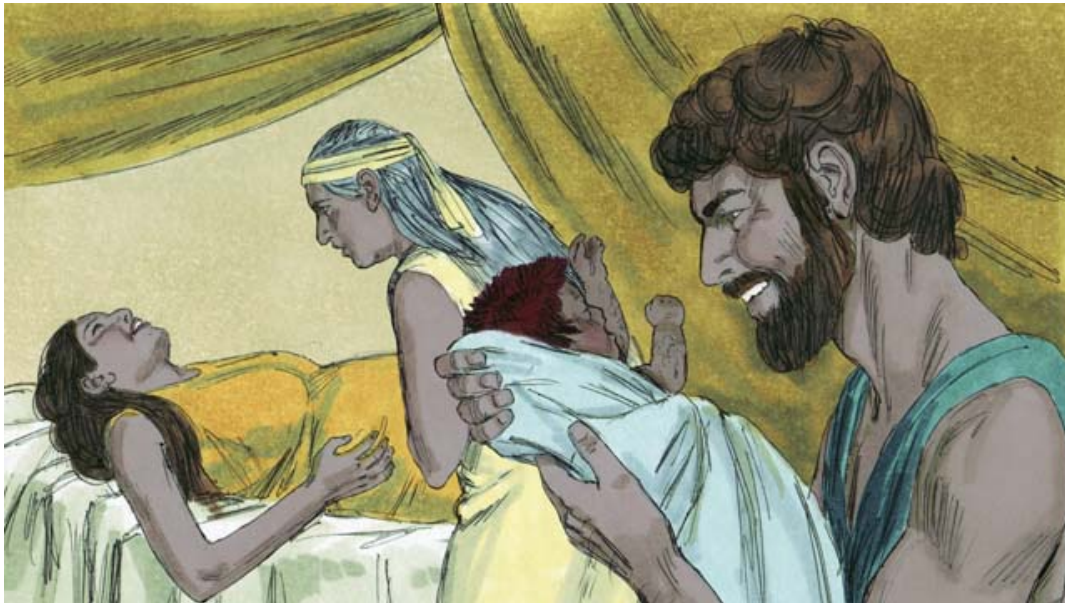


God told Rebekah, "You will give birth to two sons. **Their descendants will become two different nations.** They will struggle with each other. But the nation coming from your older son will have to obey the nation coming from your younger son."

Their descendants will become two different nations

The descendants of Jacob, the younger son, were the Israelites. The descendants of Esau, the older son, were the Edomites. The Israelites and the Edomites often fought against each other, but the Israelites would eventually become stronger than the Edomites.

06:07



When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him Esau. Then the younger son came out holding on to Esau's heel, and **they named him Jacob**.

they named him Jacob

The name, **Jacob** means "the one who grabs the heel." They named him Jacob because he was holding Esau's heel when he was born.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Abraham send his servant to do?

Abraham sent him to get a wife for his son Isaac from among Abraham's relatives (See: [06:01](#)).

2. How did Abraham's servant choose Rebekah as a wife for Isaac?

God led him to Rebekah (See: [06:02](#)).

3. Why did it seem as if Abraham would not have many descendants?

Isaac's wife, Rebekah, could not have children (See: [06:04](#)).

4. What did Isaac do when Rebekah could not have children?

Isaac prayed to God, and God allowed her to get pregnant (See: [06:05](#)).

5. What did God tell Rebekah would happen to her two sons?

God told her that her sons would become two nations who would struggle with each other. The nation from the older son would obey the nation from the younger son (See: [06:06](#)).

6. Who was Rebekah's older son?

Rebekah's older son was Esau.

7. Who was Rebekah's younger son?

Rebekah's younger son was Jacob.

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did Abraham send his servant so far away to find a wife for Isaac?

Abraham wanted Isaac to marry a woman who obeyed God. He did not want him to marry a woman from the tribes in Canaan who worshiped idols.

2. Why did Rebekah agree to leave her family and marry Isaac, whom she did not know?

Perhaps Rebekah believed that God had led Abraham's servant to her. She trusted God to provide the right husband for her.

3. Why could Rebekah not have children?

We do not know why Rebekah could not have children. She had obeyed God to leave her family and marry Isaac. Perhaps God wanted Isaac to pray for Rebekah, so that they would understand that God enabled her to become pregnant.

4. Why were the babies struggling with each other while they were still in Rebekah's womb?

While the babies were in Rebekah's womb, God had already caused them to be the kind of people that he wanted them to be. They would continue to struggle with each other throughout their lives. Also, God had already decided that they would be large nations, and that the nation from the older brother would obey the nation from the younger brother. God decided this before they were born.

5. Why was Jacob holding on to Esau's heel?

Later on, Jacob would take Esau's place by receiving the honor and possessions that should belong to the firstborn son. Perhaps Jacob was holding on to Esau's heel as a sign that he was already trying to hold Esau back and to take his place.

Summary

Abraham wanted to make sure that his son Isaac married a woman who believed in God, and not a woman who served idols. Therefore, he sent his servant far away to the land of his relatives to find the right wife for Isaac. God directed Abraham's servant to Rebekah, who trusted God. After Isaac married Rebekah, they could not have children. But God answered Isaac's prayer and she became pregnant with twin boys. Even while they were in her womb, God told Rebekah that they would become two nations, and that the nation from the older son would obey the nation from the younger son. In this way, God chose to keep his covenant with Abraham through Isaac's younger son, Jacob.

7. God Blesses Jacob

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 25:27-35:29

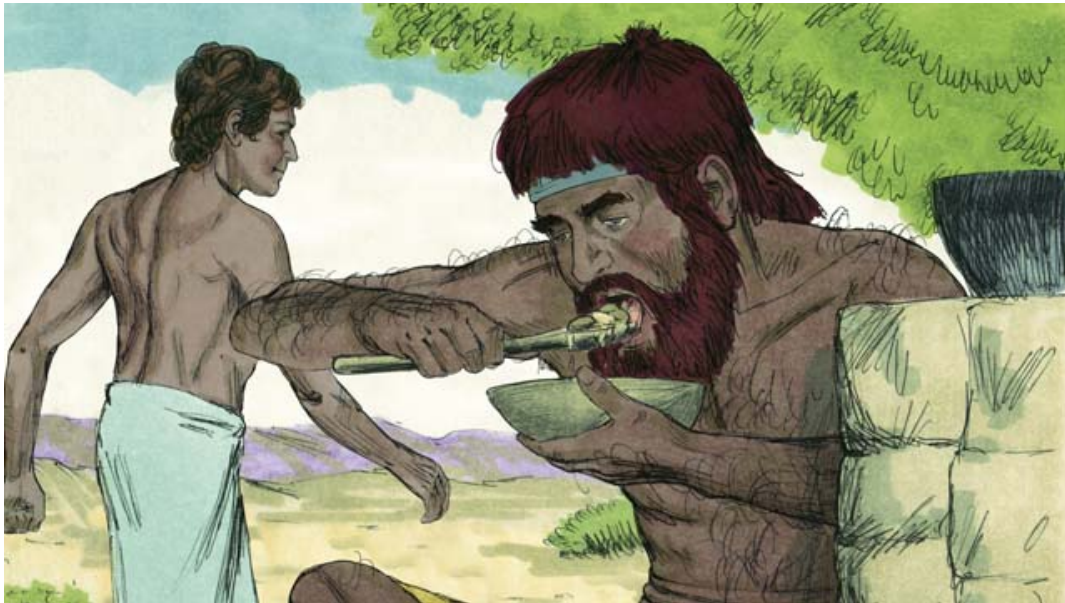
07:01



As the boys grew up, Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt animals. Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.

(No study notes for this frame)

07:02

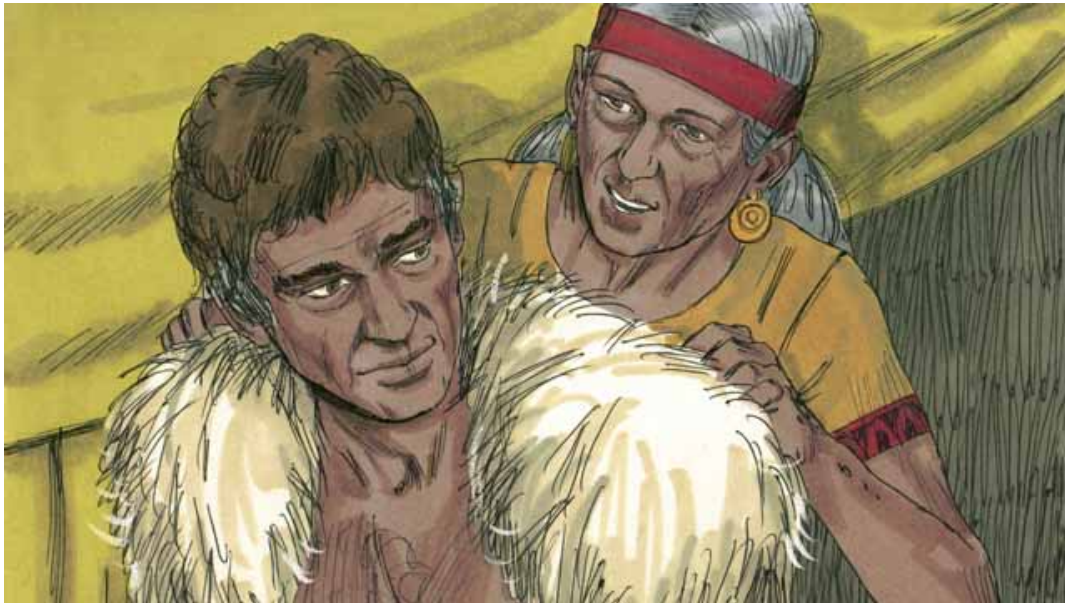


One day when Esau came back from hunting, he was very hungry. Esau said to Jacob, "Give me some of the food you have made." Jacob responded, "First, promise me that **everything you should receive because you were born first**, you will give it all to me." So Esau promised to give to Jacob all those things. Then Jacob gave him some food.

everything you should receive because you were born first

The older son always inherited twice as much of his father's possessions as the younger son. These things belonged to Esau, but Jacob wanted Esau to trade them to him for food.

07:03



Isaac wanted to **give his blessing** to Esau. But before he did, Rebekah and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau. Isaac was old and could no longer see. So Jacob put on Esau's clothes and put goatskins on his neck and hands.

give his blessing

Isaac loved Esau more than he loved Jacob. Therefore, before he died, Isaac wanted to formally ask God to bless and provide for Esau more than for Jacob. Isaac was following the normal custom of giving the best blessing to the oldest son.

07:04



Jacob came to Isaac and said, "I am Esau. I have come so that you can bless me." When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was Esau and blessed him.
(No study notes for this frame)

07:05



Esau hated Jacob because Jacob **had stolen his rights as oldest son** and also his blessing. So he planned to kill Jacob after their father died.

had stolen his rights as oldest son

Jacob did not steal Esau's rights as the older son. Esau traded them to Jacob for food (See: [07:02](#)). But Esau hated Jacob as if Jacob had stolen what belonged to him.

07:06

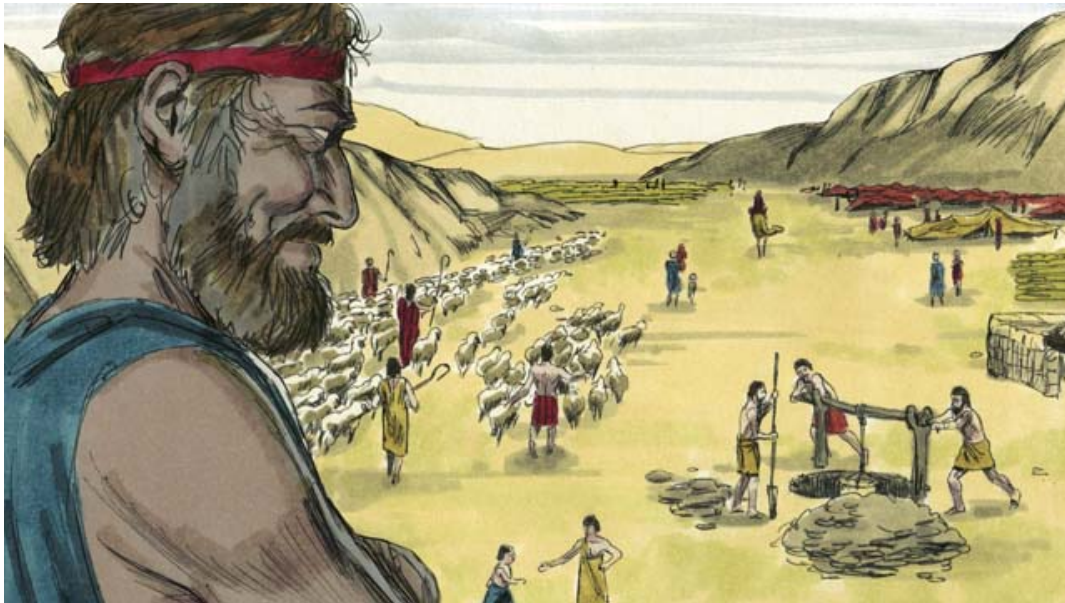


But Rebekah heard of Esau's plan. So she and Isaac sent Jacob **far away to live with her relatives.**

far away to live with her relatives

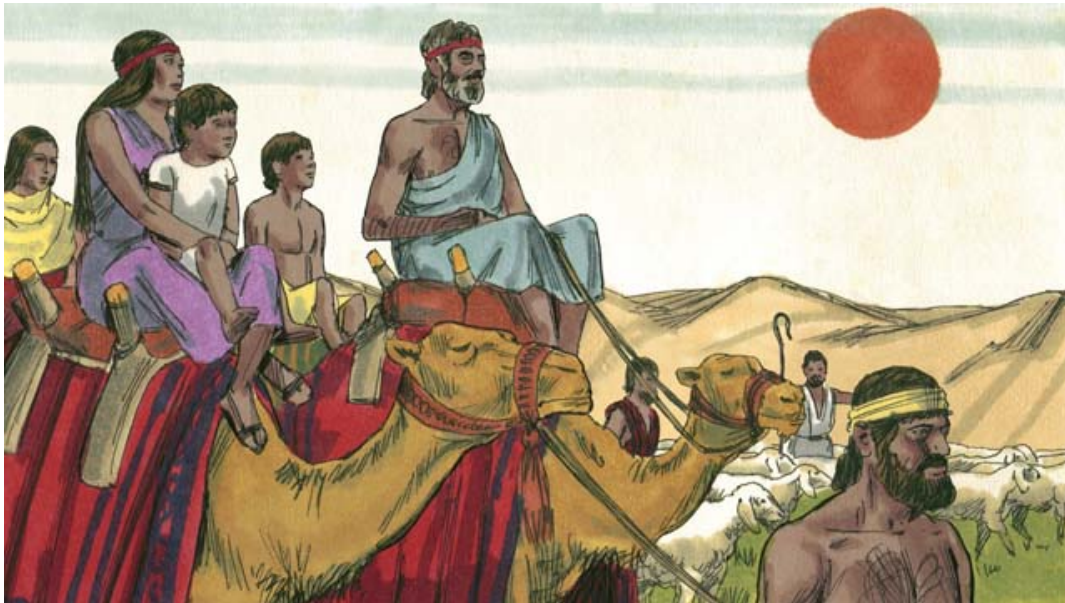
Rebekah's relatives were Abram's family. They lived in the land that Abram left when he came to Canaan (See: [04:04](#), [06:01](#), [06:02](#)).

07:07



Jacob lived with Rebekah's relatives for many years. During that time he married and had 12 sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
(No study notes for this frame)

07:08



After 20 years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his flocks and herds of animals.

(No study notes for this frame)

07:09



Jacob was very afraid because he thought Esau still wanted to kill him. So he sent many of his animals to Esau as a gift. The servants who brought the animals said to Esau, "Your servant, Jacob, is giving you these animals. He is coming soon."

(No study notes for this frame)

07:10



But Esau no longer wanted to harm Jacob. Instead, he was very happy to see him again, so the brothers lived peacefully in Canaan. Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. **The covenant promises God had made to Abraham now passed on from Isaac to Jacob.**

The covenant promises God had made to Abraham now passed on from Isaac to Jacob

The descendants of Jacob would receive the land and blessings that God promised to Abraham and Isaac (See: [05:03](#), [06:04](#)). Esau did not receive those blessings even though he was a son of Isaac.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did Isaac and Rebekah treat their sons differently?

Isaac loved Esau more than he loved Jacob. Rebekah loved Jacob more than she loved Esau (See: [07:01](#)).

2. What did Esau give to Jacob in exchange for some food?

Esau was the firstborn. As the firstborn, he deserved to receive more of his father's possessions than Jacob, and to be honored more than Jacob. However, Esau traded all those things to Jacob in exchange for some food (See: [07:02](#)).

3. Why did Rebekah and Jacob deceive Isaac by having Jacob pretend to be Esau?

Rebekah and Jacob wanted Isaac to bless Jacob instead of blessing Esau (See: [07:03](#), [07:04](#)).

4. Why did Jacob put goatskins on his neck and hands?

Jacob wanted his hands and neck to be hairy like his brother Esau's hands and neck. In that way, Isaac would feel the goat hair and think he was Esau (See: [07:03](#), [07:04](#)).

5. What did Esau plan to do to Jacob after Jacob stole his blessing?

Esau planned to wait until Isaac died, and then to kill Jacob (See: [07:05](#)).

6. What did Rebekah do to prevent Esau from killing Jacob?

Rebekah and Isaac sent Jacob far away to her relatives so Esau would not kill him (See: [07:06](#)).

7. How long did Jacob stay away from home?

Jacob stayed with Rebekah's relatives for twenty years. Then he returned home with the family God had given him while he was away (See: [07:08](#)).

8. How did Jacob try to convince Esau not to kill him?

He sent many herds of animals to Esau as a gift so that Esau would not still want to kill him (See: [07:09](#)).

9. Did Esau still want to kill Jacob?

Esau was no longer angry with Jacob, and did not want to kill him. Esau and Jacob both lived in Canaan, and even buried their father together (See: [07:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did Rebekah love Jacob more than she loved Esau?

Jacob stayed around the home where Rebekah lived. Furthermore, God had told Rebekah that her older son would serve the younger.

2. Why did Isaac love Esau more than he loved Jacob?

Esau loved to hunt. Perhaps Isaac also loved to hunt, and to eat the wild animals that they killed. This may be the reason he loved Esau more than he loved Jacob.

3. What problems happened because Isaac and Rebekah each loved a different son?

Jacob and Esau would have known that their parents did not love them equally. Perhaps this is why Jacob and Esau continually struggled with each other. They both tried to get what the other brother had.

4. Why was Esau willing to trade what was his as the firstborn for some food?

Esau did not care about the promises God made to Abraham. He was only interested in his food for that day. Later, he wanted to receive his father's inheritance. But he was not interested in receiving anything from God.

5. Jacob deceived Isaac to get his blessing. What does this tell us about Jacob?

It was good that Jacob wanted to have his father's blessing. But he was wrong to deceive his father in order to receive it. Because he did that, he had to flee from his brother and spend twenty years in another country.

6. Was Jacob a good person?

Jacob sometimes obeyed God, and he wanted God's blessing. At the same time, Jacob had many faults. He often tried to trick people to get what he wanted. Nevertheless, God blessed Jacob because he had promised to Abraham that he would bless his descendants.

Summary

God chose to bless Jacob even before he was born, and he was faithful to do that. However, Jacob did not always act in a way that was right. He often deceived other people in order to get what he wanted. Nevertheless, God knew that Jacob wanted to worship God. Also, God promised Abraham that he would bless his descendants. Therefore, God blessed Jacob even when he fled from his brother. He brought Jacob back to Canaan again, and blessed his family. Jacob was not always right, but he believed God.

8. God Saves Joseph and His Family

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 37-50

08:01



Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent **his favorite son, Joseph**, to check on his brothers who were **taking care of the flocks**.

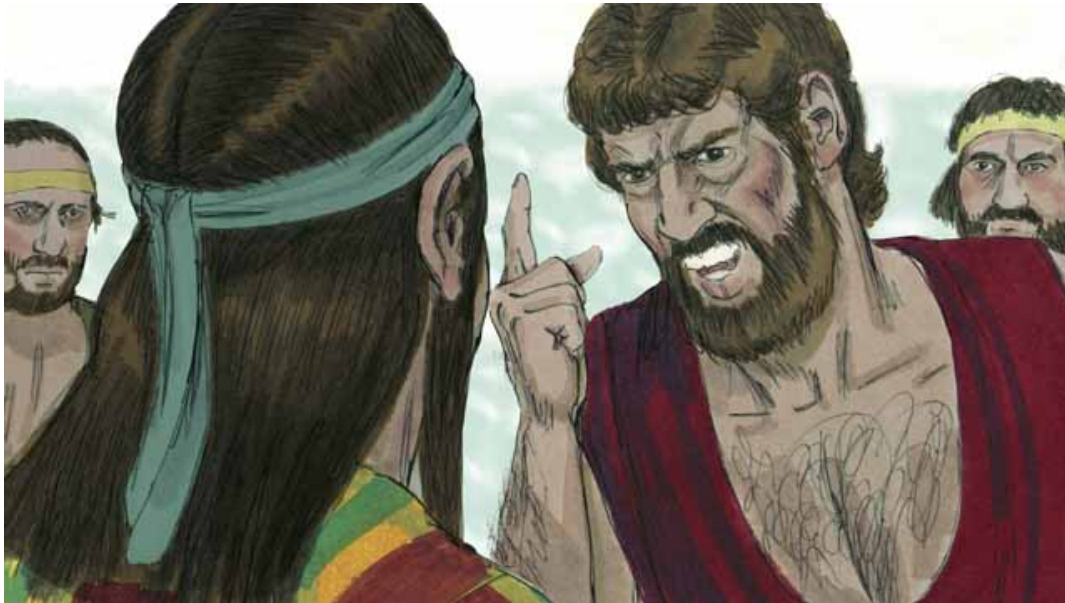
his favorite son, Joseph

Jacob had four wives and 12 sons. Joseph was the son of Rachel, whom Jacob loved more than his other wives. Therefore, Jacob loved Joseph more than his other sons.

taking care of the flocks

People at that time allowed their animals to go wherever they could find grass to eat. Someone traveled along with the animals to protect them.

08:02

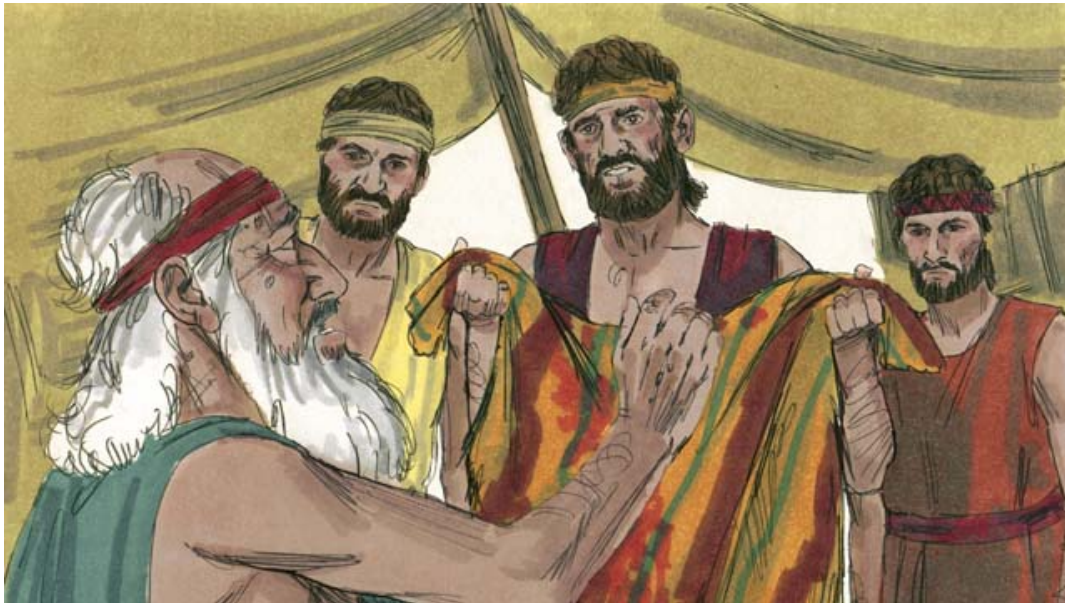


Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most, and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. When Joseph came to his brothers, they took him captive and sold him to some **slave traders**.

slave traders

Slave traders bought people to be used as slaves. They then sold them to other people for a profit. They often traveled very far to buy and sell slaves.

08:03



Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and **dipped it in goat's blood**. Then they showed the robe to their father so he would think that a wild animal had killed Joseph. Jacob was very sad.

dipped it in goat's blood

Joseph's brothers wanted their father to think the blood on the robe was Joseph's blood.

08:04



The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River. The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official. Joseph served his master well, and God blessed Joseph.

(No study notes for this frame)

08:05



His master's wife tried to sleep with Joseph, but Joseph refused to sin against God in this way. **She became angry** and falsely accused Joseph so that he was arrested and sent to prison. Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.

She became angry

The wife of the government official who bought Joseph was angry that Joseph would not sleep with her. She lied about Joseph to her husband so he would be angry with Joseph and put him in prison.

08:06

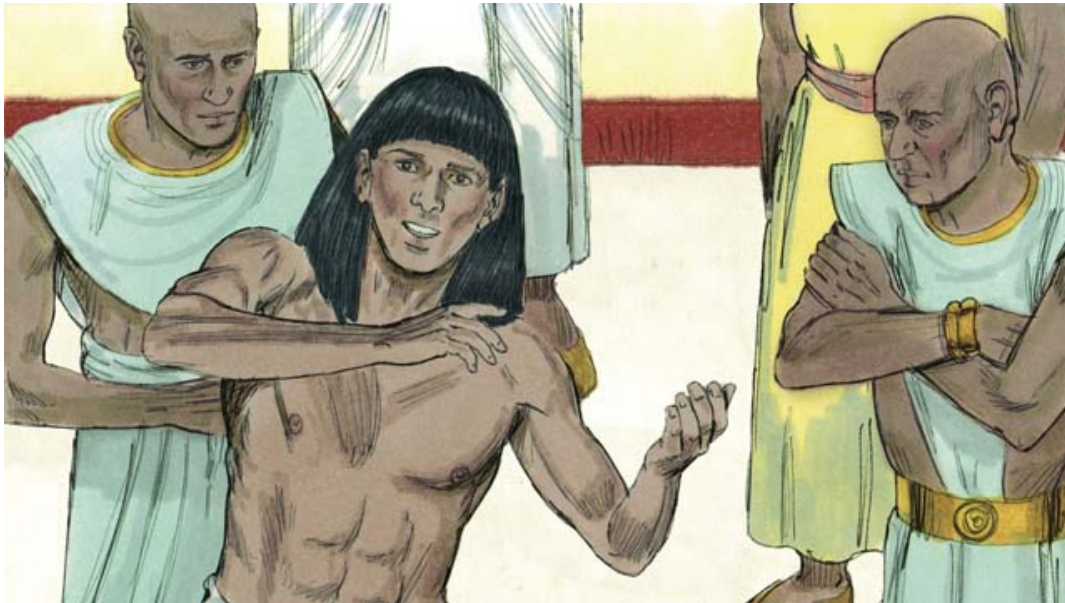


After two years, Joseph was still in prison even though he was innocent. One night the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him **the meaning of the dreams**.

the meaning of the dreams

The Egyptians believed that God spoke to the Pharaoh through his dreams. Pharaoh's advisors normally helped him understand what his dreams meant.

08:07



God had given Joseph the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the dreams for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
(No study notes for this frame)

08:08



Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!

Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph

Pharaoh was impressed with Joseph because Joseph was the only person who was able to tell Pharaoh what God was saying through Pharaoh's dreams.

08:09



Joseph told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. When the seven years of famine came, Joseph sold the food to the people so they would have enough to eat.
(No study notes for this frame)

08:10



The famine was severe not only in Egypt, but also in Canaan where Jacob and his family lived.

The famine

The famine began seven years later, after the seven years of good harvests (See: [08:07](#)).

08:11

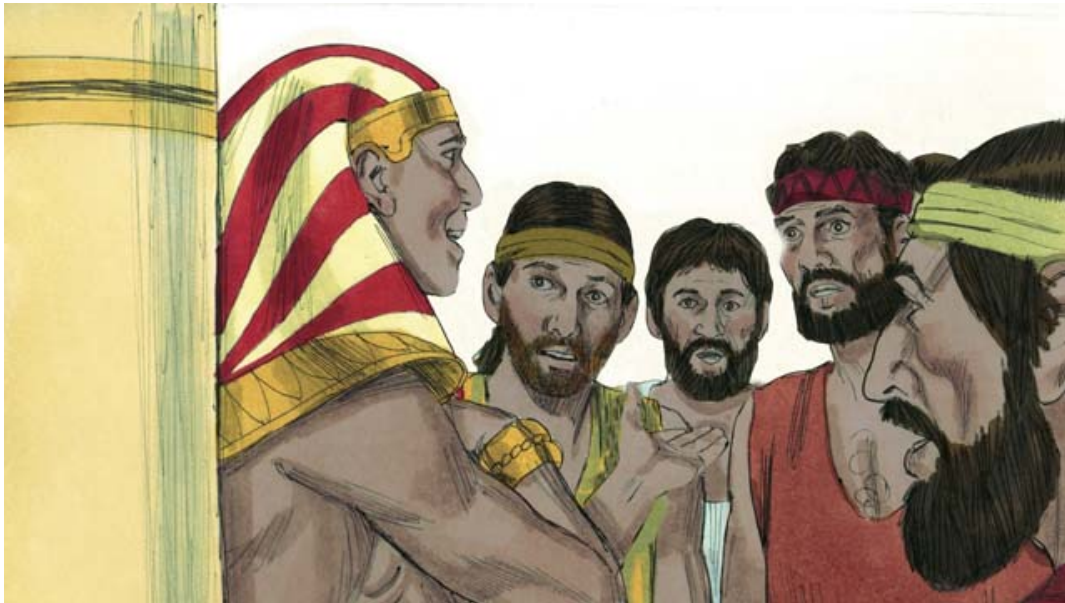


So, Jacob sent his older sons to Egypt to buy food. **The brothers did not recognize Joseph** when they stood before him to buy food. But Joseph recognized them.

The brothers did not recognize Joseph

The brothers came to Egypt at least ten years after they sold Joseph into slavery. They did not recognize Joseph because he was ten years older and was dressed as an Egyptian official.

08:12



After testing his brothers to see **if they had changed**, Joseph said to them, "I am your brother, Joseph! Do not be afraid. You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but **God used the evil for good!** Come and live in Egypt so I can provide for you and your families."

if they had changed

Joseph's brothers did evil when they sold him as a slave (See: [08:02](#)). He now wanted to know if his brothers would still treat people badly.

God used the evil for good

Joseph was willing to forgive his brothers because he believed that God had caused their evil action to result in a good thing. By going to Egypt as a slave, Joseph gained the power to save his whole family from the famine.

08:13

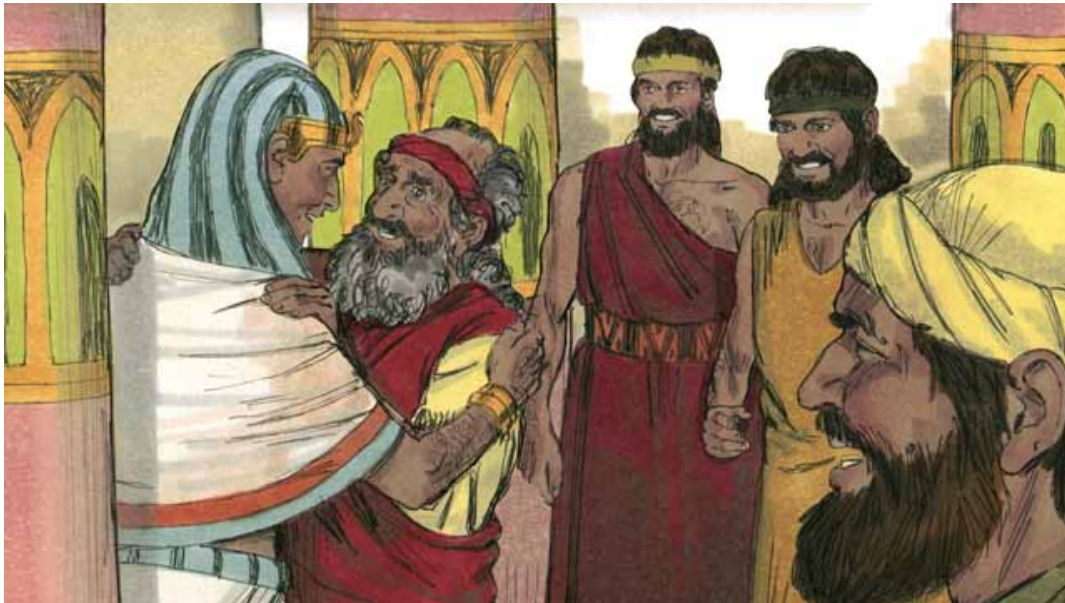


When **Joseph's brothers returned home** and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.

Joseph's brothers returned home

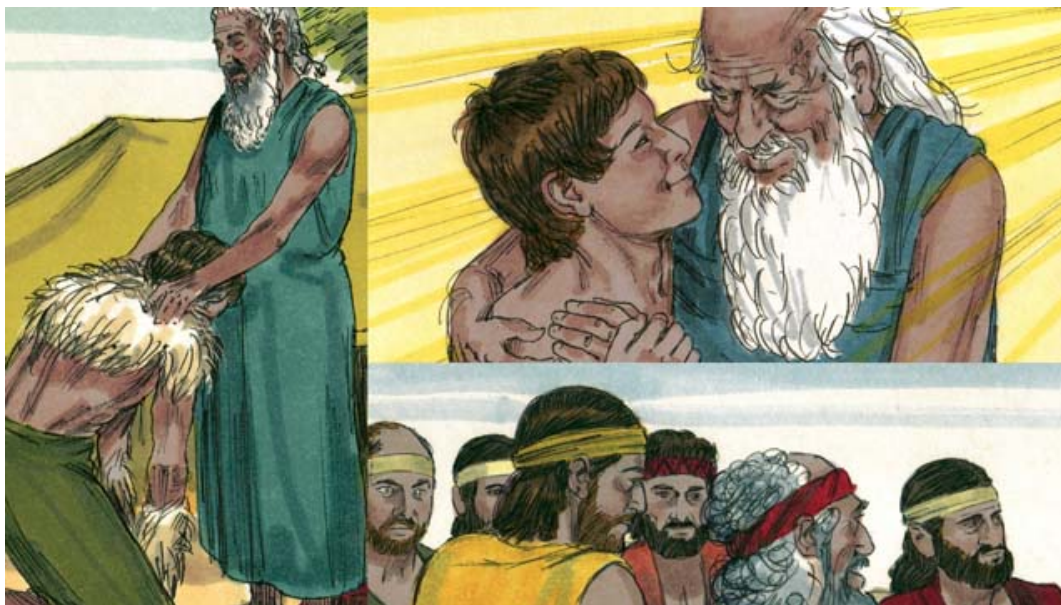
The brothers returned home in order to bring their father and their families from Canaan to Egypt so they would survive the famine.

08:14



Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there. Before Jacob died, he blessed each of his sons.
(No study notes for this frame)

08:15



The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's 12 sons and their families. The descendants of the 12 sons became **the 12 tribes of Israel.**

The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's 12 sons and their families

All the descendants of Jacob would receive the land and blessings that God promised to Abraham and Isaac (See: [05:03](#), [06:04](#), [07:10](#)).

the 12 tribes of Israel

God changed Jacob's name to Israel. Therefore, the descendants of his 12 sons were called the 12 tribes of Israel.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did Jacob feel about his son Joseph?

Jacob loved Joseph more than he loved his other 11 sons (See: [08:01](#)).

2. Why did Joseph's brothers hate him?

They hated Joseph because Jacob loved Joseph more than he loved his other sons, and because Joseph dreamed he would rule over his brothers (See: [08:02](#)).

3. What did Joseph's brothers do to get rid of Joseph?

Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave (See: [08:02](#)). Then they deceived their father into thinking that an animal had killed Joseph (See: [08:03](#)).

4. Why did the Egyptians put Joseph in prison?

The wife of Joseph's Egyptian master lied and said Joseph tried to sleep with her. Her husband believed her and sent Joseph to prison (See: [08:05](#)).

5. What did God do for Joseph while he was in prison?

Joseph remained faithful to God, so God blessed him even in the prison (See: [08:05](#)).

6. How did Joseph get out of prison?

Pharaoh had a dream that no one could interpret (See: [08:06](#)). When Joseph told him the meaning of the dream, Pharaoh made Joseph the second most powerful person in Egypt (See: [08:07](#), [08:08](#)).

7. Why did Joseph's brothers come to Egypt?

There was a great famine and there was no food for them in Canaan (See: [08:10](#)). They came to Egypt to buy food (See: [08:11](#)).

8. How did Joseph treat his brothers when they came to him in Egypt?

Joseph first tested them to see if they had changed. Then he told them who he was and promised to take care of them all in Egypt (See: [08:12](#)).

9. Who became the 12 tribes of Israel?

God changed Jacob's name to Israel. The descendants of each of his 12 sons then became the tribes of Israel (See: [08:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What mistake did Jacob make in the way he treated his sons?

Jacob loved one of his sons more than he loved his other sons. This was the same mistake that his father Isaac made. As a result, Jacob's sons hated Joseph and sold him as a slave.

2. Why was God with Joseph even as a slave and as a prisoner?

Joseph was always faithful to God, even when he suffered for doing the right thing. Therefore, God blessed Joseph and eventually restored him to his family.

How did God make it possible for Joseph to go from prison to the palace in Egypt?
3.

God caused Pharaoh to have a dream that no one could interpret. He then revealed the meaning of the dream to Joseph. In that way, God provided a way for Joseph to be released from prison and to begin to rule over Egypt.

4. Why did Joseph not punish his brothers?

Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave. He could have been very angry with them. But Joseph saw that God was the one who sent Joseph to Egypt through his brothers' evil actions. God did this to save Joseph's entire family. Therefore, Joseph forgave his brothers and took care of them.

5. Why did Jacob move his family to Egypt?

God caused the famine so that Jacob would have to move his family to Egypt. God wanted them to grow into a large nation there.

Summary

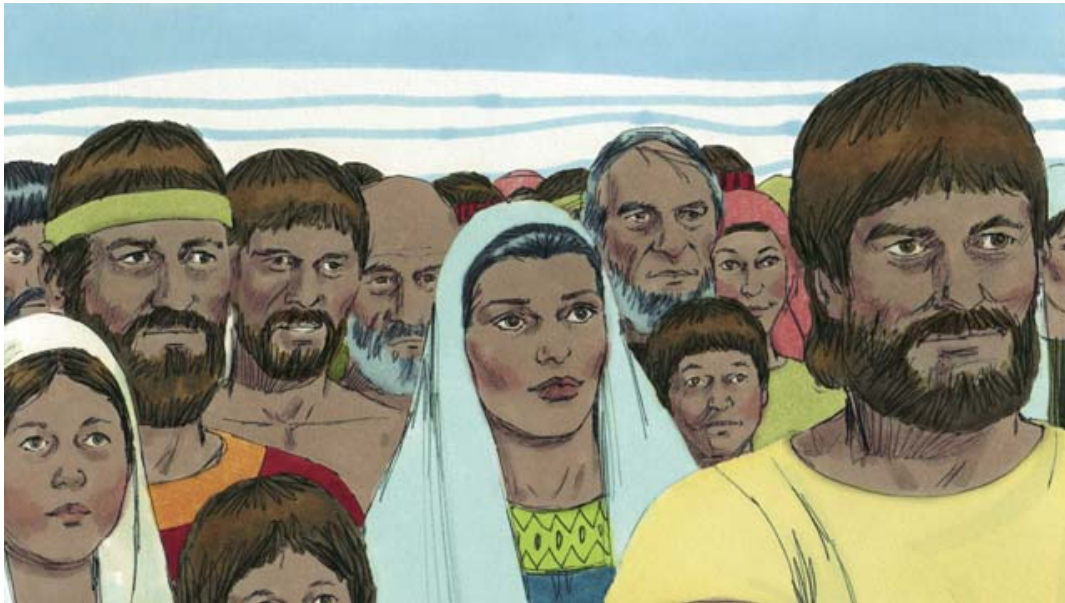
God sometimes allows bad things to happen and people to do evil things. But God is always in control. He is doing the things that will fulfil his plan. He allowed Joseph's brothers to sell him as a slave so that Joseph would be in Egypt. He even allowed Joseph to be in prison. But he blessed Joseph even there. Next, God caused Pharaoh to have a dream for Joseph to interpret. This made Joseph the second most powerful man in Egypt. Finally, God sent a famine throughout the land so that Jacob and his family would have to come to Egypt for food. But God had already placed Joseph in Egypt to care for them during the famine. God was always working in Joseph's life, and Joseph was always faithful to him.

9. God Calls Moses

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 1-4

09:01

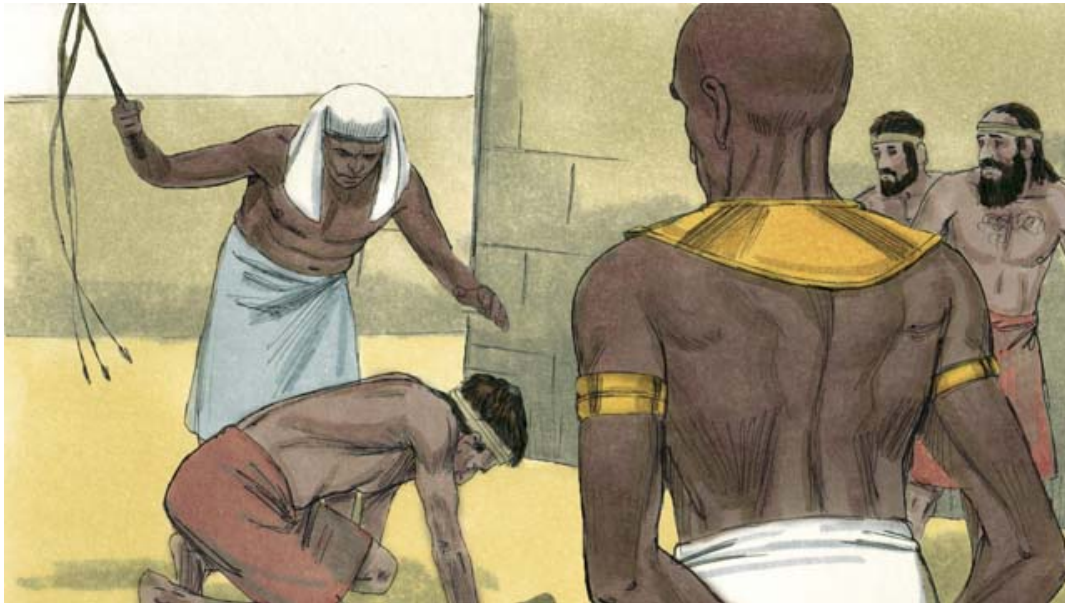


After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in Egypt. They and their descendants continued to live there for many years and had many children. They were called **the Israelites**.

the Israelites

God changed Jacob's name to Israel. Therefore, Jacob's descendants were called the Israelites.

09:02



After hundreds of years, the number of Israelites had become very large. The Egyptians were no longer grateful that **Joseph had done so much to help them**. They became afraid of the Israelites because there were so many of them. So the Pharaoh who was ruling Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.

Joseph had done so much to help them

Joseph warned the Egyptians about the famine so they could store up grain in advance (See: [08:08](#)). In this way, he saved the Egyptians.

09:03

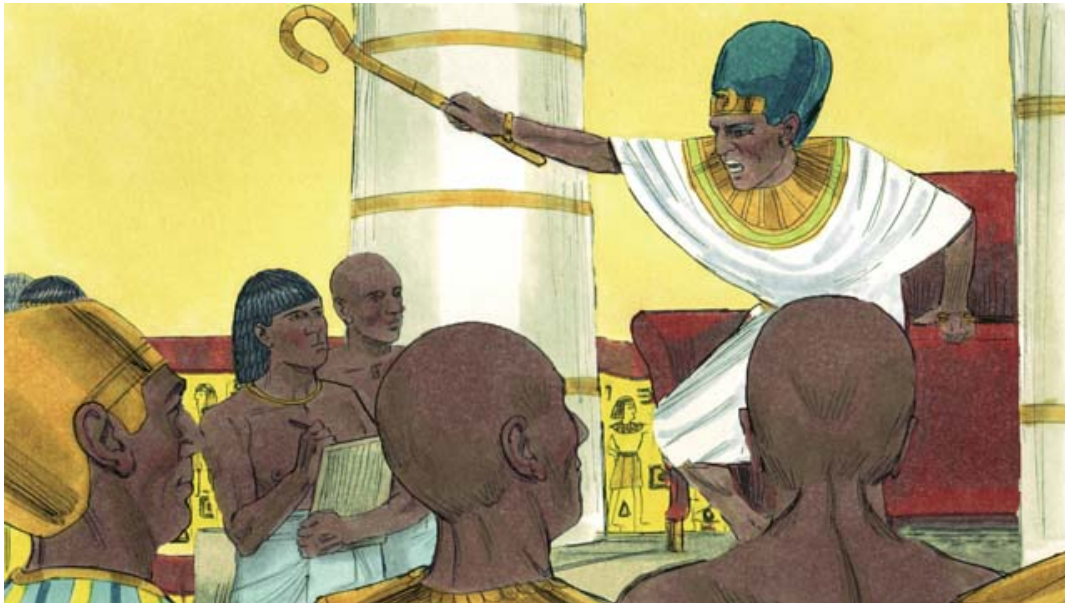


The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities. The hard work made their lives miserable, but **God blessed them**, and they had even more children.

God blessed them

The Egyptians made the Israelites slaves so they would become weaker. But God blessed the Israelites so they became stronger instead.

09:04



Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the Nile River.
(No study notes for this frame)

09:05



A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy. She hid the baby for as long as she could.
(No study notes for this frame)

09:06



When the boy's mother could no longer hide him, she put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the Nile River in order to save him from being killed. His older sister watched to see what would happen to him. (No study notes for this frame)

09:07



A daughter of Pharaoh saw the basket and looked inside. When she saw the baby, **she took him as her own son**. She hired an Israelite woman to nurse him without realizing the woman was the baby's own mother. When the child was old enough that he no longer needed his mother's milk, his mother returned him to Pharaoh's daughter, who named him Moses.

she took him as her own son

Pharaoh's daughter treated Moses as if he were her own Egyptian son. For that reason, the Egyptians did not kill him as they killed the other Israelite baby boys (See: [09:04](#)).

09:08



One day, when Moses had grown up, he saw an Egyptian beating an Israelite slave. Moses tried to save his fellow Israelite.

(No study notes for this frame)

09:09



When Moses thought nobody would see, he killed the Egyptian and **buried his body**. But someone saw what Moses had done.

buried his body

Moses buried the Egyptian's body to hide it. Moses did not want anyone to know that he had killed an Egyptian.

09:10



Pharaoh learned what Moses had done. **He tried to kill him**, but Moses fled from Egypt into **the wilderness**. Pharaoh's soldiers could not find him there.

He tried to kill him

Pharaoh realized that Moses was helping the Israelites and was against the Egyptians. That is why he wanted to kill Moses.

the wilderness

The wilderness where Moses fled was a desert area that was east of Egypt. This area today is called the Sinai.

09:11



Moses became a shepherd in the wilderness far away from Egypt. He married a woman from that place and had two sons.

(No study notes for this frame)

09:12



Moses was taking care of his father-in-law's flock of sheep. One day he saw a bush on fire, burning without being destroyed. He went close to the bush to look at it. When he was very close, God spoke to him and said, "Moses, **take off your shoes**. You are standing on **holy ground**."

take off your shoes

God told Moses to take off his shoes to show his respect for God. The ground around the burning bush was a special place because God was there.

holy ground

The term **holy** refers to the character of God. He is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect. The place where Moses stood was also set apart for God.

09:13



Then God said, "I have seen the suffering of **my people**. I will send you to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt. **I will give them the land of Canaan**, the land I promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob."

my people

God said the descendants of Abraham were his people. God wanted to say that the Israelites were special to him. He would treat them better than other people because Abraham honored him (See: [05:10](#)).

I will give them the land of Canaan

God was going to keep his promise to give the land of Canaan to Abraham's descendants, even though they were slaves at that time (See: [08:15](#), [09:02](#)).

09:14



Moses asked, "What if the people want to know who sent me, what should I say?" God said, "**I AM WHO I AM**. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.' This is my name forever."

I AM WHO I AM

God wanted to say that he has always existed as God, and was not created by anyone else.

Yahweh

This is the name that God has chosen for himself. Hebrew was originally written without vowels, so the letters written for this name were YHWH, which would be spoken as **Yahweh**.

09:15



Moses was afraid and **did not want to go to Pharaoh** because **he thought he could not speak well**, so God sent Moses' brother, Aaron, to help him.

did not want to go to Pharaoh

Moses knew that Pharaoh wanted to kill him (See: [09:10](#)).

he thought he could not speak well

Moses said this was why he did not want to go to Pharaoh, but the real reason was that Moses was afraid of Pharaoh.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did the Egyptians make the Israelites slaves?

They were afraid of the Israelites because there were so many of them (See: [09:02](#)).

2. What did God do for the Israelites while they were slaves in Egypt?

God blessed them so they had even more children (See: [09:03](#)).

3. How did Pharaoh try to stop the Israelites from having larger families?

Pharaoh ordered his people to kill all the Israelite baby boys (See: [09:04](#)).

4. Why did the Israelite woman put her baby boy in a basket in the river?

She did not want him to be killed. Perhaps she hoped someone would find him floating in the basket and rescue him (See: [09:06](#)).

5. Who did Pharaoh's daughter hire to nurse the baby boy?

Pharaoh's daughter hired the baby's own mother to nurse him, although she did not know that she was his mother (See: [09:07](#)).

6. Why did Moses kill the Egyptian?

He was trying to save the Israelite whom the Egyptian was beating (See: [09:08](#), [09:09](#)).

7. How did God appear to Moses?

God appeared to Moses in a bush that was on fire, but which did not burn up (See: [09:12](#)).

8. Why did God send Moses to the Israelites?

God told Moses to bring the Israelites out of slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the land of Canaan (See: [09:13](#)).

9. What did God say that his name was?

God told Moses that his name was **I AM WHO I AM** or **I AM** (See: [09:14](#)).

10. Why did God send Aaron to help Moses?

Moses said he did not speak well, so God sent his brother Aaron to help him (See: [09:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. God led the Israelites to Egypt. Why did they suffer there?

God sent the Israelites to Egypt to protect them during the famine (See: [08:12](#)). However, the Egyptians later began to treat them badly and made them slaves. They suffered even though they had obeyed God. But God blessed them even while they suffered in Egypt.

2. Why did Moses' mother defy Pharaoh's order to kill all the Israelite baby boys?

She knew that it was wrong to kill her son. Therefore, she did not obey Pharaoh. She hid Moses as long as she could, and then placed him in a basket in the river so that someone might rescue him. By doing so, She made it possible for Moses to later rescue Israel from Egypt.

3. How was Moses' mother able to care for Moses?

God caused Pharaoh's daughter to find Moses and want to keep him as her son. Then God caused her to hire Moses' own mother to nurse him. In this way, God blessed Moses' mother for refusing to obey Pharaoh and for doing what was right.

4. What happened to Moses when he tried to rescue his fellow Israelite?

Moses killed the Egyptian in order to save an Israelite. But then he had to flee from Egypt so Pharaoh would not kill him. It was not yet time for Moses to help the Israelites. And God did not want Moses to save them by his own power. Instead, God sent Moses into the wilderness until God was ready to send him to deliver the Israelites.

5. What did God tell Moses his name was?

God said he was **Yahweh**, which means 'I AM WHO I AM.' That means God always exists and does not depend on anyone else. He also said he was **the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob**. That means he is the same God that they worshiped hundreds of years before Moses. And he is the same God who made a lasting covenant with them.

6. How did Moses respond when God told him to go to Pharaoh?

Moses was afraid and did not want to go. Even though he was raised as part of the royal family of Egypt, he was not sure he could do what God told him to do. But God was kind to him and sent Aaron to help him.

Summary

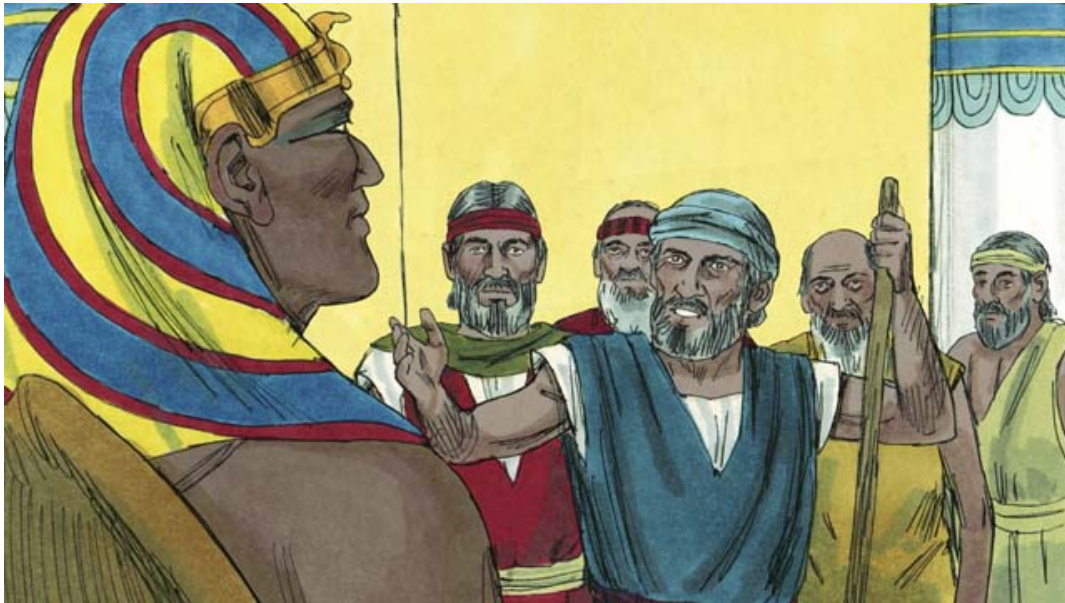
Even while the Israelites suffered as slaves in Egypt, God was blessing them. He was also preparing Moses to rescue them, even while Moses was only a baby. He guided what happened to Moses so that he could meet Moses in the wilderness and send him to rescue the Israelites. He told Moses that he was Yahweh, their God and the God who had promised their ancestors that he would continue to bless them and give them the land of Canaan.

10. The Ten Plagues

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 5-10

10:01



God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be stubborn. When they went to Pharaoh, they said, "This is what **the God of Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'" But **Pharaoh did not listen to them**. Instead of letting the Israelites go free, **he forced them to work even harder!**

the God of Israel

Pharaoh may have thought that this **God of Israel** only ruled over the Israelites. He did not yet understand that the God who ruled over Israel also ruled over the entire world.

Let my people go!

God told Moses to bring the Israelites out of Egypt (See: [09:13](#)).

Pharaoh did not listen to them

Pharaoh heard what Moses and Aaron said, but did not do what they told him to do.

he forced them to work even harder

Pharaoh was angry that the Israelites wanted to leave Egypt. He made them work harder as a way to punish them for that desire.

10:02



Pharaoh kept refusing to let the people go, so God sent **ten terrible plagues** on Egypt. Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that **he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods**.

ten terrible plagues

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods

Pharaoh asked the false gods of Egypt to stop the plagues, but the plagues continued. This proved to Pharaoh and the Egyptians that the God of Israel also ruled over Egypt.

10:03



God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
(No study notes for this frame)

10:04



God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh begged Moses to take away the frogs. But after all the frogs died, **Pharaoh hardened his heart** and would not let the Israelites leave Egypt.

Pharaoh hardened his heart

Pharaoh became stubborn and decided not to believe and obey God. Pharaoh did this after most of the plagues.

10:05



So God sent a plague of gnats. Then he sent a plague of flies. Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt. When Moses prayed, God removed all the flies from Egypt. But Pharaoh hardened his heart and would not let the people go free.
(No study notes for this frame)

10:06



Next, God caused all the farm animals that belonged to the Egyptians to get sick and die. But Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he would not let the Israelites go.
(No study notes for this frame)

10:07



Then God told Moses to throw ashes into the air in front of Pharaoh. When he did, painful skin sores appeared on the Egyptians, **but not on the Israelites**. God hardened Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh would not let the Israelites go free.

but not on the Israelites

God caused the sores to affect only the Egyptians in order to show that he was against the Egyptians, but not against the Israelites.

10:08

After that, God sent **hail** that destroyed most of the crops in Egypt and killed anybody who went outside. Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them, "**I have sinned**. You may go." So Moses prayed, and the hail stopped falling from the sky.

hail

Hail is chunks of ice that fall from the sky. These chunks are often large enough to destroy plants, and can even kill people or animals.

I have sinned

Pharaoh finally realized that he had disobeyed God and that the plagues were God's punishment for not letting the Israelites leave Egypt.

10:09



But Pharaoh sinned again and hardened his heart. He would not let the Israelites go free.
(No study notes for this frame)

10:10



So God caused swarms of locusts to come over Egypt. These locusts ate all the crops that the hail had not destroyed.

(No study notes for this frame)

10:11



Then God sent darkness that lasted for three days. It was so dark that the Egyptians could not leave their houses. But **there was light where the Israelites lived.**

there was light where the Israelites lived

This was not a normal darkness. The parts of Egypt where the Egyptians lived was completely dark even during the daytime. But the places in Egypt where the Israelites lived had sunshine in the daytime as they normally did.

10:12



Even after these nine plagues, Pharaoh still refused to let the Israelites go free. Since Pharaoh would not listen, God planned to send **one last plague**. This would change Pharaoh's mind.

one last plague

This final plague would be much worse than the previous ones. It would be so terrible that it would force Pharaoh to finally agree to let the Israelites leave Egypt.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did Pharaoh respond when Moses told him that God wanted him to let the Israelites go?

Pharaoh not only refused to let the Israelites go, he also made work harder than before (See: [10:01](#)).

2. What did God do to Egypt when Pharaoh refused to let the Israelites go?

God sent ten terrible plagues that caused the people of Egypt to suffer greatly and to even die (See: [10:02](#)).

3. How did Pharaoh respond to Moses when the frogs covered Egypt?

Pharaoh begged Moses to take away the frogs. However, he still did not let the Israelites go (See: [10:04](#)).

4. How did Pharaoh act deceitfully about the plague of the flies?

Pharaoh promised Moses that the Israelites could leave Egypt if Moses stopped the plague. But when Moses did that, Pharaoh changed his mind and did not let them go (See: [10:05](#)).

5. How did God treat the Egyptians differently than the Israelites during the plague of the skin sores?

God caused the sores on the Egyptians, but not on the Israelites (See: [10:07](#)).

6. How did Pharaoh again act deceitfully about the plague of the hail?

Pharaoh again promised Moses that the Israelites could leave Egypt if Moses stopped the plague of the hail (See: [10:08](#)). But after the hail stopped, Pharaoh again changed his mind and would not let them go (See: [10:09](#)).

7. How did God again treat the Egyptians differently than the Israelites during the plague of the darkness?

God caused the darkness on the Egyptians, but there was light where the Israelites lived (See: [10:11](#)).

8. What did God decide to do to the Egyptians since Pharaoh refused to obey God after the first nine plagues?

God decided to send a final plague that would be worse than the other nine plagues. This one would cause Pharaoh to let the Israelites leave Egypt (See: [10:12](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Did God know that Pharaoh would not let the Israelites go when Moses asked him?

God already knew that Pharaoh would be stubborn and would not agree to let the Israelites go at first. However, he expected Moses and Aaron to tell Pharaoh what God had said and to wait for God to change Pharaoh's mind.

2. Why did God send the ten plagues on Egypt?

God wanted to show Pharaoh and all the people in Egypt that Yahweh is more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of Egypt. Even the other nations would hear about how God had forced Pharaoh to obey him and let the people go.

3. What kinds of things did God cause to be plagues on the Egyptians?

God used the normal things of Egypt to punish them. He turned the Nile River, animals, insects, and even the sun into plagues that caused them to suffer. The Egyptians used to worship all of these things as gods before the plagues happened.

4. Why did God cause some of the plagues to happen only to the Egyptians, and not to the Israelites?

Through the plagues, God was showing the Egyptians and the Israelites that the Israelites belonged to him as his people. He protected the Israelites from many of the plagues so everyone would know that he was their God.

5. Why did God send ten plagues instead of sending only the last plague?

God knew that the first nine plagues would not convince Pharaoh to obey him. However, those plagues showed all the people how powerful God was. When God had done that, he was ready to send the final plague to force Pharaoh to let the people go.

Summary

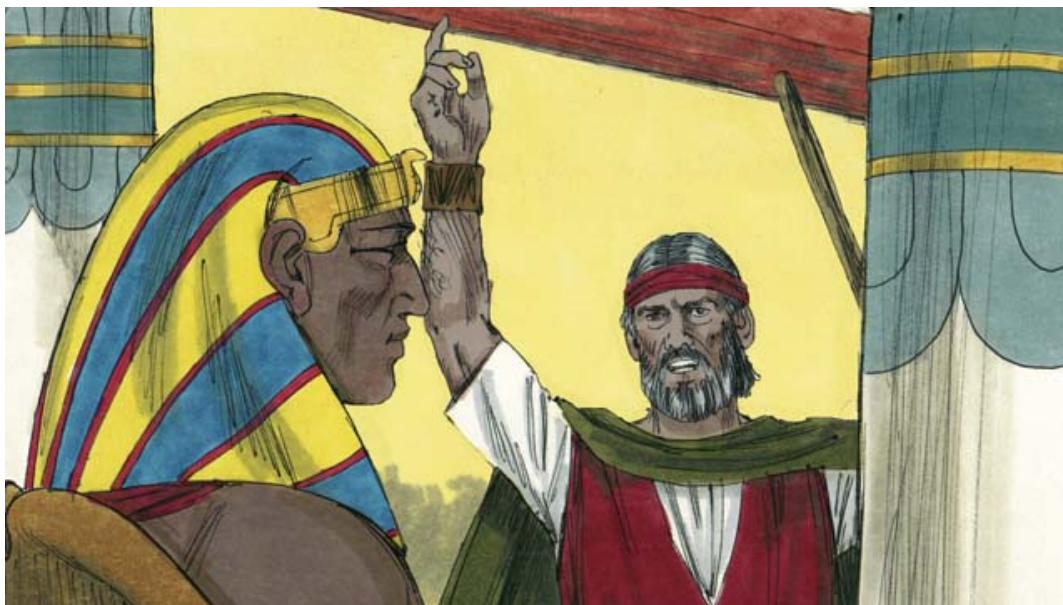
God knew that Pharaoh would be stubborn and would not easily let the Israelites leave Egypt. But God wanted to show that he was more powerful than Pharaoh or the gods of Egypt. Therefore, God sent nine plagues that punished the Egyptians for not obeying God. Each plague was more severe and caused the Egyptians to suffer more. During the plagues, God also protected the Israelites to show them that he was their God and that they were his people. Pharaoh continually refused to let the people go even as the Egyptians suffered from the plagues. However, God planned to send a final plague to force Pharaoh to obey him.

11. The Passover

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 11:1-12:32

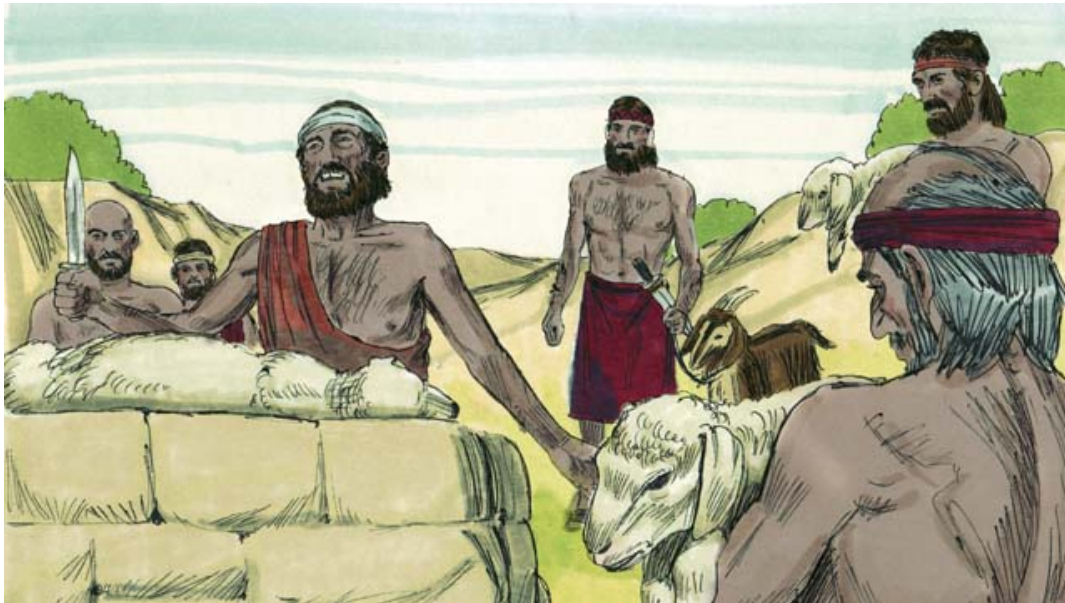
11:01



God sent Moses and Aaron to tell Pharaoh to let the Israelites go. They warned him that, if he did not let them go, God would kill all the firstborn males of Egypt's people and animals. When Pharaoh heard this, he still refused to believe and obey God.

(No study notes for this frame)

11:02



God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. **Each family** had to choose a perfect lamb and kill it.

Each family

Every Egyptian and Israelite family had to select and kill a lamb in the way that God told them to do it. If any family obeyed and did this, God would not kill their firstborn son.

11:03



God told the Israelites **to put the blood of this lamb around the door of their houses**. They should roast the meat. Then they should quickly eat it, along with **unleavened bread**. He also told them to be ready to leave Egypt immediately after they ate this meal.

to put the blood of this lamb around the door of their houses

The Israelites put the blood on the frame of the door of their houses to show that they had killed the lamb just as God told them to do.

unleavened bread

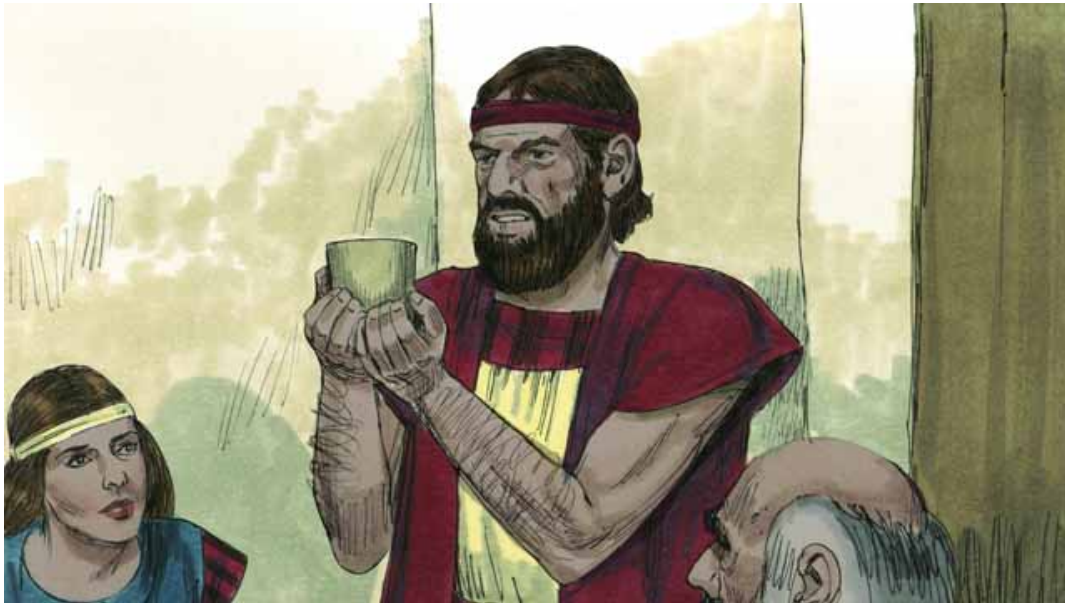
Unleavened bread is bread that is prepared without yeast. People can make unleavened bread very quickly because they do not need to wait for the dough to rise before they bake it. The unleavened bread shows that this meal was urgent and the people needed to do it quickly.

11:04



The Israelites did everything just as God had commanded them to do. In the middle of the night, God went throughout Egypt killing every firstborn son.
(No study notes for this frame)

11:05



All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so **God passed over those houses**. Everybody inside them was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.

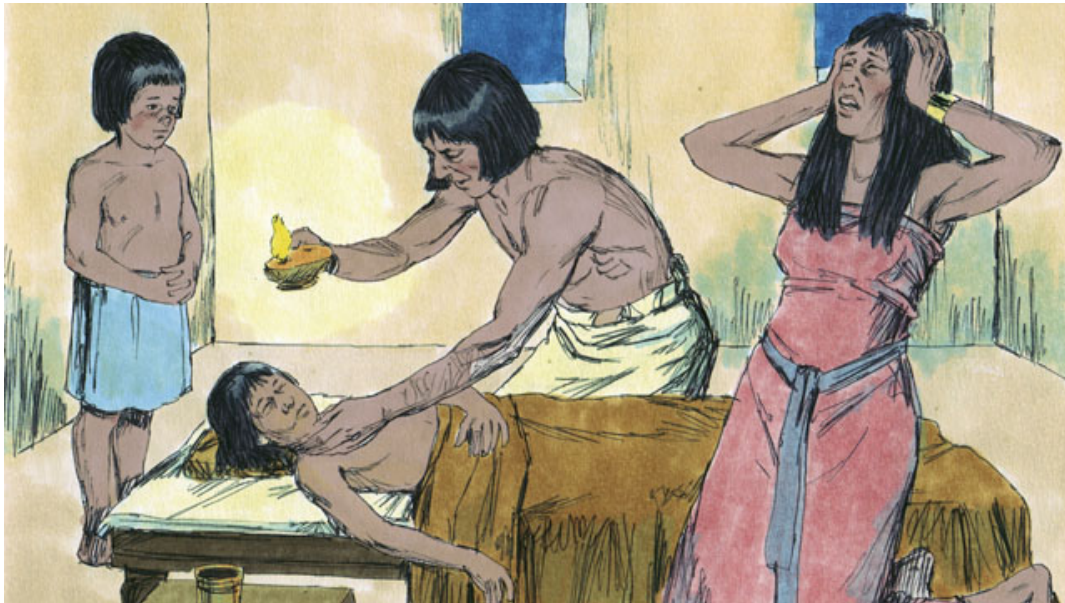
God passed over those houses

God did not enter into the houses with blood on the doors to kill the firstborn sons in those houses.

passed over

God later told the Israelites to remember this day in a festival called the Passover. In this way, they would always remember that he passed over their houses on that day and did not kill their firstborn sons.

11:06



But the Egyptians **did not believe God or obey his commands**. So God did not pass over their houses. God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn sons.

did not believe God or obey his commands

The Egyptians did not believe God would kill their firstborn sons, and therefore did not obey his commands to kill a lamb and put its blood around their doors.

11:07



Every Egyptian firstborn male died, from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail to the firstborn of Pharaoh. Many people in Egypt were crying and wailing because of their deep sadness.
(No study notes for this frame)

11:08



That same night, Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron and said, "Take the Israelites and **leave Egypt immediately!**" The Egyptian people also urged the Israelites to leave right away.

leave Egypt immediately

God had promised that he would send one last plague to Pharaoh to let the Israelites leave Egypt (See: [04:09](#)). After God killed every firstborn son of the Egyptians in this final, terrible plague, Pharaoh and all the Egyptians urged the Israelites to leave Egypt.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Who was God going to kill in this final plague?

He would kill the firstborn males of the Egyptian people and animals (See: [11:01](#)).

2. God had already sent nine plagues on Egypt. Did Pharaoh now believe that God would send another plague?

No, Pharaoh did not believe God would kill the firstborn males even though God had already sent nine plagues (See: [11:01](#)).

3. What did people in Egypt need to do to save their firstborn sons?

To save their firstborn sons, they needed to kill a perfect lamb and put its blood around the door of their houses. Then they must roast the meat of the lamb and eat it with unleavened bread (See: [11:02](#), [11:03](#)).

4. What happened to the Israelites with the lamb's blood around their doors?

God passed over the houses with the blood on the doors and did not kill the firstborn sons inside (See: [11:05](#)).

5. What happened to the Egyptians who did not put the blood on their doors?

God killed the firstborn son of every Egyptian who did not put the blood on their doors. It did not matter if they were poor or rich. Every one of them died ([11:06](#), [11:07](#)).

6. What did Pharaoh do after this plague?

Pharaoh told Moses and Aaron to take the Israelites and to leave Egypt immediately. All the Egyptian people also asked them to go away (See: [11:08](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did Pharaoh not believe that God would kill the firstborn males in Egypt?

Pharaoh had every reason to believe that God would do what he said. God had already sent nine plagues, just as he said he would. However, Pharaoh did not want to lose his power, so he choose not to believe God or to obey him, despite all the evidence that God has shown to him.

2. Why did each family need to kill a lamb in order to be saved from the plague?

God could have simply spared all of the Israelites. Instead, he required that they kill a perfect lamb. God wanted each person to decide to obey him.

3. Why did God tell the Israelites to put the blood of the lamb around the door of their houses?

When they put the blood of the lamb around their door, they showed God and other people that they believed God would save them from the plague. They trusted that the blood of the lamb would be enough to protect them from being killed.

4. Why were the people to eat unleavened bread?

God wanted the people to believe that he would take them out of Egypt immediately after the plague. They were to hurry to get ready to leave Egypt quickly. They would not have time to wait for bread to rise.

Instead, they would prepare it without leaven, so they could eat soon. Unleavened bread was therefore a symbol that they were eating quickly.

5. Did God really kill the firstborn sons? Even the children?

God did exactly what he promised to do. He killed the firstborn son of any Egyptian family that did not kill the lamb and put its blood on the door. He did not spare the people who refused to believe and obey him.

6. How did Pharaoh respond to this final plague?

Pharaoh was forced to finally obey God. God knew how to cause Pharaoh to let the people go. He also knew how to show Pharaoh that he was more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of Egypt. When the firstborn sons of Egypt died, Pharaoh let the people go exactly as God had told Moses he would do.

Summary

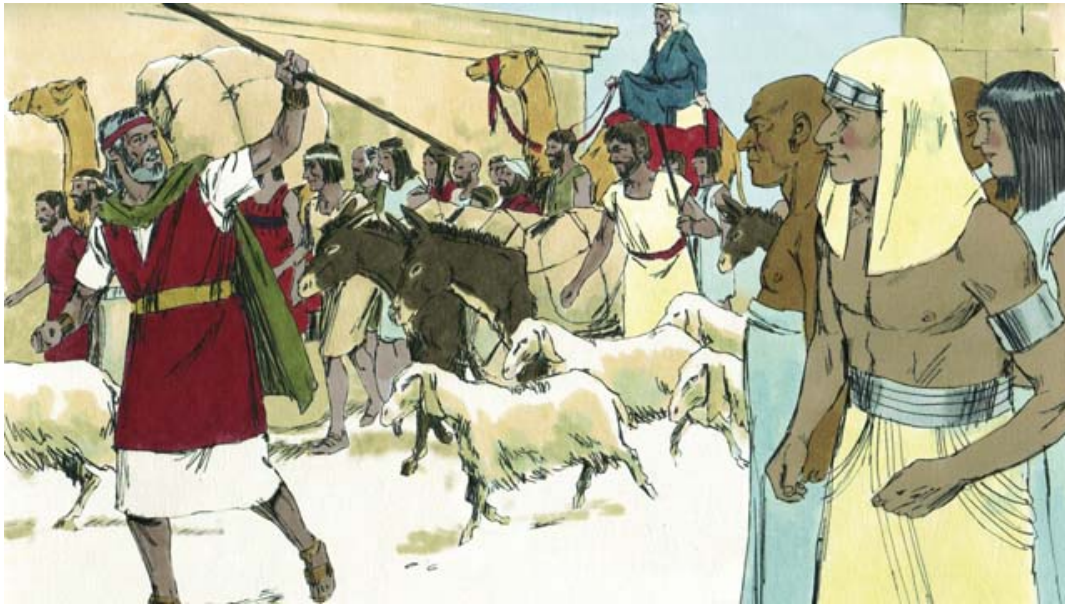
God told Moses that he would do one final plague that would force Pharaoh to let the Israelites go. He also told him to have the Israelites kill a perfect lamb and put its blood around the door of their houses. The Israelites did exactly as God told them to do. The blood showed that they had believed and obeyed God. When God saw the blood, he spared the firstborn son of that household. The Egyptians, however, did not believe or obey God. They did not have the blood of the lamb on their doors to protect them. So God killed all of their firstborn sons. When this happened, Pharaoh and all the Egyptians knew that Yahweh was more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of Egypt. They finally agreed to let the Israelites go. God freed the entire nation from being slaves in Egypt, just as he had told Moses that he would do.

12. The Exodus

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 12:33-15:21

12:01



The Israelites were very happy to leave Egypt. They were no longer slaves, and they were going to **the Promised Land!** **The Egyptians gave the Israelites whatever they asked for**, even gold and silver and other valuable things. **Some people from other nations believed in God** and went along with the Israelites as they left Egypt.

the Promised Land

God had promised Abraham to give the land of Canaan to Abraham's descendants. The Israelites were finally going there to possess that land.

The Egyptians gave the Israelites whatever they asked for

The Egyptian had suffered greatly during the plagues. They very much wanted the Israelites to leave Egypt and the plagues to stop. Therefore, they gave the Israelites anything they asked for in order to encourage them to leave Egypt quickly.

Some people from other nations believed in God

God chose the descendants of Abraham for his own people, but he was always willing to accept people from other nations if they would believe in him and obey him.

12:02



A tall pillar of cloud went ahead of them during the day. It became a tall pillar of fire at night. God, who was in the pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire, was always with them and guided them as they traveled. All they had to do was follow him.

A tall pillar

The people could not see God, but they could see the pillar and know that he was going before them as they traveled from Egypt to the Promised Land.

12:03



After a short time, Pharaoh and his people changed their minds. They wanted to make the Israelites their slaves again. So they chased after the Israelites. **It was God who made them change their minds.** He did this because he wanted everyone to know that he, Yahweh, is more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of the Egyptians.

It was God who made them change their minds

Pharaoh and the Egyptians had already learned that God was powerful. However, God also wanted the other nations to know that he is the only God who rules the earth. Therefore, God caused Pharaoh to chase after the Israelites so that God could destroy the Egyptian army. This would show the other nations how powerful God is.

12:04



When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized **they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea**. They were very afraid and cried out, "Why did we leave Egypt? **We are going to die!**"

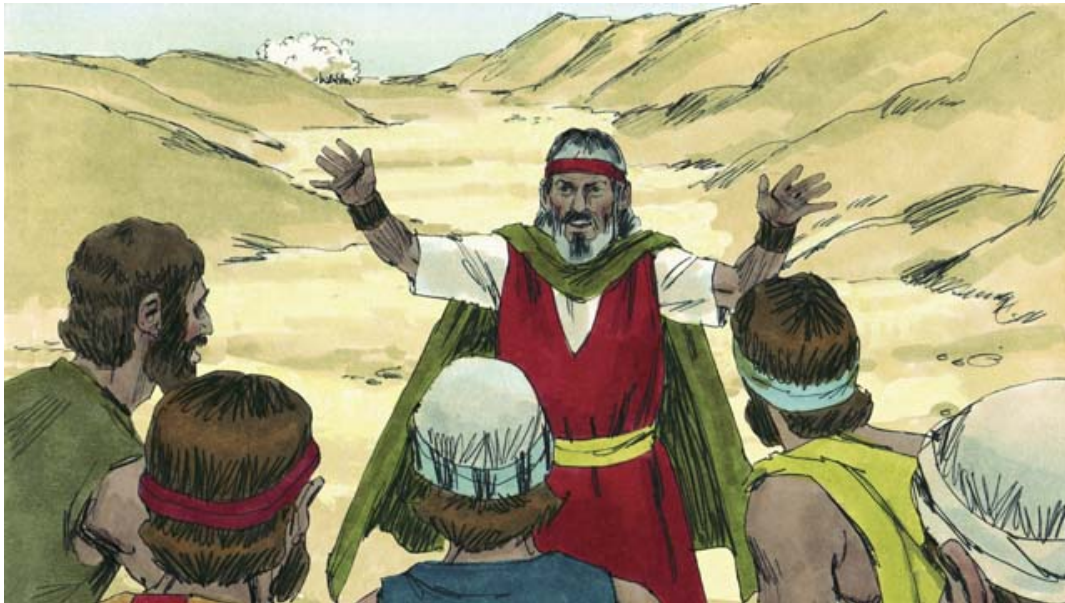
they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the Red Sea

God had led the Israelites to the shore of the Red Sea without a way to cross the deep water of the sea. God also allowed the Egyptians to catch up with the Israelites there. He did this so that he could show the Israelites the he could protect them even in that hopeless situation.

We are going to die!

The Israelites thought they would either be killed by the Egyptian army or would go into the sea and drown.

12:05



Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the Red Sea."
(No study notes for this frame)

12:06



Then the pillar of cloud moved between the Israelites and the Egyptians and became a pillar of fire at night. **The Egyptians were not able to come near the Israelites all night.**

The Egyptians were not able to come near the Israelites all night

The Egyptians were not able to go through the pillar. In this way, God protected the Israelites from the Egyptians.

12:07



God told Moses to raise his hand over the sea. Then God caused the wind to push the water in the sea to the left and the right, so that there was a path through the sea.
(No study notes for this frame)

12:08

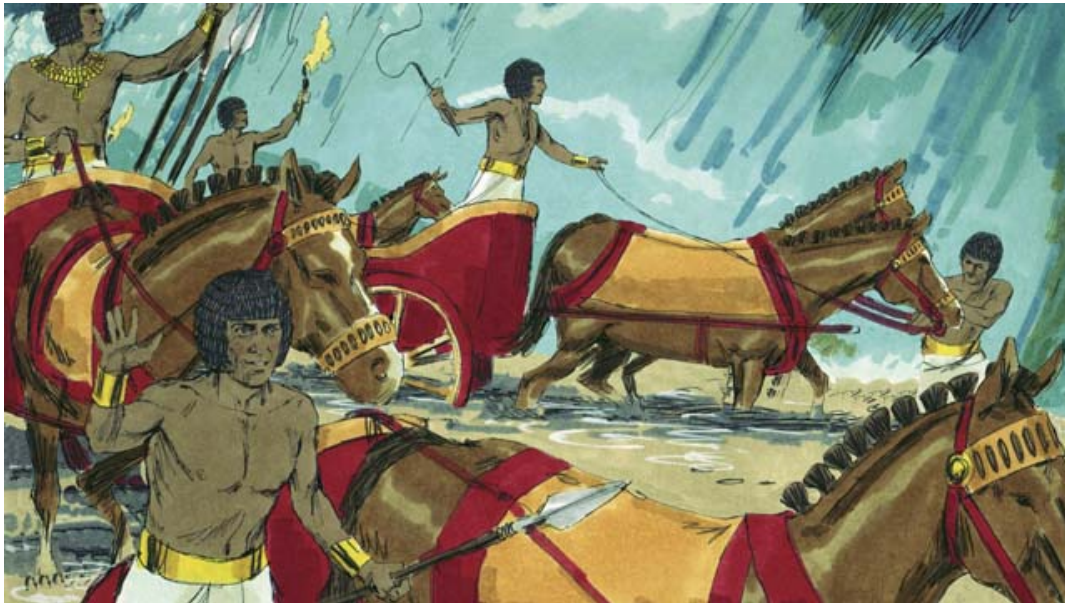


The Israelites marched through the sea **on dry ground** with a wall of water on either side of them.

on dry ground

God not only moved the water away from the path of the Israelites, but also dried up the ground at the bottom of the sea so they could walk on it.

12:09



Then the Egyptians saw that the Israelites were escaping. The Egyptians started chasing after them again.
(No study notes for this frame)

12:10



So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and **caused their chariots to get stuck**. They shouted, “**Run away!** God is fighting for the Israelites!”

caused their chariots to get stuck

God made the ground at the bottom of the sea to be dry for the Israelites. But when the Egyptians followed them, God caused the bottom of the sea to become muddy again so the heavy chariots of the Egyptian became stuck in it and could not move.

Run away!

The Egyptians realized they were in danger, and tried to escape from the path through the sea.

12:11



The Israelites all arrived at the other side of the sea. Then God told Moses to stretch out his hand again over the water. When Moses did that, **the water fell on the Egyptian army** and returned to its normal place. The whole Egyptian army drowned.

the water fell on the Egyptian army

The Red Sea is very wide. The Egyptians had followed the Israelites too far into the sea and were not able to escape before the water closed back over them and they drowned.

12:12



When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God. **They believed that Moses was a prophet of God.**

They believed that Moses was a prophet of God

God had told Moses to stretch out his arm over the sea when God made a path through it, and when he closed the water again over the Egyptians. In this way, God showed the Israelites that he was speaking to them through Moses.

a prophet of God

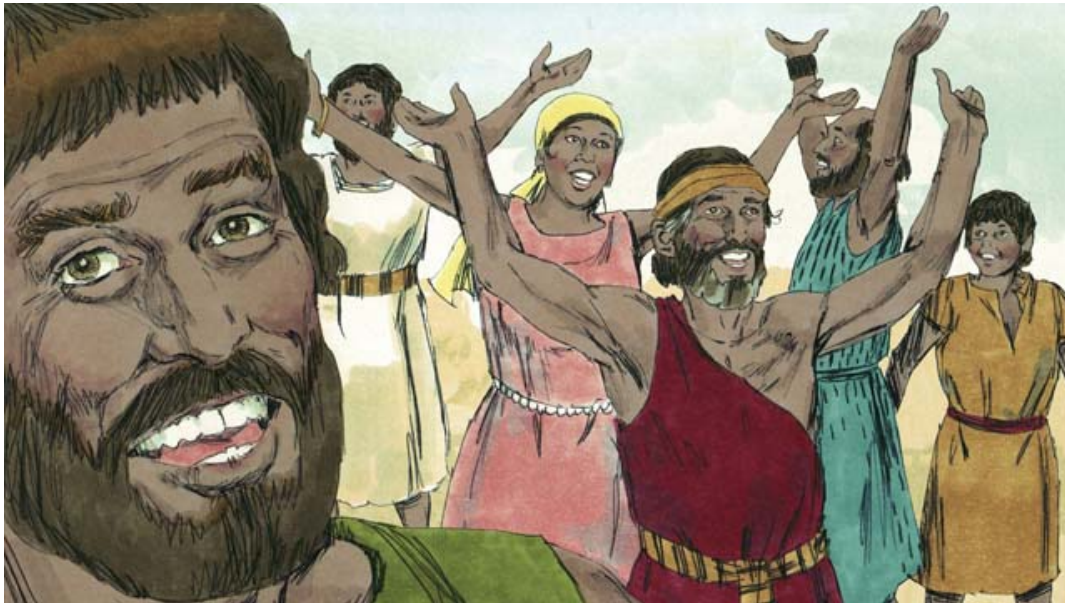
A prophet is a person through whom God speaks to the people.

12:13



The Israelites also rejoiced very much because God had saved them from dying and from being slaves. Now they were free to worship God and obey him. The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
(No study notes for this frame)

12:14



God commanded the Israelites to celebrate a festival every year in order to remember how God had defeated the Egyptians and freed them from being slaves. This festival was called **the Passover**. In it, they had to celebrate by killing a healthy lamb, roasting it, and eating it with **bread made without yeast**.

the Passover

The festival was called the Passover because God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites that had the blood of a lamb around their doors. He did not enter into those houses to kill their firstborn sons. God told the Israelites to celebrate this festival every year so they would remember how he had save them.

bread made without yeast

Yeast is a specific kind of leaven. **Yeast** is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Who also left Egypt along with the Israelites?

Some people from other nations who believed in God also left Egypt along with the Israelites (See: [12:01](#)).

2. How did God lead the Israelites?

God sent a tall pillar of cloud during the day. It became a pillar of fire at night. It went ahead of the Israelites to show them where to go. God was in this pillar (See: [12:02](#)).

3. Why did Pharaoh change his mind about letting the Israelites go?

God caused Pharaoh to change his mind so that he could show everyone that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all the gods of Egypt (See: [12:03](#)).

4. Why were the Israelites afraid when they saw the Egyptian army coming?

They were trapped between the Egyptians and the Red Sea. They thought the Egyptians would kill them (See: [12:04](#)).

5. What did God do to protect the Israelites from the Egyptians?

God moved the pillar of cloud between the Israelites and the Egyptians so the Egyptians could not see the Israelites (See: [12:06](#)).

6. What happened when Moses raised his hand over the sea?

God caused the wind to push the water to the left and to the right so that there was a path through the sea for the Israelites. The Israelites crossed the sea on dry ground (See: [12:07](#), [12:08](#)).

7. What happened to the Egyptians when they followed the Israelites into the sea?

God caused the Egyptians to panic and their chariots to get stuck. Then he closed the water over the Egyptians so that they all drowned (See: [12:10](#), [12:11](#)).

8. What did the Israelites believe about Moses?

They believed that he was a prophet of God (See: [12:12](#)).

9. How do the Israelites remember every year that God defeated the Egyptians?

Every year, the Israelites celebrate the festival of the Passover by killing and eating a lamb with unleavened bread (See: [12:14](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think some people from other nations went with the Israelites from Egypt?

They would have seen all the plagues that God did to the Egyptians. Perhaps that is why they believed that Yahweh is God. They decided to follow him instead of the gods of Egypt.

2. God had already forced Pharaoh to let the Israelites leave Egypt. Why did he make Pharaoh chase after them again?

Perhaps other nations would not know that God forced Pharaoh to let the Israelites go. God caused Pharaoh to chase after the Israelites so that he could completely destroy the Egyptians. In this way, people

in every nation would hear about it and know that God was more powerful than Pharaoh and the gods of Egypt.

3. Why did God lead the Israelites to the Red Sea where they would be trapped, instead of leading them around it?

God wanted to use the Red Sea to destroy the Egyptians and to show the Israelites how powerful he was. For this reason, God led them to the edge of the sea instead of around it.

4. Why were the Egyptians not able to immediately catch the Israelites before they finished crossing the sea?

There were so many Israelites that it would have taken a long time for them to all cross the sea. However, God placed the pillar of cloud behind them so the Egyptians could attack them as they were crossing the sea.

5. What did the Israelites do when they realized the Egyptians were dead?

The Israelites rejoiced and worshiped God. They realized that he had save them from dying and from being slaves. They were very happy and decided to obey God. They continued to celebrate the festival of the Passover every year as God commanded them to do.

Summary

The Israelites left Egypt to go to the Promised Land, along with people from other nations who saw what God did to the Egyptians and believed in him. But God was not finished with the Egyptians. He caused Pharaoh to change his mind and chase after the Israelites so he could destroy Pharaoh completely. He made a way for Israel to escape through the Red Sea. But he killed all the Egyptians when they tried to follow them. In this way, he showed the Israelites and all the other nations that he was more powerful than Pharaoh and the gods of Egypt. He also showed the Israelites that he would lead and protect them as they traveled to the Promised Land.

13. God's Covenant with Israel

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 19-34

13:01



After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to **a mountain called Sinai**. This was the same mountain **where Moses had seen the burning bush**. The people **set up their tents** at the base of the mountain.

a mountain called Sinai

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as 'Mount Horeb.'

where Moses had seen the burning bush

God spoke to Moses from a bush that was on fire, but did not burn up (See: [09:12](#)).

set up their tents

The Israelites had to travel a great distance from Egypt to the Promised Land. So they took tents with them so that they could set them up as shelters and sleep in them along the way.

13:02



God said to Moses and all the people of Israel, "You must always obey me and keep **the covenant I am making with you**. If you do this, you will be **my prized possession, a kingdom of priests**, and a holy nation."

the covenant I am making with you

God was going to make a new covenant with the Israelites (See: [13:04](#)).

my prized possession

The Israelites would belong to God and he would value them more than any other people group.

a kingdom of priests

The Israelites were supposed to teach the other nations about God and be a mediator between God and the nations just as there were priests in the nation of Israel to go between God and the Israelites.

13:03



For three days **the people made themselves ready** for God to come near to them. Then God came down to the top of Mount Sinai. When he came, there was thunder, lightning, smoke, and sounds of loud trumpets. Then Moses went by himself up the mountain.

the people made themselves ready

The Israelites did three days of ceremonial cleansing in preparation to meet with God.

13:04



Then **God made a covenant with the people**. He said, "I am Yahweh, your God. It is I who saved you from being slaves in Egypt. Do not worship any other god."

God made a covenant with the people

This was a new covenant between God and the Israelites. This covenant told the Israelites how they should worship God. This covenant was in addition to the covenant that God made with Abraham, the ancestor of the Israelites (See: [04:09](#)).

13:05



“Do not make idols and do not worship them, because I, Yahweh, must be your only God. Do not use my name in a disrespectful way. Be sure to keep **the Sabbath day** holy. In other words, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is **a day for you to rest and to remember me.**”

the Sabbath day

The Sabbath day was the seventh day of the week. This is Saturday in a modern calendar. God had said that the Sabbath should be holy because that was the day that he finished creating the earth and everything in it (See: [01:16](#)).

a day for you to rest and to remember me

The two reasons for the Sabbath were for people to rest from their work and to think about God and what he had done for them.

13:06



"Honor your father and your mother. Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Do not desire to have your neighbor's wife, his house, or anything that belongs to him."
(No study notes for this frame)

13:07



The people all agreed to obey the laws that God had given them. They agreed to belong to God alone and to worship only him.
(No study notes for this frame)

13:08



God also told the Israelites to make a large tent—**the Tent of Meeting**. He told them exactly how to make this tent and what things to put in it. He told them to make a large curtain to separate the tent into two rooms. **God would come into the room behind the curtain** and stay there. Only **the high priest** was allowed to go into that room where God was.

the Tent of Meeting

The **Tent of Meeting** was called by that name because it was the place where God would come to meet with Moses or the high priest of the Israelites.

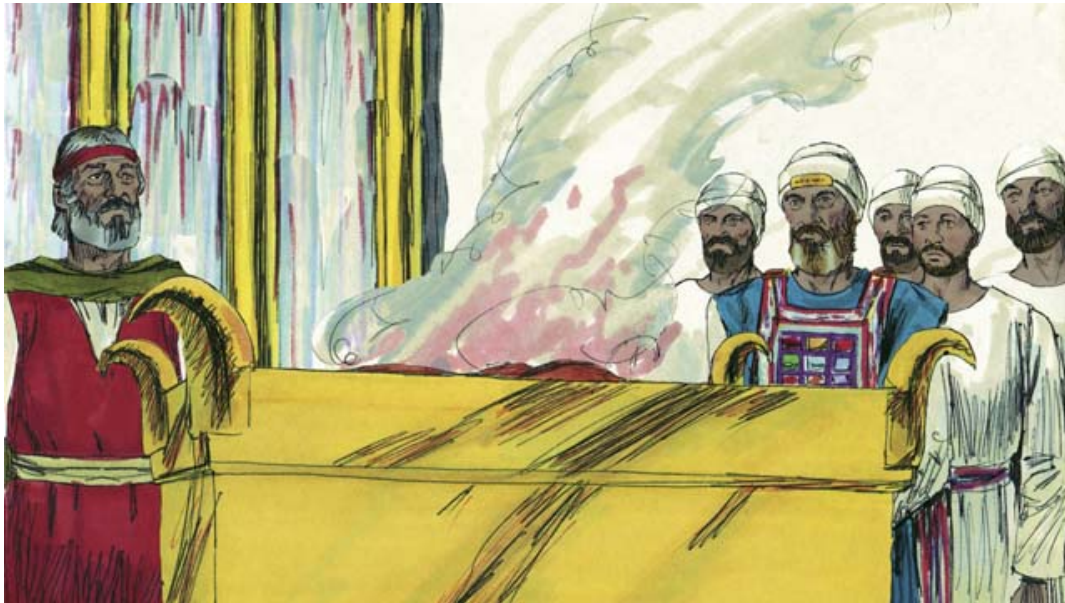
God would come into the room behind the curtain

God is spirit and is everywhere, all the time. However, he appeared to Moses in a special way in the Tent of Meeting.

the high priest

The term **high priest** refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

13:09



The people must also make an altar in front of the Tent of Meeting. Anyone who had **disobeyed God's law** should bring an animal to that altar. A priest would then kill it and burn it on the altar as a sacrifice to God. God said that **the animal's blood would cover that person's sin**. In this way, **God would not see that sin any longer**. That person would become clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

disobeyed God's law

This refers to all of the laws that God gave to the Israelites—not only to the Ten Commandments.

the animal's blood would cover that person's sin

The sin of the person would still exist, but the blood would cover it. This is like hiding something that is ugly or dirty by covering it.

God would not see that sin any longer

This does not mean that God was not able to see the person's sin. Rather, it means that God would choose not to look at the person's sin. Because that person had offered the sacrifice, God would not punish them for that sin. In this way, they would be clean.

13:10

God wrote **these Ten Commandments** on **two stone tablets** and gave them to Moses. God also gave the people many other laws and rules to follow. God promised to bless the people and protect them if they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them if they did not obey them.

these Ten Commandments

The Ten Commandments were main commands that God gave to Moses for the Israelites to obey. They are listed in [13:05](#) and [13:06](#).

two stone tablets

The stone tablets were two flat pieces of stone on which God wrote the Ten Commandments.

13:11



For many days, Moses remained on top of Mount Sinai. He was talking with God. But the people became tired of waiting for him to return to them. So they brought gold to Aaron and asked him to make an idol that they could worship instead of God. In this way, they sinned terribly against God. (No study notes for this frame)

13:12



Aaron made a golden idol in the shape of a calf. The people began **to wildly worship the idol** and make sacrifices to it! **God was very angry with them** because of their sin. God told Moses he wanted to destroy them. But Moses asked God not to kill them. God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.

to wildly worship the idol

The people were sinning by worshiping the idol and also by doing sinful things as they worshiped it.

God was very angry with them

God knew what the people had done and told Moses about it while Moses was still the mountain with God. Moses prayed for the people before he came down from the mountain.

13:13



When Moses came down from Mount Sinai, he was carrying the two stone tablets on which God had written the Ten Commandments. When Moses saw the idol, he was so angry that **he smashed the tablets**.

he smashed the tablets

Moses threw the stone tablets down on the ground and they broke into little pieces. Moses did that to show that the Israelites had broken the Ten Commandments that God had written on the tablets.

13:14



Then **Moses burned the idol and ground it into powder**. He threw the powder into a stream and **made the people drink the water**. **God sent a plague on the people** and many of them died.

Moses burned the idol and ground it into powder

Moses was so angry that they had made the idol that he ground it into fine particles.

made the people drink the water

Moses made the people drink the water with the particles of the idol in it as a symbol that they were guilty for making that idol.

God sent a plague on the people

God sent ten plagues on the Egyptians to force Pharaoh to set the people free from being slaves in Egypt. But now, the Israelites sinned so terribly that God sent a plague on them to punish them.

13:15



Moses made new stone tablets for the Ten Commandments to replace the ones that he had broken. Then he climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them. Moses came back down the mountain with the Ten Commandments on the new tablets. Then God led the Israelites away from Mount Sinai toward the Promised Land.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did God say the Israelites would become if they kept his covenant with them?

They would become his prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation (See: [13:02](#)).

2. What were the signs of God's presence when he came down on the mountain?

There was thunder, lightning, smoke, and sounds of loud trumpets (See: [13:03](#)).

3. What was the first command that God gave to the people?

God told them not to worship any other god (See: [13:04](#)).

4. What were the Israelites supposed to do on the seventh day of the week?

They were supposed to keep the Sabbath day holy by resting and remembering God (See: [13:05](#)).

5. What would God do to the people if they did not obey his commandments?

God would punish them if they did not obey him (See: [13:07](#)).

6. Who was allowed to enter into the room in the Tent of Meeting where God was?

Only the high priest was allowed to go into that room (See: [13:08](#)).

7. What would the blood from an animal sacrifice do to the sin of the person who brought the animal?

The blood of the animal would cover that person's sin. He would become clean in God's sight (See: [13:09](#)).

8. Why did the people make an idol to worship?

Moses remained on the mountain for a long time, and the people grew tired of waiting for him. Therefore, they asked Aaron to make an idol for them to worship (See: [13:11](#)).

9. What did Moses do when he came down the mountain and saw the people worshipping the idol?

He smashed the two stone tablets on which God had written the Ten Commandments. He then destroyed the idol and made the people drink the dust of it in water (See: [13:13](#), [13:14](#)).

10. Why did God forgive the people?

He forgave them because Moses prayed for them (See: [13:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did God bring the people to Mount Sinai?

This was the place where God had spoken to Moses from the burning bush. He promised Moses that he would bring the people out of Egypt to worship him there. God kept that promise and led them to that same place.

2. Why did God say the Israelites would be a kingdom of priests?

Priests help other people worship God. They also teach people what God has said. All the people of Israel would be able to do these things for the other nations if they would obey God.

3. Why did God write the Ten Commandments on tablets of stone?

God wanted the people to always remember his commandments. Perhaps that is why he wrote them on hard stone tablets with his own hand, instead of on clay, wood, or paper.

4. Why did God tell the Israelites to make a tent where he could meet them?

The Israelites were traveling to the Promised Land. They could not build a temple which would be in one place. Instead, God told them to make a special tent that they could move with them and set up when they stopped in a place.

5. Why do you think God said the blood of the sacrifice would cover a person's sin?

The sin of the person would still be there, but it would be covered. God would look at the blood instead of their sin, and would consider that person to be clean before him.

6. Why was it especially evil that the people made an idol to worship?

The first and most important command God gave them was not to worship any other god.

7. What did God send on the people to punish them for worshiping the idol?

God sent a plague on them, which killed many of them. In Egypt, God sent plagues on the Egyptians. Now, God punished his own people with a plague because they sinned.

Summary

God brought the Israelites to Mount Sinai just as he had promised Moses. He came down on the mountain with powerful signs and gave them the Ten Commandments and other laws to obey. He told them how to sacrifice to him, and how to meet him in the Tent of Meeting. But while Moses was still on the mountain with God, the people made an idol to worship. God was very angry and wanted to destroy them. Moses was also so angry that he smashed the Ten Commandments. But Moses prayed for the people and God forgave them.

14. Wandering in the Wilderness

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Exodus 16-17; Numbers 10-14; 20; 27; Deuteronomy 34

14:01

God finished telling the Israelites about **all the laws** that they must obey because of his covenant with them. Then he led them away from Mount Sinai. He wanted to take them to the Promised Land. This land was also called Canaan. God went ahead of them in **the pillar of cloud**, and they followed him.

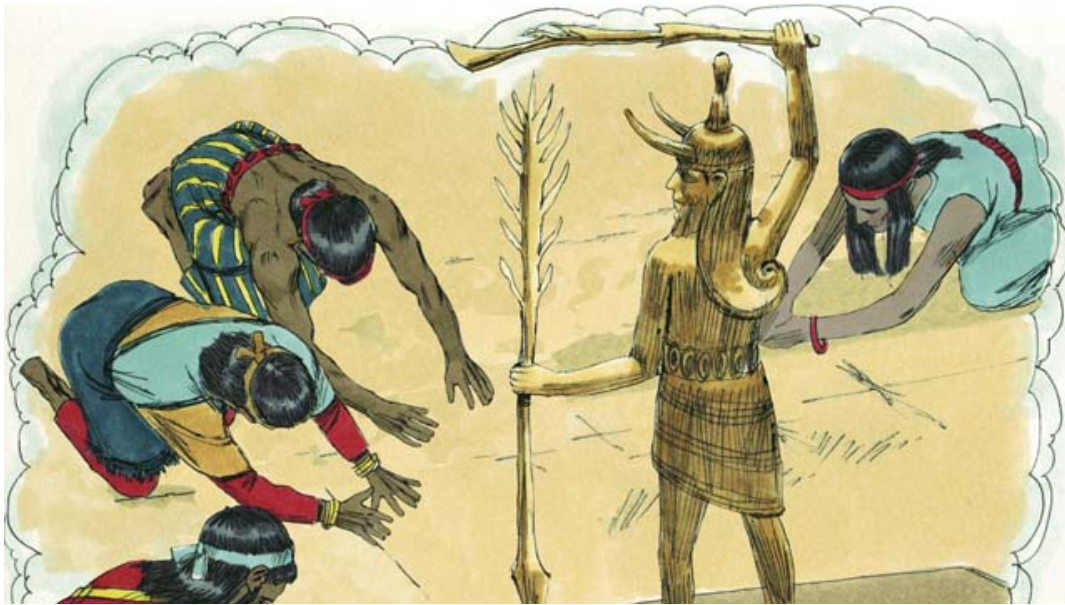
all the laws

These laws included many more commands in addition to the Ten Commandments. (See: [13:07](#)).

the pillar of cloud

This was the same pillar of cloud which led the Israelites out of Egypt. (See: [12:02](#)).

14:02



God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. They were called Canaanites. The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.

God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants

God made this promise to Abraham (See: [04:06](#)). That promise was later passed on to Isaac and Jacob.

14:03



God told the Israelites, "After you go into the Promised Land, you must get rid of all the Canaanites there. Do not make peace with them and do not marry them. You must completely destroy all of their idols. If you do not obey me, **you will end up worshiping their idols** instead of me."

you will end up worshiping their idols

God wanted the Israelites to be completely separate from the other people groups who worshiped idols. Otherwise, the Israelites might also start worshiping the false gods of the Canaanites.

14:04



When the Israelites reached the border of Canaan, Moses chose 12 men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. They were also to spy on the Canaanites **to see if they were strong or weak.**

to see if they were strong or weak

Moses wanted to know how difficult it would be to defeat the Canaanites and to take their land. He also wanted to know the best way to attack the Canaanites.

14:05



The 12 men traveled through Canaan for 40 days, and then they came back. They told the people, "The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!" But ten of the spies said, "The cities are very strong and the people are giants! If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!"
(No study notes for this frame)

14:06



Immediately, **Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies**, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! **God will fight for us!**"

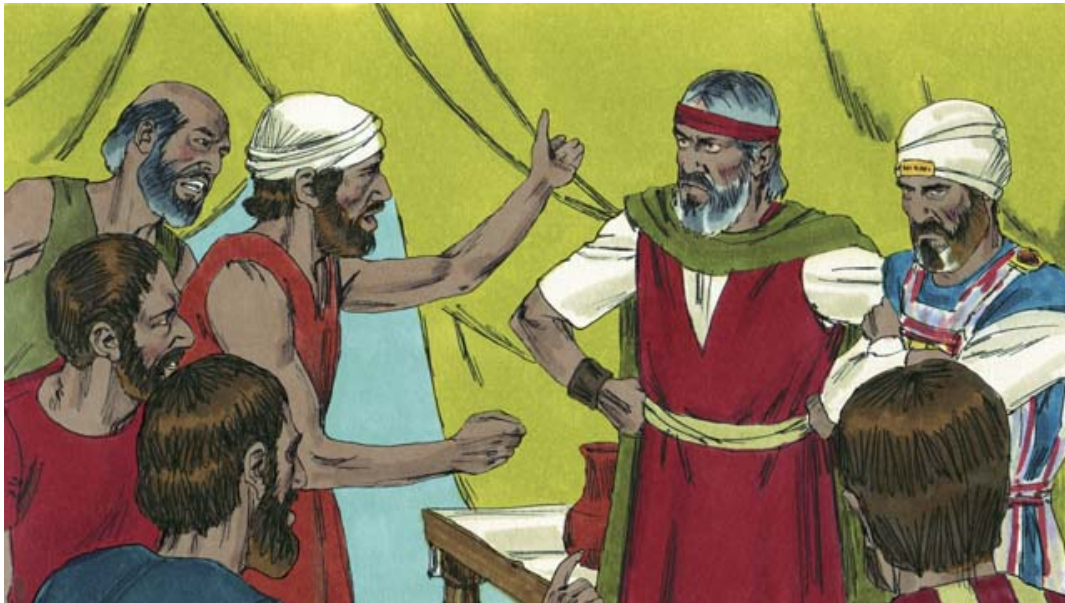
Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies

Moses sent 12 men to spy on the Canaanites. Ten of those men said the Israelites could not defeat them. Only Caleb and Joshua believed that God was powerful enough to help them defeat the Canaanites. The 12 men saw the same things, but Caleb and Joshua were not afraid as the other ten men were.

God will fight for us!

Caleb and Joshua knew that the Israelites alone could not defeat the Canaanites, but with God's help, they could win against them.

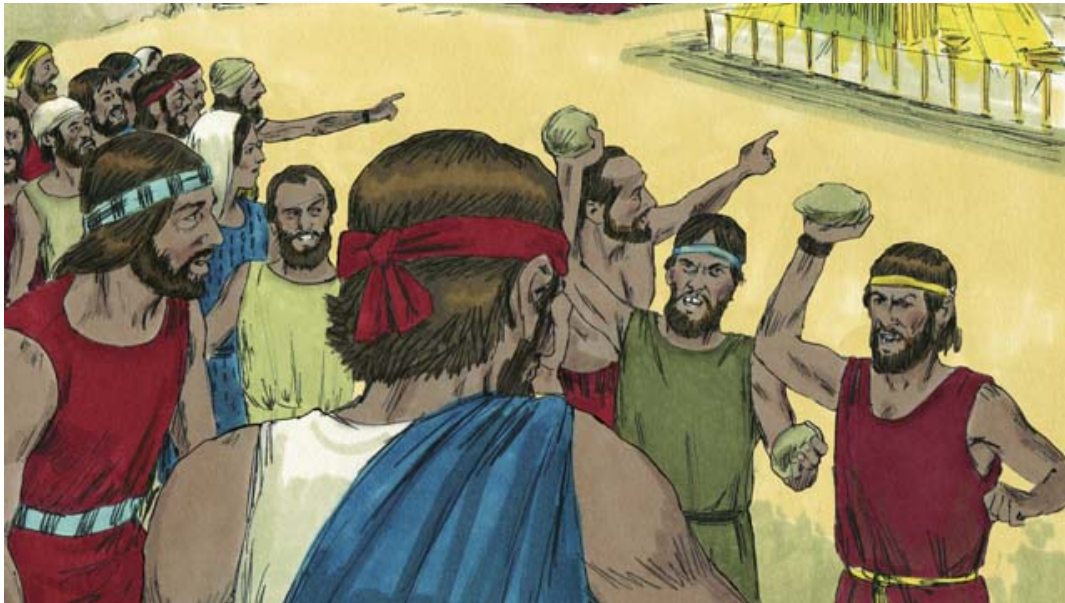
14:07



But the people did not listen to Caleb and Joshua. They became angry with Moses and Aaron and said, "Why did you bring us to this horrible place? We should have stayed in Egypt. If we go into the land, we will die in battle, and the Canaanites will make our wives and children to be slaves." The people wanted to choose a different leader to take them back to Egypt.

(No study notes for this frame)

14:08



When the people said this, God was very angry. He came to the Tent of Meeting and said, "You have rebelled against me, so all of **you will have to wander in the wilderness. Everyone who is 20 years or older will die** there and never enter the land I am giving you. Only Joshua and Caleb will enter it."

you will have to wander in the wilderness

God would lead the people around in the wilderness with no specific destination until all of the adults who rebelled against him died.

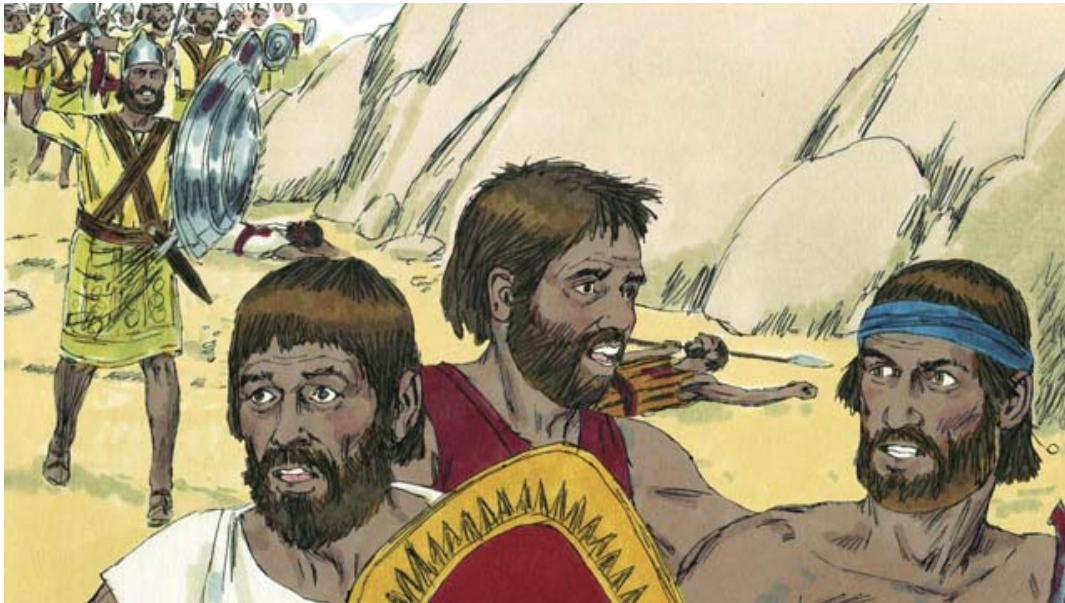
Everyone who is 20 years or older will die

God would allow only the children to enter the Promised Land after their parents had died.

14:09



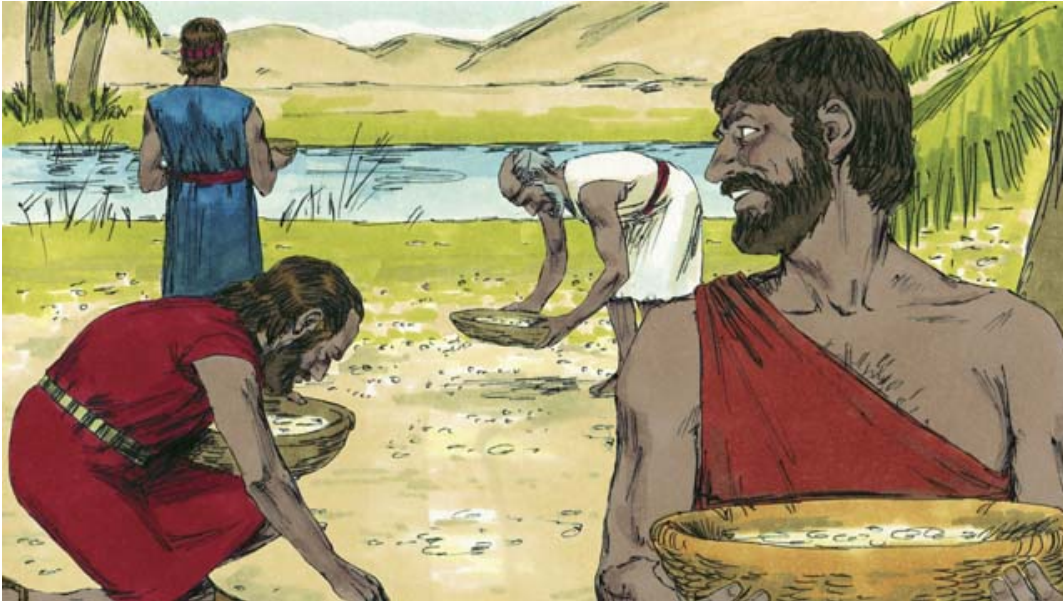
When the people heard God say this, they were sorry they had sinned. So they decided to attack the people of Canaan. Moses warned them not to go because God would not go with them, but they did not listen to him. (No study notes for this frame)

14:10

God did not go with them into this battle, so the Canaanites defeated them and killed many of them. Then the Israelites turned back from Canaan. For the next 40 years, **they would wander through the wilderness.**

they would wander through the wilderness

They lived in the wilderness, and together they moved from place to place in that large, dry land, looking for food and water for themselves and their animals.

14:11

During the 40 years that the people of Israel wandered in the wilderness, God provided for them. He gave them **bread from heaven, called manna**. He also sent flocks of quail (which are medium-sized birds) into **their camp** so they could have meat to eat. During all that time, God kept their clothes and sandals from wearing out.

bread from heaven, called manna

Overnight, this thin, bread-like food fell onto the grass like dew from the sky. They called it **manna**. Almost every day the people gathered this manna and cooked it as their food.

their camp

The place where the Israelites set up their tents to sleep in was called a **camp**. It was like a city with tents instead of buildings, and it could be moved around.

14:12



To provide them with water to drink, God miraculously made it come out of a rock. But despite all this, **the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses**. Even so, **God was still faithful**. He did what he promised that he would do for the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses

The people had refused to go into the Promised Land. Now they continued to complain against God and Moses until they died in the wilderness.

God was still faithful

Even though all of the adult Israelites disobeyed God and complained against him, God did not forget his promise to Abraham. He continued to take care of the people in the wilderness so that he could lead their children into the Promised Land.

14:13



Another time when the people did not have any water, God told Moses, "Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it." But Moses did not speak to the rock. Instead, he hit the rock twice with a stick. In this way, **he dishonored God**. Water came out of the rock for everyone to drink, but God was angry with Moses. He said, "Because you did this, you will not enter the Promised Land."

he dishonored God

God had a specific way He wanted Moses to show the people God's power to provide for them. When Moses disobeyed God by doing it in a different way, he showed a lack of respect for God. Because of that, Moses would die before the Israelites would enter the Promised Land.

14:14

After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for 40 years, **all of those who had rebelled against God** were dead. Then God led the people to the edge of the Promised Land again. Moses was now very old, so God chose Joshua to lead the people. God also promised Moses that one day he would send to the people **another prophet like Moses**.

all of those who had rebelled against God

The people who died were the ones who were over 20 years old at the time when they rebelled (See: [14:08](#)). Their children lived and entered the Promised Land.

another prophet like Moses

Like Moses, this man would be an Israelite, he would speak God's words to the people, and he would lead the people.

14:15

Then God told Moses to go to the top of a mountain so **he could see the Promised Land**. Moses saw the Promised Land but God did not permit him to enter it. Then Moses died, and the Israelites mourned for 30 days. **Joshua became their new leader**. Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.

he could see the Promised Land

The mountain was just across the Jordan River from Canaan. Moses was able to see the land from that high place.

Joshua became their new leader

This was the same Joshua who was one of the 12 who spied on the land when Israel first arrived at Canaan (See: [14:06](#)). Joshua and Caleb wanted the people to go into the land at that time. Because they trusted God, he said they would enter the land after the other people died (See: [14:08](#)).

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did God tell the people to get rid of the Canaanites completely?

The Canaanites worshiped idols and did many evil things. God knew that if the Israelites lived with the Canaanites, they would marry them and start to worship idols also (See: [14:02](#), [14:03](#)).

2. What did ten of the spies say about the land and people of Canaan?

They said the land was good, but that the people were giants. They said the Israelites could not defeat them (See: [14:05](#)).

3. What did Joshua and Caleb say about the people of Canaan?

They said the people were indeed strong, but that God would fight for the Israelites so they could defeat the Canaanites (See: [14:06](#)).

4. How did the people respond to the bad report of the ten spies?

They were angry that they had left Egypt. They wanted to choose a new leader to replace Moses and Aaron and to lead them back to Egypt (See: [14:07](#)).

5. How did God answer the people when they wanted to go back to Egypt?

God was very angry with the people, and promised that they would wander in the wilderness until all the adults died. Only their children would enter into the Promised Land. Joshua and Caleb would also enter the land because they wanted to obey God (See: [14:08](#)).

6. What did the people do when they heard that they would die in the wilderness?

They attacked the Canaanites, but the Canaanites defeated them (See: [14:09](#), [14:10](#)).

7. How did God take care of the people in the wilderness?

He gave them manna and quail to eat, and provided water for them. He also kept their clothes and sandals from wearing out for 40 years (See: [14:11](#), [14:12](#)).

8. Why could Moses not enter the Promised Land?

God told Moses to speak to a rock so that it would give water to the people. But Moses disobeyed God and struck a rock with a stick instead. In this way, he dishonored God before the people. Therefore, God did not allow him to enter into the land. He went up to a high mountain and saw the land, and then he died (See: [14:13](#), [14:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What had the people of Canaan become like since Joseph and his family left?

Joseph and his family had been in Egypt for 400 years. During that time, there was no one in Canaan who worshiped God. The people there had become very evil and worshiped many idols.

2. What often happens to people who live among people that worship other gods?

God said the Israelites would begin to worship the idols of the Canaanites if they lived with them. People normally begin to worship the gods of the people around them. This is especially true if they marry people who believe in other gods.

3. Why did Joshua give the people different advice than the other ten spies?

All 12 of the spies saw the same land and people. However, ten of the spies only thought about how hard it would be to defeat the people. But Joshua and Caleb thought about the good land and about how God would help them. They believed he would enable them to defeat the Canaanites even though they were tall and strong.

4. Why did the people want to go back and be slaves in Egypt?

The people were very afraid that the Canaanites would kill them. They thought it would be better to be enslaved in Egypt than to be killed. They did not trust God to protect them.

5. God made the Israelites wander in the wilderness for 40 years until all the adults died. Why did he take such good care of them during that time?

God was angry with the people who would not go into the Promised Land. But he kept his promise to Abraham to make his descendants into a great nation. Therefore, he continued to care for the Israelites in the wilderness, and for their children who would enter into the Promised Land after their parents would die.

6. Why did God punish Moses so harshly for striking the rock?

Moses was the leader of Israel. He spoke to them for God. Because everyone watched what Moses did, God punished him harshly so the people would be afraid to disobey God. For this reason, Moses was not allowed to enter the Promised Land.

Summary

God brought the people to the Promised Land, just as he said. But they were afraid of the Canaanites and refused to enter. Therefore, God made them wander for 40 years until all of the adults died. However, he cared for the people so that their children could enter the land. He kept his promise to Abraham. Moses saw the land, but could not enter because he had disobeyed God. Joshua became the leader of Israel after Moses died.

15. The Promised Land

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Joshua 1-24

15:01



At last it was time for the Israelites to enter Canaan, the Promised Land. In that land was a city called Jericho. It had strong walls around it to protect it. **Joshua sent two spies to that city.** In that city lived a prostitute named Rahab. She hid these spies, and later she helped them to escape from the city. She did this because she believed God. The spies promised to protect Rahab and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.

Joshua sent two spies to that city

Joseph sent the spies to find out information about the city so the Israelites could attack it.

15:02



The Israelites had to cross **the Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. God told Joshua, "Have the priests go first." When the priests started to step into the Jordan River, the water upstream stopped flowing so the Israelites could cross over to the other side of the river **on dry ground**.

the Jordan River

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan. It flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.

on dry ground

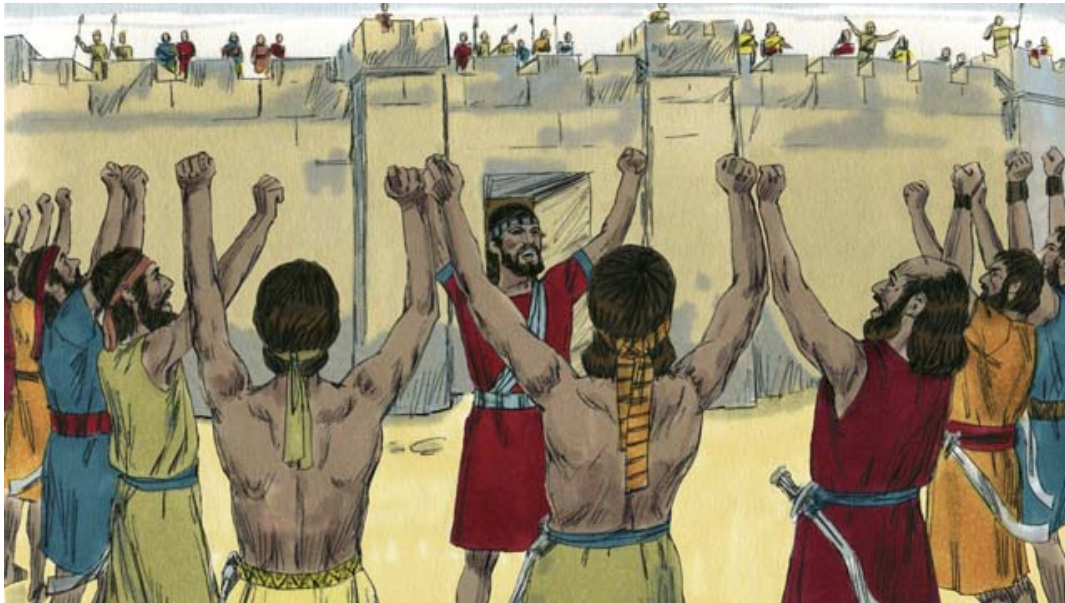
God not only stopped the river from flowing, but also dried up the ground on the bottom of the river so the people could walk across it easily.

15:03



After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua to get ready to attack the city of Jericho, even though it was very strong. God told the people that their priests and soldiers must march around the city once a day for six days. So the priests and the soldiers did this.
(No study notes for this frame)

15:04



God also said that on the seventh day the Israelites must march around the city seven times. Then the priests must blow their trumpets and all the people must shout loudly. So they did this.
(No study notes for this frame)

15:05



Then **the walls around Jericho fell down!** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city, as God had commanded. They only spared Rahab and her family, who became part of the Israelites. When the other people living in Canaan heard that the Israelites had destroyed Jericho, they were terrified that the Israelites would attack them also.

the walls around Jericho fell down

The walls around Jericho were made of stone and were very strong. They did not fall down on their own. God caused them to fall down when the Israelites shouted and blew the trumpets as he told them to do.

15:06

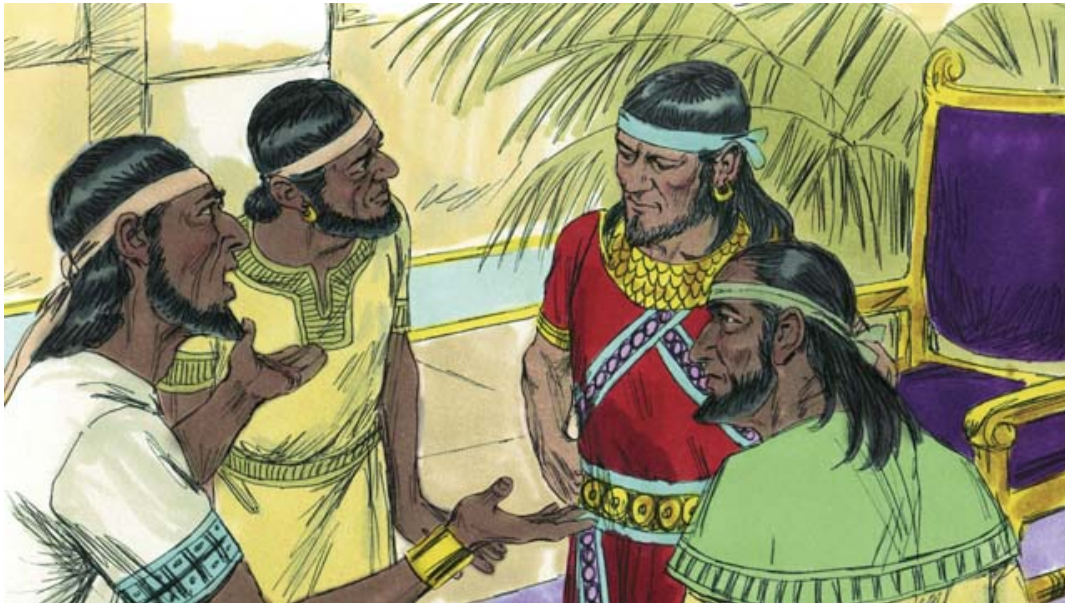


God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan. But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan. They asked Joshua to make a peace treaty with them. **Joshua and the other leaders of the Israelites did not ask God what they should do.** Instead, they made a peace treaty with the Gibeonites.

Joshua and the other leaders of the Israelites did not ask God what they should do.

Joshua and the other leaders acted very foolishly. The peace treaty was a very important decision. They should have asked God what to do, but they did not think they needed to do that.

15:07



Three days later, the Israelites found out that the Gibeonites really did live in Canaan. They were angry because the Gibeonites had deceived them. But they kept the peace treaty they had made with them because it was a promise before God. Then, some time later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so **they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon**. The Gibeonites sent a message to Joshua asking for help.

they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon

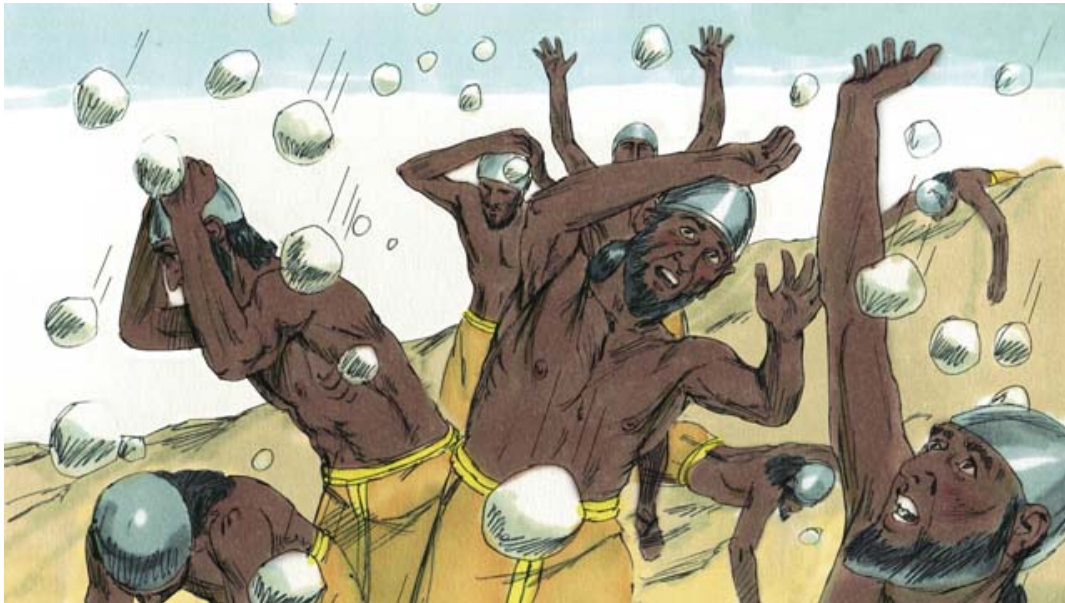
The Amorites were angry with the Gibeonites because they made a peace treaty with the Israelites instead of helping the Amorites to fight against them. They may also have been afraid that the Gibeonites would help Israel fight against the Amorites. Therefore, they decided to destroy the Gibeonites.

15:08



So Joshua gathered the Israelite army. They marched all night to reach the Gibeonites. In the early morning, they surprised the Amorite armies and attacked them.
(No study notes for this frame)

15:09

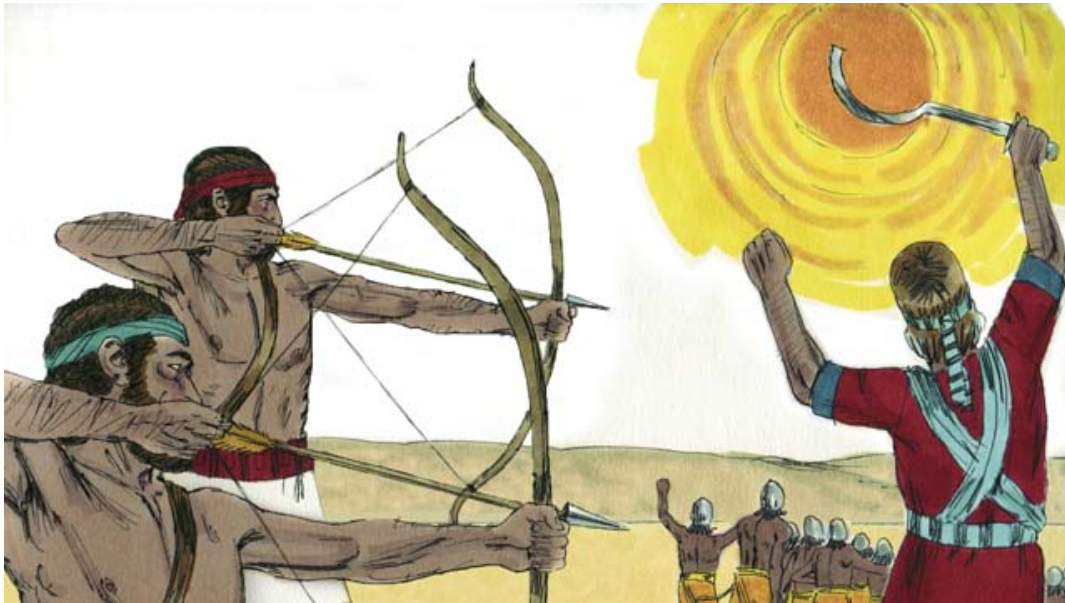


God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and **he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.**

he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites

The hailstones were large balls of ice that fell from the sky. God also killed many Egyptians with hail during one of the plagues in Egypt (See: [10:10](#)).

15:10



God also **caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky** so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites. On that day, God won a great victory for Israel.

caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky

God caused the sun to stay in one place in order to make the day longer. That gave the Israelites more time to defeat the Amorites before nighttime when they might escape in the dark.

15:11



After God defeated those armies, many of the other Canaanite people groups gathered together to attack Israel. Joshua and the Israelites attacked and destroyed them.
(No study notes for this frame)

15:12



After these battles, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.

(No study notes for this frame)

15:13

When **Joshua was an old man**, he called all the people of Israel together. Then Joshua reminded the people that they had promised to obey **the covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Mount Sinai. The people promised to be faithful to God and obey his laws.

Joshua was an old man

Joshua was over 100 years old when the Israelites finished taking control of the land.

the covenant

This was the covenant that God made with the Israelites through Moses after they left Egypt (See: [13:04](#)).

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did the two spies promise to protect Rahab the prostitute and her family?

Rahab believed in God and helped the spies escape from Jericho (See: [15:01](#)).

2. How did God enable the Israelites to cross the Jordan River?

He caused the water upstream to stop flowing so the Israelites could walk across the river on dry ground (See: [15:02](#)).

3. How did God make it possible for the Israelites able to defeat the city of Jericho?

They marched around Jericho, blew their trumpets, and shouted. When they did that, God caused the walls of the city to fall down so they could attack the people (See: [15:03](#), [15:04](#)).

4. What happened to Rahab and her family when the Israelites destroyed Jericho?

Joshua spared Rahab and her family, and they became part of the Israelites (See: [15:05](#)).

5. What did the Gibeonites do so that the Israelites would not destroy them?

They pretended to be from a country far away so the Israelites would make a peace treaty with them (See: [15:06](#)).

6. How did the Amorites respond when the Gibeonites made peace with the Israelites?

They joined their armies together to attack the Gibeonites (See: [15:07](#)).

7. What were the two miracles that God did to help the Israelites defeat the Amorites?

God sent large hailstones to kill the Amorites, and made the sun stay in one place so the Israelites would have enough time to completely defeat them (See: [15:09](#), [15:10](#)).

8. What did God give to each tribe after they finished fighting against the Canaanites?

He gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land (See: [15:12](#)).

9. When Joshua called the Israelites together, what did they promise to do?

They promised to be faithful to God and to obey his laws (See: [15:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Rahab was a prostitute. But God accepted her and her entire family as part of Israel because she believed in God. What does that tell you about who God is?

God is willing to accept any person who believes in him. It does not matter how much they have sinned. He will accept them even if other people do not think they deserve honor.

2. God made a dry path through the Jordan River for Joshua and the Israelites. What had God done for Moses that was similar?

God made a path through the Red Sea so Moses and the Israelites could escape the Egyptians. In a similar way, God made a path through the Jordan River for Joshua. Perhaps God wanted the Israelites to know that he would work through Joshua in the same powerful way as he worked through Moses.

3. Would you expect the walls of a great city to fall down because a group of people marched around it and shouted?

This is not a normal way to attack a city with high walls. However, Joshua and all the Israelites obeyed God and did what he told them to do. As a result, God caused all the walls to fall down so they could destroy the city.

4. Why do you think the Israelites did not ask God about the Gibeonites?

People often neglect to ask God for help unless they know they need him. Perhaps Joshua and the Israelites thought they could decide how to answer the Gibeonites without God's help. Because they did not ask God, they made a terrible mistake. The Gibeonites deceived them, and the Israelites could not break their peace treaty with them.

5. In what way did God show his power over creation when he helped the Israelites defeat the Amorites?

God controlled the weather so that hailstones fell from the sky to kill the Amorites. He also caused the sun in the sky to stand still in order to make the day longer. Only Yahweh, who created all things, is able to do this.

Summary

God led the Israelites into the Promised Land and helped them defeat all their enemies. He did this in a way that showed how powerful he is. He stopped the waters of the Jordan River. He knocked down the walls of Jericho. He caused hail to fall that was big enough to kill the Amorites. And he made the sun stand still to help Israel. When he accepted Rahab and her family, he also showed that he will accept anyone who believes in him. And he worked powerfully through Joshua to give Canaan to Israel. This showed that he kept his covenant with Abraham.

16. The Deliverers

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Judges 1-3; 6-8; 1 Samuel 1-10

16:01



After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God. They did not obey God's laws, and **they did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites** from the Promised Land. **The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God. The Israelites had no king, so **everyone did what they thought was right for themselves.**

After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God

Joshua led the people well, so they obeyed God as Joshua did until he died. But when he was no longer alive to lead them, they began to disobey God.

they did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites

While Joshua was alive, the Israelites defeated all the large Canaanite armies. However, many Canaanite people and cities remained in the land. The Israelites did not finish driving them out of the Promised Land.

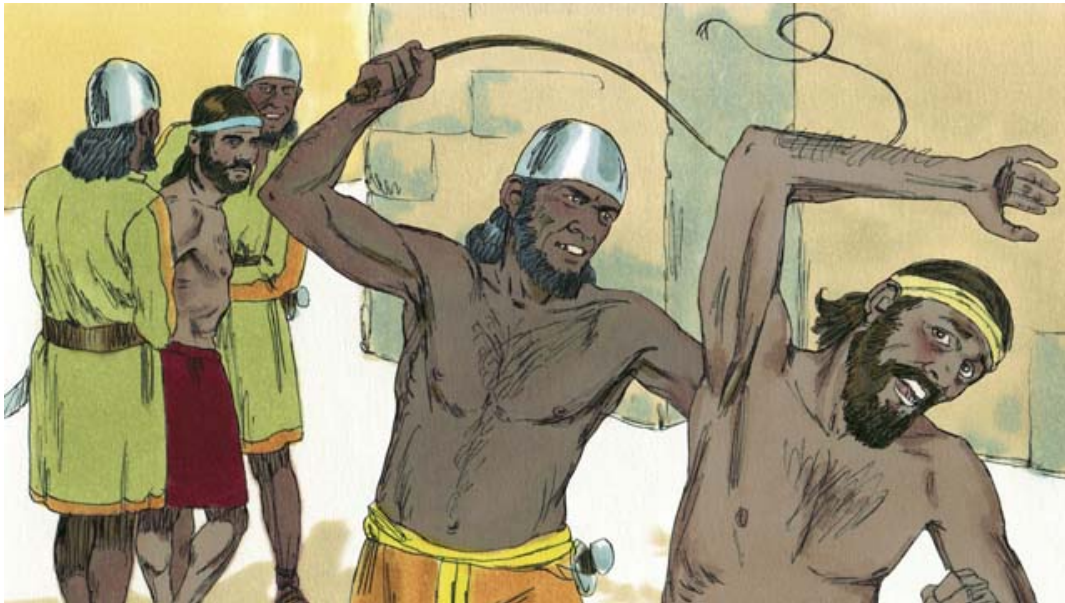
The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods

Before the Israelites came to the Promised Land, God had warned them that they would begin to worship false gods if they did not drive out the Canaanites (See: [14:03](#)).

everyone did what they thought was right for themselves

The people did what they thought was right, instead of doing what God told them was right. Unfortunately, many of the things that they wanted to do were actually sinful.

16:02



By disobeying God, the Israelites started **a pattern that repeated many times**. The pattern went like this: the Israelites would disobey God for several years, then he would punish them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. These enemies would steal things from the Israelites, destroy their property, and kill many of them. Then after Israel's enemies oppressed them for many years, the Israelites would repent of their sin and ask God to rescue them.

a pattern that repeated many times

Each time the Israelites asked God to help them, he rescued them from their enemies. But their children would not remember that God had saved their parents. So they would sin against God just as their parents had done. This same thing happened with every generation.

16:03

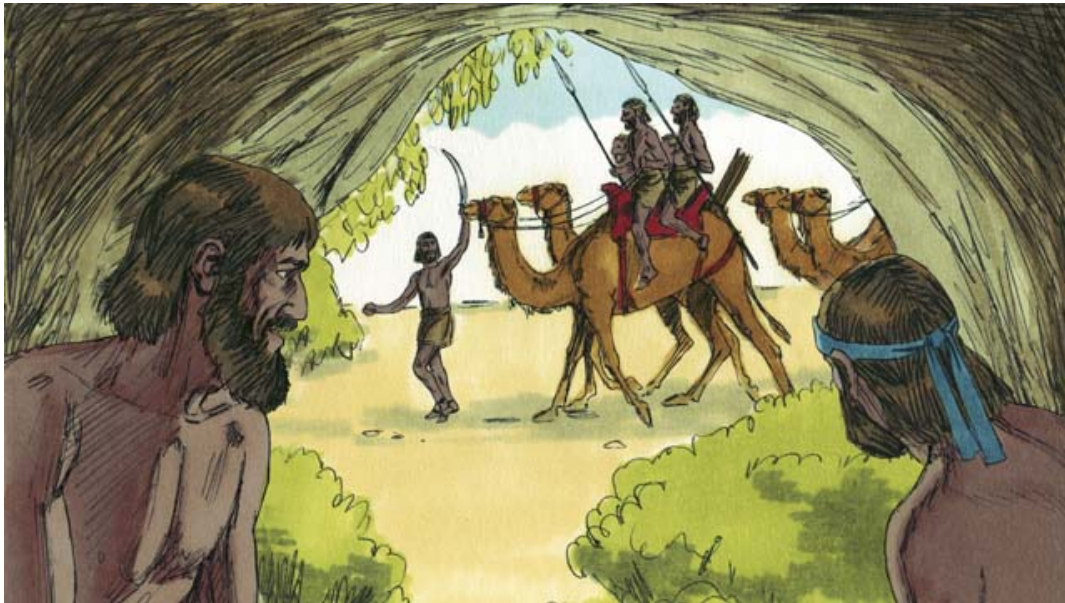


Each time the Israelites repented, God would rescue them. He did this by providing **a deliverer**—a person who would fight against their enemies and defeat them. Then there would be peace in the land and the deliverer would rule over them well. God sent many deliverers to rescue the people. God did this again after he allowed the Midianites, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat the Israelites.

a deliverer

God sent many of these deliverers. After each one defeated Israel's enemies, the deliverer ruled over Israel until they died.

16:04



The Midianites took all of the Israelites' crops for seven years. The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the Midianites would not find them. Finally, they cried out to God to save them.
(No study notes for this frame)

16:05



There was an Israelite man name Gideon. One day, he was **threshing grain in a hidden place** so the Midianites would not steal it. The angel of Yahweh came to Gideon and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."

threshing grain

The grain was wheat, which has a head of many small grains, or seeds, on the top of a thin stalk. **Grain** is separating the seeds of the plant from the stalks by beating the heads of grain. The seeds are food, but the stalks are not.

in a hidden place

People normally thresh grain on a high, open place where the wind can blow away the chaff of the wheat that people cannot eat. However, Gideon was so afraid of the Midianites that he was in a secluded place where it would be difficult to separate out the grain.

16:06



Gideon's father had an altar dedicated to an idol. The first thing God told Gideon to do was to tear down that altar. But **Gideon was afraid of the people**, so **he waited until nighttime**. Then he tore down the altar and smashed it to pieces. **He built a new altar to God** nearby and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Gideon's father had an altar dedicated to an idol

Gideon's own father worshiped false gods rather than Yahweh, the true God.

The first thing God told Gideon to do was to tear down that altar

God would not help Gideon rescue Israel until he destroyed the altar of the idol that his family worshiped.

Gideon was afraid of the people

The Israelites who lived around Gideon also worshiped idols. Gideon was afraid that they would be angry with him if he destroyed the altar where his father worshiped idols.

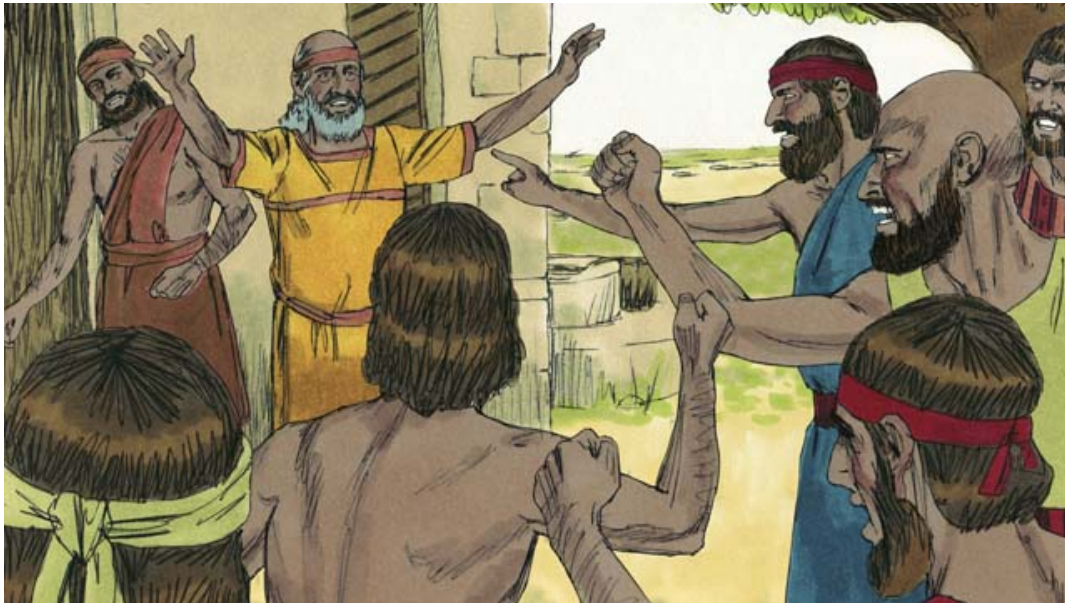
he waited until nighttime

Because Gideon was afraid of the people, he tore the altar down at night when no one would see him do it and try to stop him.

He built a new altar to God

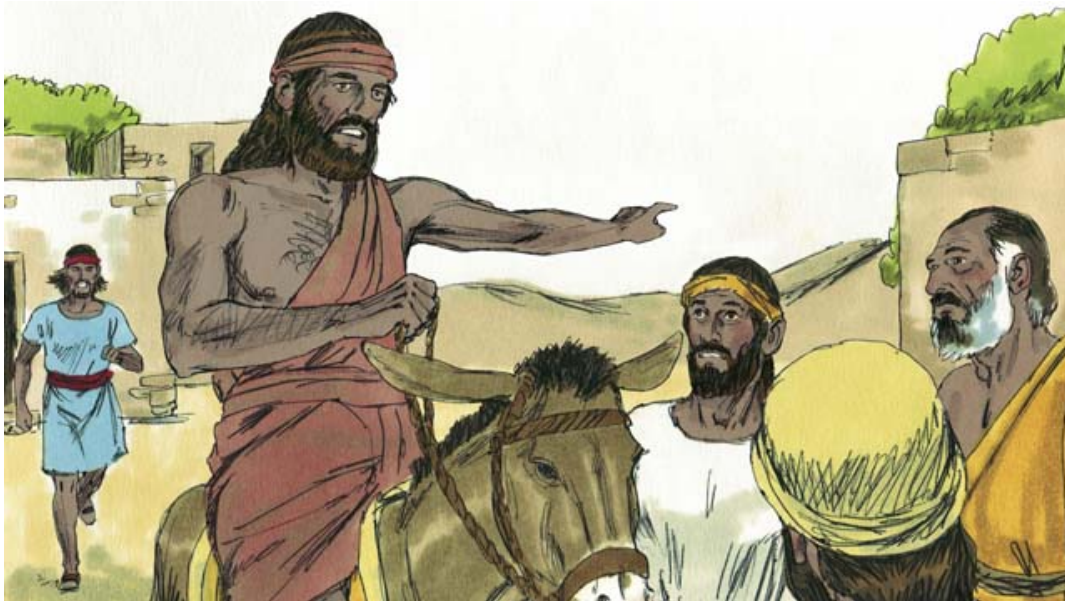
Gideon not only destroyed his father's altar so he could not worship the false gods, but he also built an altar to God and worshiped God by sacrificing an animal on it.

16:07



The next morning the people saw that someone had torn down and destroyed the altar, and they were very angry. They went to Gideon's house to kill him, but Gideon's father said, "Why are you trying to help your god? If he is a god, let him protect himself!" Because he said this, the people did not kill Gideon.
(No study notes for this frame)

16:08

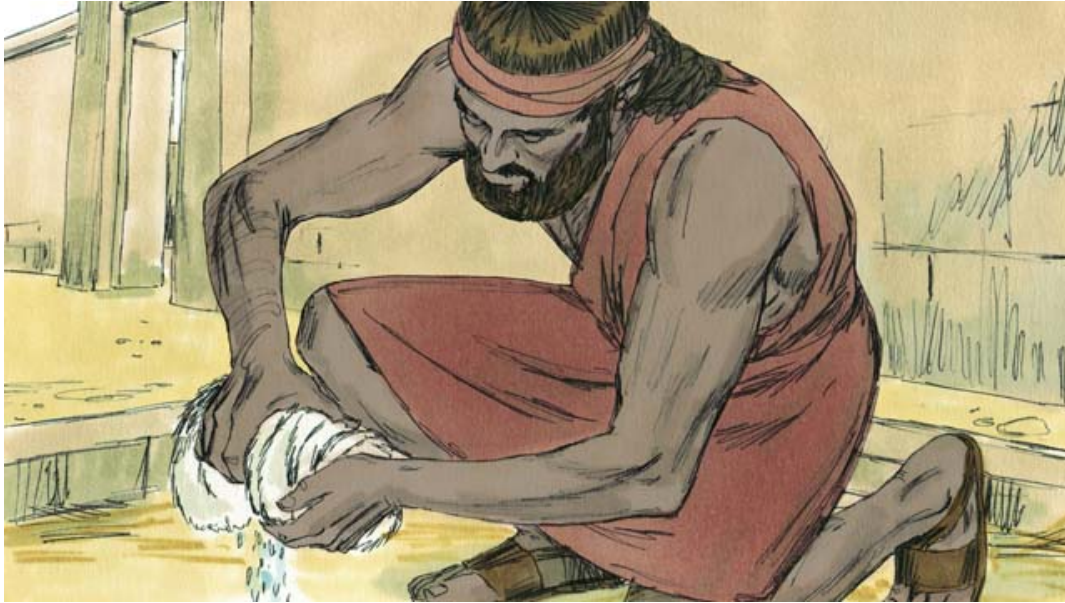


Then the Midianites **came again to steal from the Israelites**. There were so many of them that they could not be counted. Gideon called the Israelites together to fight them. Gideon asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God was really telling him to save Israel.

came again to steal from the Israelites

The Midianites would come to Israel at harvest time when there would be a lot of food for them to steal.

16:09



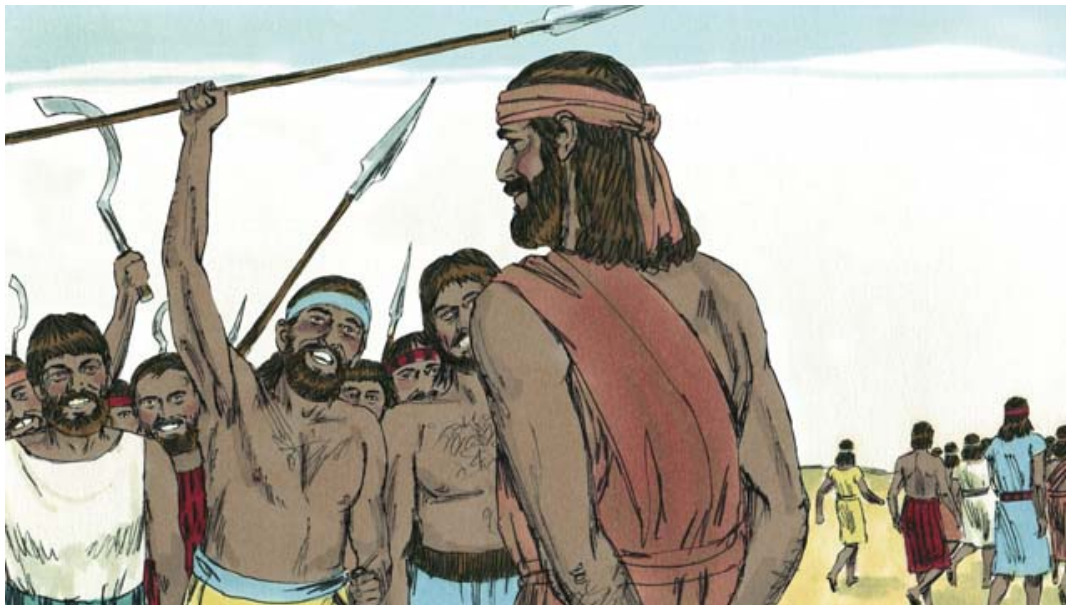
For the first sign, Gideon laid **a sheepskin** on the ground and asked God to let the morning dew fall only on the sheepskin and not on the ground. God did that. The next night, he asked that **the ground be wet but the sheepskin dry**. God did that, too. Because of these two signs, Gideon believed that God really wanted him to save Israel from the Midianites.

a sheepskin

This is the skin of a sheep that has all of the wool on it. Wool is a very thick and curly hair that would hold a lot of water.

the ground be wet but the sheepskin dry

Gideon did not yet trust God enough to believe the first sign. So he asked God to do the opposite thing—make the ground wet instead of the skin, and the skin dry instead of the ground. He wanted to be sure that the first sign did not happen by itself.

16:10

Then Gideon called for soldiers to come to him, and 32,000 men came. But **God told him this was too many**. So Gideon sent home 22,000 men, all who were afraid to fight. God told Gideon that he still had too many men. So Gideon sent all of them home except for **300 soldiers**.

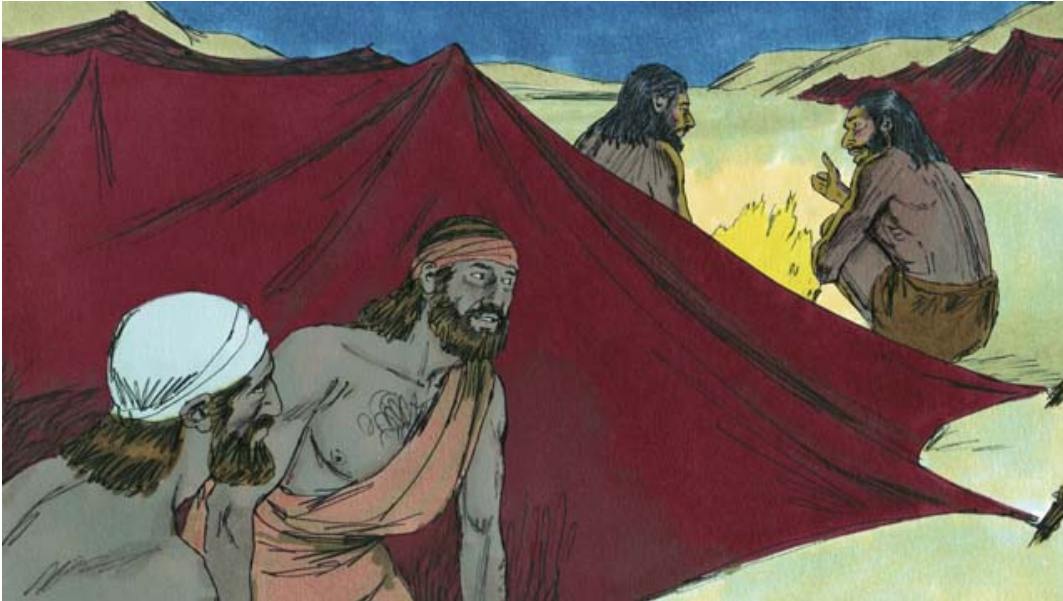
God told him this was too many

This was more soldiers than God wanted for this fight. If that many soldiers fought and won, they would think that they won the battle with their own strength, and they would not know that God did it.

300 soldiers

The Midianite army was **so many of them that they could not be counted** (See: [16:08](#)). God planned to cause Gideon to defeat all of them with only 300 soldiers.

16:11



That night God told Gideon, "Go down to the Midianite camp and listen to them talk. When you hear what they say, **you will no longer be afraid to attack them.**" So that night, **Gideon went down to the camp** and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about **something he had dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat us, the Midianite army!" When Gideon heard this, he worshiped God.

you will no longer be afraid to attack them

Even after God gave Gideon the two miraculous signs, he was still afraid of the Midianites.

Gideon went down to the camp

Gideon secretly went down near the enemy camp in the dark. He found a place where he could hear them, but they could not see him.

something he had dreamed

God had caused one of the Midianites to have a strange dream. He also caused another Midianite soldier to understand that the dream meant that Gideon would defeat them. God did this so that Gideon would hear them and trust God enough to attack the Midianites.

16:12



Then Gideon returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a burning torch. They surrounded the camp where the Midianite soldiers were sleeping. Gideon's 300 soldiers had the torches in the pots so the Midianites could not see the light of the torches.
(No study notes for this frame)

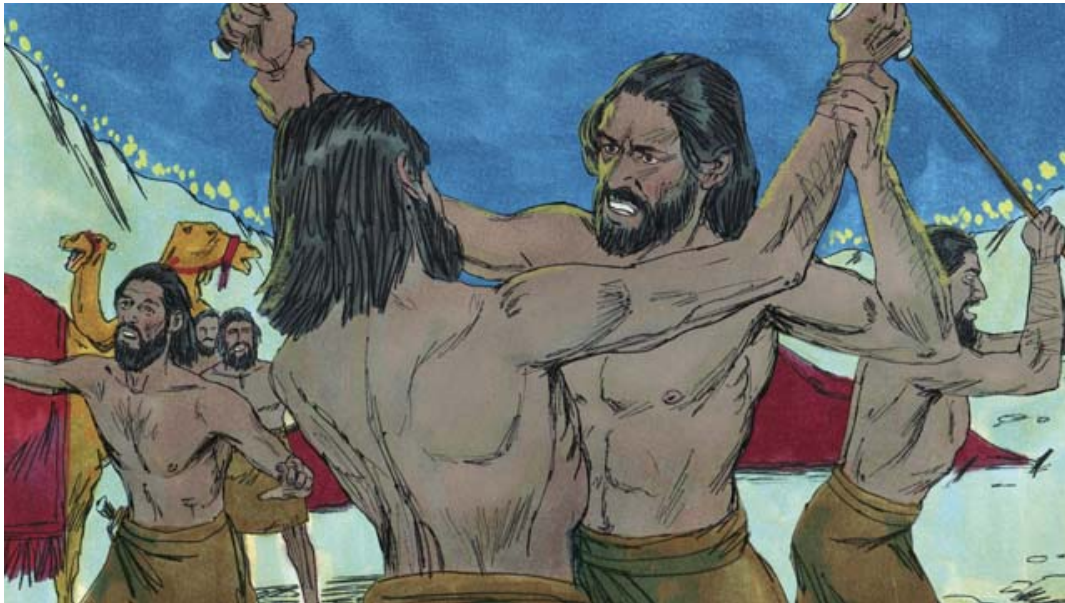
16:13



Then, all of Gideon's soldiers broke their pots at the same moment, suddenly revealing the fire of the torches. They blew their horns and shouted, **"A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!"**

A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!

This was the battle cry of Gideon's soldiers. This means: 'We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon!' They yelled this out to encourage themselves, and to scare the Midianites.

16:14

God confused the Midianites so that **they started attacking and killing each other**. Immediately, Gideon sent messengers to call **many other Israelites** to come from their homes and help chase the Midianites. They killed many of them and chased the rest of them out of the Israelites' land. God caused 120,000 Midianites to die that day. This is how God saved Israel.

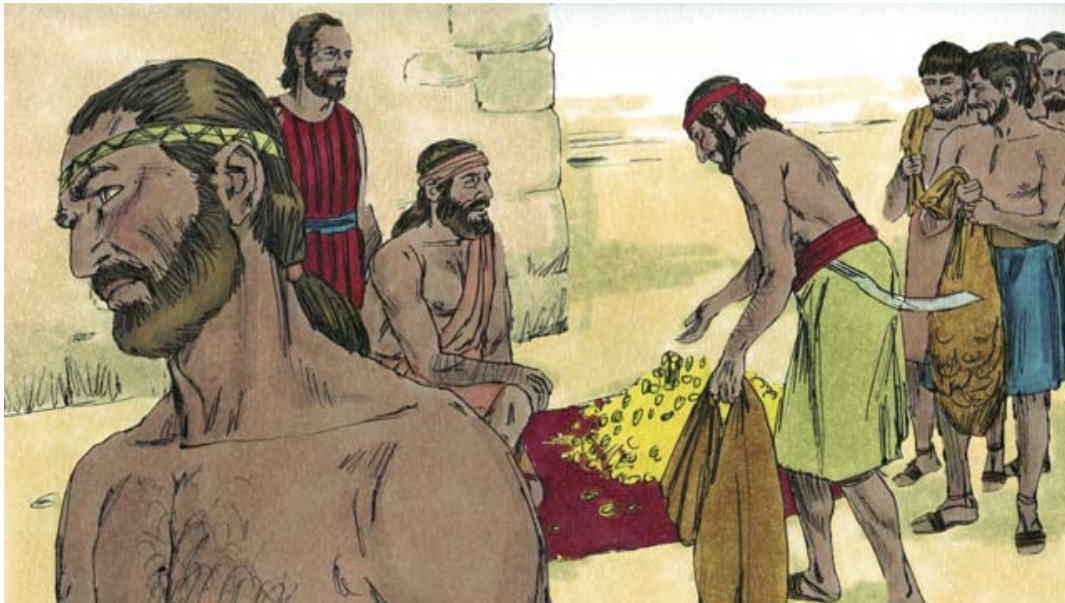
they started attacking and killing each other

The Midianites wanted to attack the Israelites, but because God caused them to be confused, they attacked each other instead.

many other Israelites

This refers to the other Israelite soldiers that Gideon previously sent home (See: [16:10](#)).

16:15



The people **wanted to make Gideon their king**. Gideon did not allow them to do this, but he asked them for some of the gold rings that each of them had taken from the Midianites. The people gave Gideon **a large amount of gold**.

wanted to make Gideon their king

The Israelites had not yet had a king. Instead, God was their king. Gideon knew that they should not have a human king.

a large amount of gold

Even though each person gave Gideon only a small piece of gold, there were so many Israelites that the total amount of gold was very large.

16:16



Then Gideon used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But **the people started worshipping it as if it were an idol**. So God punished Israel again because they worshiped idols. God allowed their enemies to defeat them. They finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another deliverer to rescue them.

the people started worshipping it as if it were an idol

Gideon made the garment to honor God, but it became a problem for him. He and the people soon began to worship the garment as an idol. In this way, the Israelites followed the same pattern as before. They worshiped idols instead of God, and God, therefore, allowed their enemies to defeat them.

16:17



This same thing happened many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send someone to rescue them. Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

(No study notes for this frame)

16:18



Finally, the people asked God for **a king like all the other nations had**. They wanted a king who was tall and strong, and who could lead them into battle. **God did not like this request**, but he gave them a king just as they had asked.

a king like all the other nations had

Other nations had a king. Israel wanted to be like them and have a king too.

God did not like this request

God knew that they were rejecting him as their ruler and were choosing to follow a human leader instead.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did the Israelites disobey God?

They did not keep his laws, and they did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites from the land. Also, they began to worship Canaanite gods (See: [16:01](#)).

2. What pattern did the Israelites keep repeating?

They would disobey God, so he would punish them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. When the Israelites repented, God would send a deliverer to rescue them (See: [16:02](#)).

3. Why was Gideon threshing grain in a hidden place?

He was afraid the Midianites would find his grain and steal it (See: [16:05](#)).

4. What was the first thing that God told Gideon to do?

God told him to tear down his father's altar where his father worshiped an idol (See: [16:06](#)).

5. What two signs did God give to Gideon to prove that he would defeat the Midianites?

God caused a sheepskin to be wet, but the ground around it to be dry. Then the next night, God caused the sheepskin to be dry, but the ground to be wet (See: [16:09](#)).

6. What did God do when 32,000 men came to fight for Israel?

God had Gideon send most of them home. He kept only 300 soldiers (See: [16:10](#)).

7. How did Gideon's 300 soldiers attack the Midianites?

They put torches in clay pots. Then they blew their horns and all broke the pots at the same time, showing the torches (See: [16:12](#), [16:13](#)).

8. How did God help Gideon attack the Midianites?

God confused the Midianites so that they attacked and killed each other (See: [16:14](#)).

9. What did the people do with the special garment that Gideon made out of gold?

The people began to worship it as an idol (See: [16:16](#)).

10. Why did the people ask God to give them a king?

They wanted a king who was tall and strong, and who could lead them into battle against their enemies (See: [16:18](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. All of the Israelites did what they thought was right for themselves. Does this mean they obeyed God?

The Israelites did not think about God in the right way. Therefore, they thought it was right to worship idols even though God had told them to worship only him. In this way, they disobeyed God.

2. How many times did God send a deliverer to rescue the Israelites when they repented of their sin?

Every time the Israelites repented of their sin and asked God to help them, he sent a deliverer to rescue them. This happened many times.

3. Why did it take so long for the Israelites to ask God to save them from the Midianites?

The Midianites stole all of the Israelites' crops for seven years before they asked God to save them. Perhaps they forgot that he could rescue them. Or perhaps they asked their idols to save them for seven years before they finally decided to ask God for help.

4. What are some of the ways that Gideon showed that he was not very brave?

Gideon was hiding from the Midianites as he threshed grain. He tore down his father's altar at night because he was afraid of the people. God had to show him two signs to convince him to attack the Midianites. And God sent him to the Midianite camp to hear a soldier talk about his dream so Gideon would not be afraid. In spite of his fear, God used him to save Israel.

5. Why did God make Gideon send home all but 300 soldiers?

God wanted everyone to know that the Israelites defeated the Midianites because God helped them. He did not want them to think their own strength saved them. For that reason, he did not want Gideon to attack with a lot of soldiers.

6. Were the people thankful that God send deliverers to rescue them from their enemies?

The people were not happy that God only sent them deliverers. Instead, they wanted a king like all the other nations had.

Summary

God and the people did not change. The people always disobeyed God and worshiped idols. And God always punished them when they sinned and rescued them when they repented of their sin. This pattern happened to the Israelites many times. With great power, God helped Gideon to rescue them from the Midianites. But after that, they worshiped idols again. They would not obey God. They did not want God to be their king. Instead, they finally asked God to give them a king so they could be just like the other nations who worshiped idols.

17. God's Covenant with David

Study Notes

A Bible story from: 1 Samuel 10; 15-19; 24; 31; 2 Samuel 5; 7; 11-12

17:01



Saul was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. Saul was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who **would one day be king in his place**.

would one day be king in his place

God did not immediately remove Saul from being king. Instead, he allowed Saul to continue to rule for several more years while God prepared a man to replace him as king.

17:02



God chose a young Israelite named David and began to prepare him to one day become king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times, David killed both a lion and a bear that attacked his father's sheep while David was watching them. David was a humble and righteous man. He trusted and obeyed God.

(No study notes for this frame)

17:03



When David was still a young man, he fought against **a giant named Goliath**. Goliath was a very good soldier. He was very strong and about three meters tall! But God helped David kill Goliath and save Israel. After that, David won many victories over Israel's enemies. David became a great soldier, and **he led Israel's army** in many battles. The people praised him very much.

a giant named Goliath

The word **giant** here describes a person who is unusually tall and powerful. Goliath was a huge soldier in an army that was fighting against Israel.

he led Israel's army

David led the army, but Saul was still the king of Israel at this time.

17:04



The people loved David so much that King Saul became jealous of him. Finally Saul wanted to kill him, so David ran away into the wilderness to hide from him and his soldiers. One day when Saul and his soldiers were looking for him, Saul went into a cave. It was the same cave that David was hiding in, but Saul did not see him. David went up very close behind Saul and cut off a piece of his clothing. Later, after Saul left the cave, **David shouted to him to look at the cloth he was holding**. In this way, Saul knew that **David refused to kill him** to become king.

David shouted to him to look at the cloth he was holding

David cut off the piece of Saul's clothing to show Saul that David was close enough to kill Saul, but did not do it. In this way, David wanted to prove to Saul that he, David, was not trying to kill him.

David refused to kill him

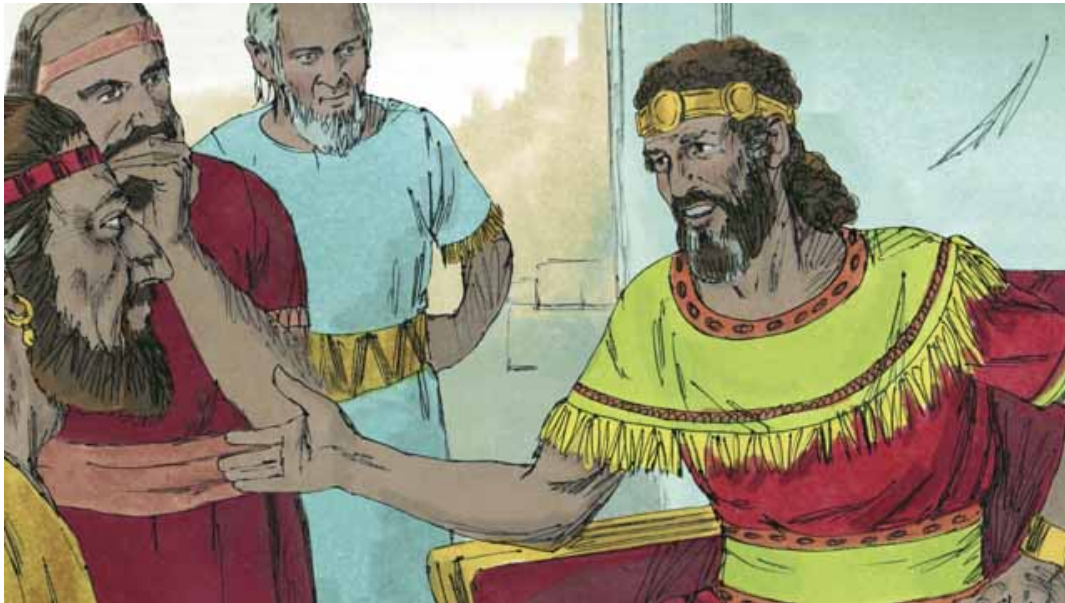
David would not dishonor God by killing Saul, whom God had placed as king over Israel. Instead, he waited until God was ready to make David king.

17:05



Some time later, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him. God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles, and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies. David conquered the city of Jerusalem and made it his capital city, where he lived and ruled. David was king for 40 years. During this time, Israel became powerful and wealthy.
(No study notes for this frame)

17:06



David wanted **to build a temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. For about 400 years, the people had been worshiping God and offering sacrifices to him at the Tent of Meeting that Moses had made.

to build a temple

David wanted to construct a permanent building for worshiping God that would replace the portable Tent of Meeting (See: [13:08](#)).

17:07



But there was a prophet named Nathan. God sent him to tell David this: "You have fought in many wars, so you will not build this Temple for me. Your son will build it. But still, I will greatly bless you. One of your descendants will rule as king over my people forever!" **The only descendant of David who could rule forever was the Messiah.** The Messiah was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from their sin.

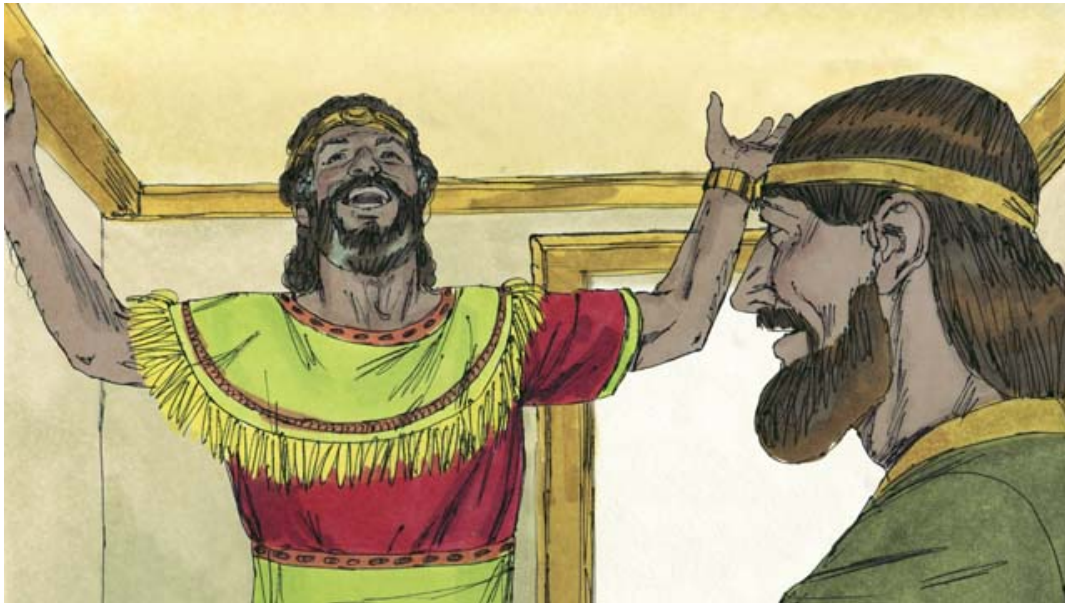
The only descendant of David who could rule forever was the Messiah

All of the normal descendants of David eventually died. The Messiah, however, would live forever and continue to rule.

the Messiah

The term **Messiah** means 'Anointed One.' It refers to the person that God would send to save his people and to rule over his kingdom forever. In the New Testament, **Messiah** is translated as 'Christ.'

17:08



When David heard Nathan's message, he thanked God and praised him. God was honoring him and giving him many blessings. Of course, David did not know when God would do these things. We know now that the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
(No study notes for this frame)

17:09



David ruled his people justly for many years. He obeyed God faithfully, and God blessed him. However, in his later years, he sinned greatly against God.
(No study notes for this frame)

17:10



One day, David looked out from his palace and **saw a beautiful woman bathing**. He did not know her, but he found out that her name was Bathsheba.

saw a beautiful woman bathing

Bathsheba may have been bathing at her own house, but David's palace was very high and he was able to see over walls that were lower.

17:11



Instead of looking away, David sent someone to bring her to him. **He slept with her** and sent her back home. A short time later, Bathsheba sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.

He slept with her

This is a polite way to say that David had sexual relations with Bathsheba. David was married and so was Bathsheba. Therefore, when he slept with her, he not only sinned against God, but also against his wives and her husband.

17:12



Bathsheba's husband was a man named Uriah. **He was one of David's best soldiers.** He was away fighting in a war at this time. David called Uriah back from the battle and **told him to go be with his wife.** But Uriah refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent Uriah back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest **so that he would be killed.** This is what happened: Uriah died in battle.

He was one of David's best soldiers

David knew Uriah well, because he was one of the best soldiers in Israel. For that reason, it was especially evil that David slept with Uriah's wife.

told him to go be with his wife

This could mean 'go home to be intimate with his wife.' David wanted people, especially Uriah, to believe that Bathsheba was pregnant with Uriah's child.

so that he would be killed

When David told his general to place Uriah where the enemies would kill him, David became guilty of murdering Uriah.

17:13



After Uriah died in the war, David married Bathsheba. Later, she gave birth to David's son. God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.
(No study notes for this frame)

17:14



But David's baby boy died. This is how **God punished David**. Also, until David died, some members of his own family rebelled against him, and David lost much power. But God was faithful and still did what he had promised David he would do for him, even though David had disobeyed him. Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.

God punished David

When David repented about sleeping with Bathsheba and murdering Uriah, God forgave him and was no longer angry with him. However, God still needed to punish David so that the Israelites would know that they should not disobey God. Therefore, God caused David's baby to die, and also caused David's children to fight against him and against each other.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What kind of a man was Saul?

Saul was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. But he became a wicked man who did not obey God (See: [17:01](#)).

2. Who did God choose to become king after Saul?

God chose a young shepherd from Bethlehem. He was humble and righteous, and he trusted and obeyed God (See: [17:02](#)).

3. Who was Goliath, whom David killed?

Goliath was a giant enemy soldier who was three meters tall (See: [17:03](#)).

4. How did David prove to Saul that he was not trying to kill Saul?

David cut off a piece of Saul's clothing in a cave. He could have killed Saul at that time, but he did not harm him. When Saul found out about it, he knew that David was not trying to kill him (See: [17:04](#)).

5. What did David want to build for God?

David wanted to build a temple where the Israelites could worship God and bring him sacrifices (See: [17:06](#)).

6. How did God respond to David's plan to build a temple?

God sent the prophet Nathan to tell David he would not be the one to build a temple. Instead, David's son would build it (See: [17:07](#)).

7. Who did God say would rule forever?

One of David's descendants would rule forever. This person would be the Messiah. But the Messiah would not come for almost 1,000 years after David died (See: [17:08](#)).

8. How did David sin against God?

David slept with Bathsheba. Then he murdered her husband, Uriah, who was one of David's best soldiers (See: [17:10](#), [17:11](#), [17:12](#)).

9. How did God punish David for his sin?

God caused Bathsheba's baby to die. He also made David's own family fight against him (See: [17:14](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. In what ways was David different than Saul?

The people wanted Saul to be king because he was tall and handsome. But he was a wicked man. God chose David to be king because David was humble and trusted and obeyed God.

2. How might David have learned to be the king of Israel while he was a shepherd?

While he was a shepherd, David learned to be brave and to protect his father's sheep. As a young man, he even killed a bear and a lion when they attacked the sheep. Because of this, he was able to protect the Israelites against their enemies.

3. Saul tried to kill David. Why did David not kill Saul when he found him in the cave?

David did not want to sin in order to be king. He chose to wait until the time when God would make him king. Therefore, he did not kill Saul. Instead, he trusted God to protect him from Saul.

4. Why did God not allow David to build a temple?

David ruled Israel well, and God was pleased with David. God wanted David to be a good soldier for him. That was God's plan for David. God wanted a different person to build a temple. David's son would not be a soldier. He would be a builder. God would use him to build a temple. In this way, God would honor David by blessing his descendants.

5. What was the greatest blessing that God promised to David?

God promised David that one of his descendants would be the Messiah. He would rule over God's people forever.

6. Why did David cause Uriah to be killed?

David tried to hide his sin by killing Uriah. If Uriah was dead, David thought no one would know the king was the father of Bathsheba's baby.

7. Why did God punish David after he repented?

God forgave David when he repented. But because David had dishonored God before the people, God had to punish him. David accepted that punishment and obeyed God.

Summary

God chose David to be the king of Israel. He was a humble man who obeyed God. Therefore, God promised that David's son would build God's Temple and that one of David's descendants would rule forever. He would be the Messiah, who would come 1,000 years later. After David sinned terribly, he repented and continued to obey God. Although God punished him for sinning, he still did everything he promised David he would do.

18. The Divided Kingdom

Study Notes

A Bible story from: 1 Kings 1-6; 11-12

18:01



King David ruled for 40 years. Then he died, and his son Solomon began to rule over Israel. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most that God should do for him. Solomon asked that God would make him very wise. This pleased God, so he made Solomon the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise ruler. God also made him very wealthy.
(No study notes for this frame)

18:02



In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father, David, had planned and gathered materials. People now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple instead of at the Tent of Meeting. God came and **was present in the Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

was present in the Temple

This could mean 'was present in the Temple in a special way.' Even though God was also present everywhere else at the same time, he made himself especially available to the people at the Temple.

18:03



But Solomon loved women from other countries. He disobeyed God by marrying many women, almost 1,000 of them! Many of these women came from foreign countries and **brought their gods with them** and continued to worship them. When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.

brought their gods with them

His wives brought their idols and their methods of worshiping idols with them to Israel. As a result, Solomon himself also began to worship those idols.

18:04



God was angry with Solomon **because of this**. He said that he would punish him by dividing the nation of Israel into two kingdoms. He would do this after Solomon died.

because of this

God was angry with Solomon for worshipping idols.

18:05



After Solomon died, his son Rehoboam became king. All the people of the nation of Israel came together to accept him as their king. They complained to Rehoboam that Solomon had made them do a lot of hard work and pay a lot of taxes. They asked Rehoboam to make them work less.
(No study notes for this frame)

18:06

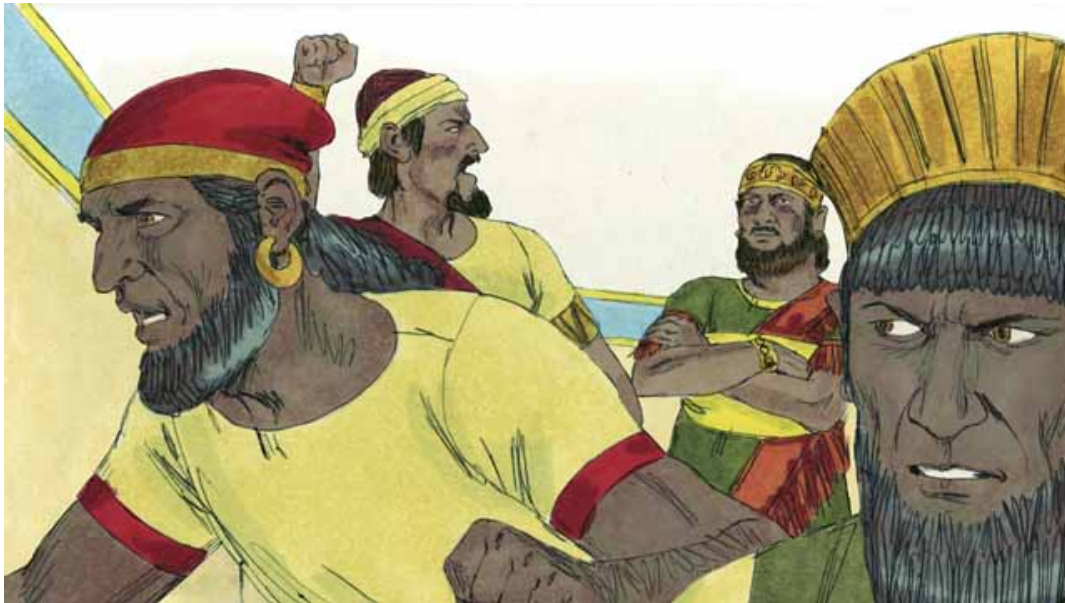


But Rehoboam answered them in a very foolish way. He said, "You say that my father, Solomon, made you work hard. But I will make you work harder than he did, and **I will make you suffer worse** than he did."

I will make you suffer worse

Rehoboah was a very selfish person. The people asked him to treat them better than Solomon treated them, but he said he would treat them even worse.

18:07



When the people heard him say this, most of them rebelled against him. Ten **tribes** left him; only two tribes remained with him. These two tribes called themselves **the kingdom of Judah**.

tribes

The descendants of each of Jacob's 12 sons had become a **tribe** or very large family group in the nation of Israel. Everyone in Israel belonged to one of the 12 tribes.

the kingdom of Judah

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the 12 tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. They were called by the name of Judah, a larger tribe than Benjamin.

18:08



The other ten tribes made a man named Jeroboam to be their king. These tribes were in the northern part of the land. They called themselves **the kingdom of Israel**.

the kingdom of Israel

The ten tribes were the majority of Israel. Therefore, they called themselves the kingdom of Israel.

18:09



Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship. **They no longer went to Jerusalem** in the kingdom of Judah to worship God at the Temple.

They no longer went to Jerusalem

Jeroboam placed his two idols in two temples in Dan and Bethel. The people in the kingdom of Israel went there to worship instead of going to Jerusalem.

18:10



The kingdoms of Judah and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
(No study notes for this frame)

18:11



In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil. Many of these kings were killed by other Israelites who wanted to become king in their place.
(No study notes for this frame)

18:12



All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols. When they did this, they often **slept with prostitutes** and sometimes even sacrificed children to the idols.

slept with prostitutes

They slept with prostitutes as an evil form of worship of their idols.

18:13

The kings of **Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of Judah's kings were evil. They ruled badly, and they worshiped idols. Some of these kings even sacrificed their children to false gods. Most of **the people of Judah also rebelled against God** and worshiped other gods.

Judah

The kingdom of Judah was often called "Judah."

the people of Judah also rebelled against God

The people of Judah usually did whatever their kings did. If the kings worshiped God, the people did that also. But if the kings worshiped idols, the people also worshiped those false gods.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Solomon ask God to do for him?

He asked God to make him very wise (See: [18:01](#)).

2. Why did the people no longer offer sacrifices at the Tent of Meeting?

Solomon build the Temple for which David had planned and prepared. People now offered sacrifices and worshiped God there instead of at the Tent of Meeting (See: [18:02](#)).

3. Solomon married almost 1,000 women. How did that cause Solomon to sin?

Many of the women Solomon married were foreign women. They brought their gods with them, and Solomon started to worship those false gods (See: [18:03](#)).

4. How did God say he would punish Solomon for worshipping other gods?

God said he would punish Solomon by dividing the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon died (See: [18:04](#)).

5. Why did the people rebel against Rehoboam?

They asked him to make them work less than Solomon did. Instead, Rehoboam said he would make them work harder. This made them angry, so they refused to serve him (See: [18:05](#), [18:06](#)).

6. How many of the tribes of Israel remained with Rehoboam?

Only two of the 12 tribes remained with Rehoboam (See: [18:07](#)).

7. What did Jeroboam make so the people would no longer go to Jerusalem to worship?

He made two idols for the people of the kingdom of Israel to worship (See: [18:09](#)).

8. How many of the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil?

All of the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil (See: [18:11](#)).

9. Were most of the kings of Judah good or evil?

Some of the kings of Judah were good men, but most of them were evil. They ruled badly, worshiped idols, and even sacrificed their children to false gods (See: [18:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did it please God when Solomon asked God to make him wise?

Solomon did not ask for wealth for himself. Instead, he asked God to make him wise so that he could rule God's people well. This pleased God, and so he also made him wealthy.

2. What problem happened because Solomon married women from foreign countries?

Many people from other countries believed in God, and he accepted them. Solomon was not wrong to marry foreign women. But he was wrong to marry foreign women who still served other gods. Those women continued to worship those false gods. And eventually, they caused Solomon to worship those idols as well. This made God very angry.

Solomon was very wise. How was Rehoboam different than Solomon?

3.

Unlike his father Solomon, Rehoboam, was very foolish. The people were willing to follow him if he would treat them well. But instead, he answered the people so harshly that most of the tribes of Israel refused to follow him.

4. Why did Jeroboam build idols for his people to worship?

Jeroboam may have wanted to worship idols. But he also did not want his people to continue to go to Jerusalem to worship. Jerusalem was in the kingdom of Judah. Judah was now the enemy of the kingdom of Israel. Therefore, the main reason Jeroboam made the idols was so his people would stay away from the kingdom of Judah. They worshiped the idols in the kingdom of Israel instead.

5. The kings of Judah were descendants of David. How is it that many of them were evil?

Even though David obeyed God, many of his children did not. Solomon obeyed God for a time, but then began to worship the idols of his foreign wives. Many of David's other descendants also chose not to obey God. Each person had to decide for himself whether or not he would obey God.

Summary

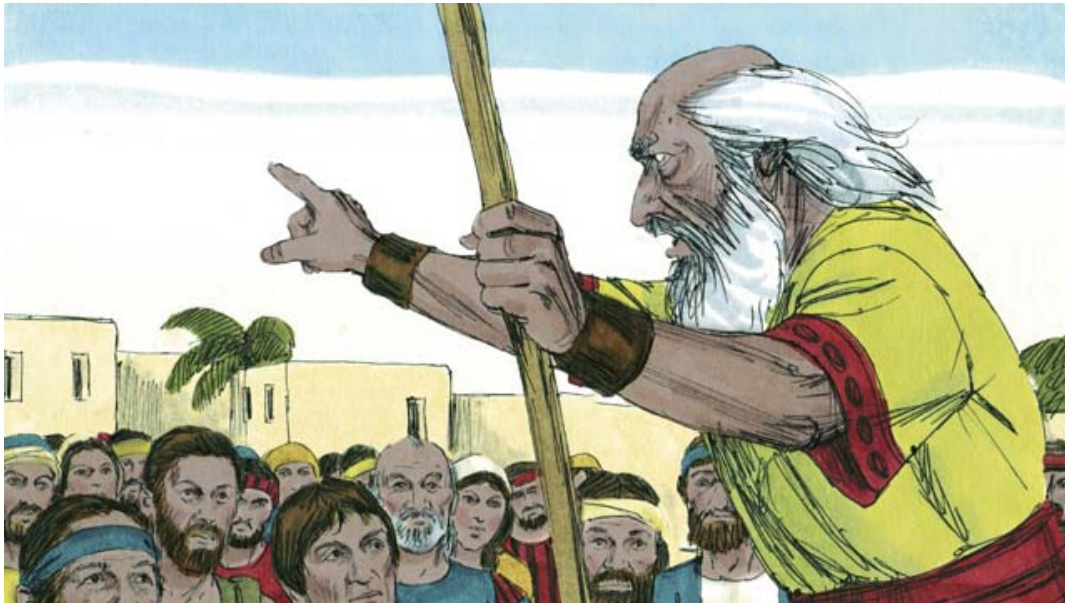
Solomon began as a good and wise king who ruled Israel well. However, he married many women who worshiped foreign gods. Eventually, Solomon also began to worship these idols. God was angry with Solomon and decided to divide Israel into two kingdoms. Ten tribes followed Jeroboam and formed the kingdom of Israel. Jeroboam made idols so the people would not go to Jerusalem to worship Yahweh at the Temple. All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. Two of the tribes formed the kingdom of Judah and chose descendants of David as their kings. However, many of their kings were also evil. Even though they were descendants of David, they refused to obey God. The two kingdoms fought against each other for many years.

19. The Prophets

Study Notes

A Bible story from: 1 Kings 16-18; 2 Kings 5; Jeremiah 38

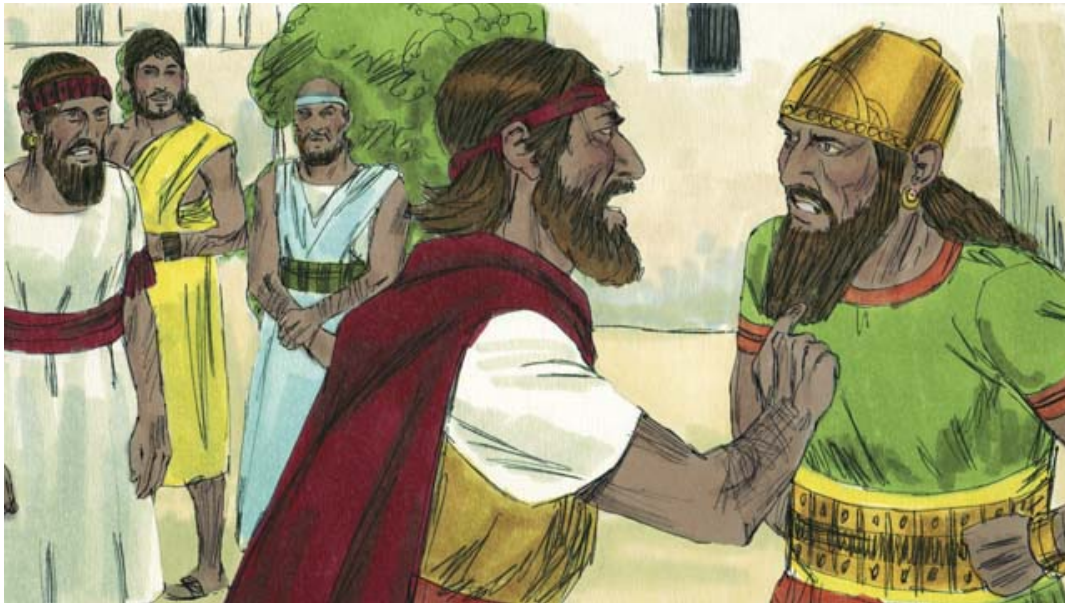
19:01



God was always sending prophets to the Israelites. The prophets heard messages from God and then told them to the people.

(No study notes for this frame)

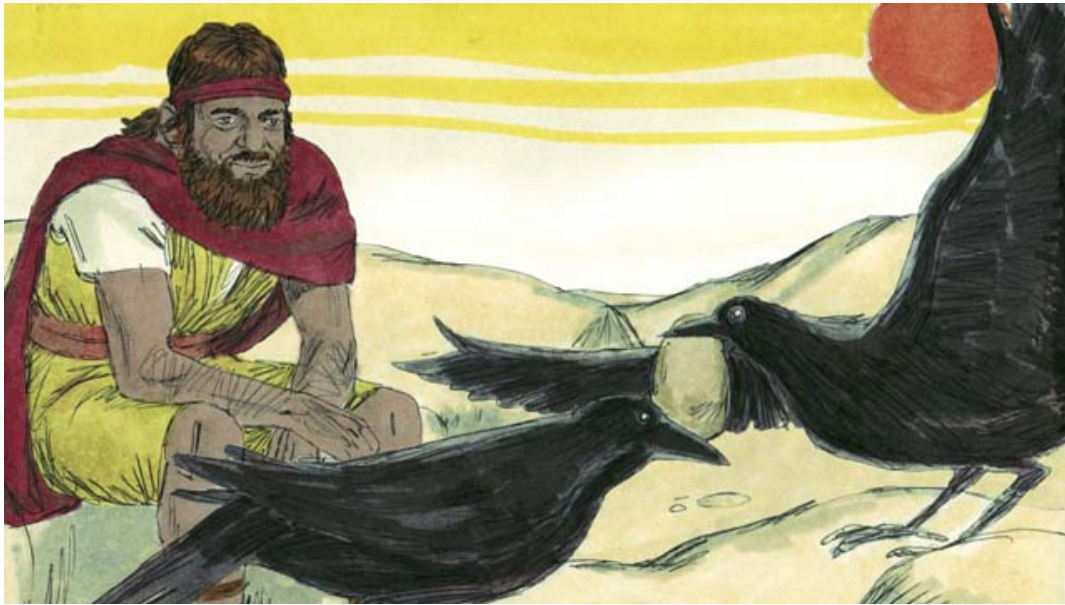
19:02



Elijah was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel. Ahab was an evil man. He tried to make the people worship a false god named Baal. So Elijah told King Ahab that God was going to punish the people. He said to him, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say it will rain again." This made Ahab so angry that he decided to kill Elijah.

(No study notes for this frame)

19:03



So God told Elijah to go into the wilderness to hide from Ahab. Elijah went into the wilderness to a certain stream where God directed him. Every morning and every evening, **birds would bring Elijah bread and meat.** During this time, Ahab and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.

birds would bring Elijah bread and meat

God sent the birds to bring food to Elijah so that Elijah could eat. Elijah drank water from the stream.

19:04



Because there was no rain, after some time the stream dried up. So Elijah went to **another country close by**. In that country lived a poor widow and her son. They had almost run out of food because there was no harvest. But still, as the woman **took care of Elijah**, God provided for her and her son. Her **jar of flour** and her **bottle of oil** never became empty. They had food during the whole famine. Elijah stayed there for about three years.

another country close by

Elijah would be safe in this country, because Ahab would not go there to look for him to kill him.

took care of Elijah

The widow and her son gave Elijah a place to stay in their house and provided food for him.

jar of flour

This refers to a clay jar in which the widow kept her supply of flour.

bottle of oil

In Israel, olive oil is used for cooking. The widow used the flour and the oil for making bread.

19:05



After three and a half years, God told Elijah that he would make it rain again. He told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab. So Elijah went to Ahab. When Ahab saw him, he said, "There you are, **you troublemaker!**" Elijah replied to him, "It is you who are the troublemaker! **You have abandoned Yahweh.** He is the true God, but you are worshiping Baal. Now you must bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to **Mount Carmel.**"

you troublemaker!

This means: 'You are a troublemaker!' Ahab was accusing Elijah of causing trouble by telling the king that he was doing wrong and also by stopping the rain.

You have abandoned Yahweh

That is, Ahab had led Israel to stop worshiping and obeying Yahweh.

Mount Carmel

Mount Carmel is the name of a mountain located in northern Israel. It is over 500 meters high.

19:06



So all the people of Israel went to Mount Carmel. The men who said they spoke messages for Baal also came. These were Baal's prophets. There were 450 of them. Elijah said to the people, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!**"

If Yahweh is God, worship him! But if Baal is God, worship him!

This does not mean that Elijah was undecided. He knew that Yahweh is the real God. He wanted the people to understand that when they worship false gods, they are rejecting Yahweh as the only true God.

19:07



Then Elijah said to Baal's prophets, "Kill a bull, divide the meat into pieces, and put it on an altar for a sacrifice, but do not light the fire. I will do the same later, and I will put the meat on a different altar. Then if God sends fire on the altar, you will know that he is the real God." So the prophets of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.

(No study notes for this frame)

19:08



Then the prophets of Baal **prayed to Baal**, "Hear us, Baal!" All day long they prayed and shouted and even **cut themselves with knives**, but Baal did not answer, and he did not send any fire.

prayed to Baal

The prophets of Baal asked Baal to send fire onto the bull they prepared as a sacrifice.

cut themselves with knives

They injured themselves with knives as an extreme way to show their devotion to Baal, hoping that this would persuade him to listen to them.

19:09



Baal's prophets spent almost the whole day praying to Baal. They finally stopped praying. Then Elijah put the meat of another bull on an altar for God. After that, **he told the people to pour 12 huge pots of water on top of the sacrifice** until the meat, the wood, and even the ground around the altar were completely wet.

he told the people to pour 12 huge pots of water on top of the sacrifice

Elijah told the people to pour the water on the sacrifice so that it would be more difficult to burn. In this way, the people would know for certain that God had answered when he sent fire onto the sacrifice.

19:10



Then Elijah prayed, "Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant. Answer me so that these people will know that you are the true God."
(No study notes for this frame)

19:11



Immediately, fire fell from the sky. It burned up the meat, the wood, **the rocks, the soil**, and even the water that was around the altar. When the people saw this, they prostrated themselves to the ground and said, "Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!"

the rocks, the soil

Rocks and dirt do not burn. But God sent fire that was so hot that it even melted the rocks of the altar and the dirt underneath it. This showed the people that Yahweh is God, because only the true God could send fire that hot.

19:12



Then Elijah said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!" So the people captured the prophets of Baal and took them away from there and killed them.
(No study notes for this frame)

19:13



Then Elijah said to King Ahab, "Return immediately to your home, because the rain is coming." Soon the sky became black, and a heavy rain began. **Yahweh was ending the drought.** This also showed that he is the true God.

Yahweh was ending the drought

God caused it not to rain for about three years in order to punish the people for worshiping Baal. Now, however, the people had rejected Baal and killed his prophets. Therefore, God was going to send rain on the kingdom of Israel again.

19:14



When **Elijah finished his work**, God chose a man named Elisha to be his prophet. God did many miracles through Elisha. One of the miracles happened to Naaman. He was the commander of an enemy army, but he had a bad skin disease. **Naaman heard about Elisha**, so **he went to Elisha** and asked him to heal him. Elisha told Naaman to go to the Jordan River and dip himself in the water seven times.

Elijah finished his work

By that time, Elijah was very old. He had done everything that God told him to do.

Naaman heard about Elisha

This means that people had told Naaman that Elisha was able to perform miracles.

he went to Elisha

Naaman had to go into Israel to find Elisha and ask him to do this.

19:15



Naaman became angry. He refused to do this because **it seemed foolish**. But later he changed his mind. He went to the Jordan River and dipped himself seven times into the water. When he came up from the water the last time, God healed him.

it seemed foolish

Naaman would not do what Elisha said because he knew that washing alone could not heal his disease.

19:16



God also sent many other prophets to the people of Israel. They all told the people to stop worshiping idols. Instead, people should act justly with each other and have mercy on each other. The prophets warned the people that they must stop doing evil and obey God instead. If the people did not do this, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.

(No study notes for this frame)

19:17



Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them. Once, they put the prophet Jeremiah into **a dry well** and left him there to die. He sank down into the mud in the bottom of the well. But then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.

a dry well

The well had water in it, but there was still mud in the bottom.

19:18



The prophets continued to speak for God even though the people hated them. They warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent. They also reminded people that God promised to send them the Messiah.

(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did King Ahab try to kill the prophet Elijah?

Ahab was angry with Elijah because Elijah said there would be no rain in the kingdom of Israel. Elijah said this because Ahab and the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped an idol named Baal (See: [19:02](#)).

2. How did God provide for Elijah while he hid from Ahab at the stream?

God sent birds to bring Elijah bread and meat to eat while he hid from Ahab (See: [19:03](#)).

3. How did God provide for Elijah while he lived with the widow and her son?

God caused the widow's jar of flour and bottle of oil to never become empty. For about three years, there was always enough food for them to eat even though there was no other food in the land (See: [19:04](#)).

4. What did Elijah tell the people to decide about when they came with the prophets of Baal to Mount Carmel?

Elijah told the people that they should stop changing their mind about God. If Yahweh is God, they should worship him, but if Baal is God, they should worship him instead (See: [19:06](#)).

5. How did Elijah say the people could tell whether Yahweh or Baal was the true God?

Elijah and the prophets of Baal would prepare a sacrifice on an altar. The people would know that the God who responded by sending fire onto the altar was the true God (See: [19:07](#)).

6. What happened when the prophets of Baal asked Baal to send fire on the altar?

Nothing happened when they asked Baal to send fire (See: [19:08](#)).

7. What happened when Elijah asked Yahweh to send fire on the altar?

Fire fell from the sky and burned up the altar and everything around it (See: [19:11](#)).

8. How did God heal Naaman of his skin disease?

Elisha told Naaman to dip himself in the Jordan River seven times. At first, he refused. But then he changed his mind and did what Elisha told him to do. God healed him as soon as he obeyed (See: [19:14](#), [19:15](#)).

9. How did the people try to kill the prophet Jeremiah?

They put Jeremiah into a dry well and left him there to die. But later, the king sent his servants to pull him out (See: [19:17](#)).

10. Who did the prophets remind the people that God promised to send to them?

The prophets reminded them that God would send the Messiah to them (See: [19:18](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. How did the people usually respond to the prophets whom God sent to them?

The people did not believe what the prophets said. Instead, they hated the prophets and often tried to kill them. In spite of this, the prophets continued to speak to the people for God.

2. How did the prophet Elijah survive during the drought and the famine that it caused?

When there was no rain in the kingdom of Israel, there was also very little food. During that time, God provided food for Elijah in special ways. For a while, he sent birds to bring food to Elijah. Then he caused the food of a poor widow to never end so she could feed Elijah. God took care of Elijah because Elijah obeyed God and spoke God's messages to the people.

3. Why did Elijah tell the people to pour water on his sacrifice?

Elijah told the people to pour water on his sacrifice in order to make it harder for it to burn. He wanted the people to know that Yahweh was truly the one who burned up the sacrifice. Therefore, he made the sacrifice so wet that only God could cause it to burn. He knew that nothing was too difficult for God.

4. Why did Naaman not go to the river immediately when Elisha told him to go?

Perhaps Naaman thought what Elisha told him to do was too simple to cure his disease. At first, he thought he would have to do something more difficult in order to be healed. However, when he did the easy thing Elisha told him to do, he was healed!

5. What did the prophets say the people must do so that God would not destroy them?

The prophets told the people they must repent. That is, they must change their mind about God and begin to think about him in a different way. They must understand that Yahweh is the true God and stop worshiping other gods. If they did not repent, God would destroy them because they sinned against him.

Summary

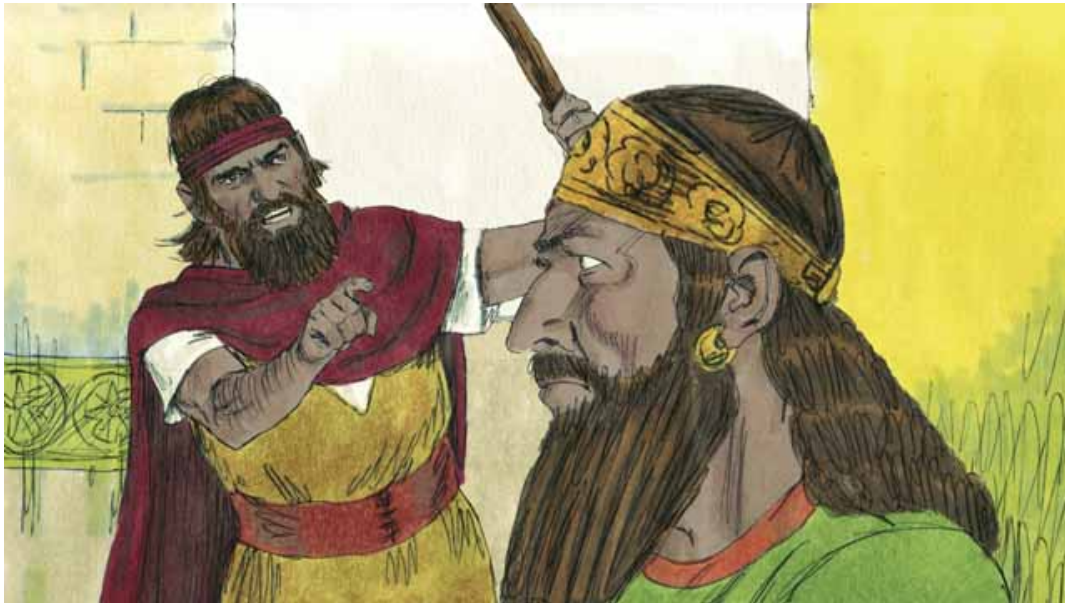
God always sent prophets to tell the Israelites to worship only him. But the people hated the prophets and refused to listen to them. They served idols instead of Yahweh. They even tried to kill the prophets whom God sent to them. But the prophets continued to speak for God, and God continued to care for his prophets. The prophets warned the people to repent or God would punish them. Even so, God still promised that he would send the Messiah to them.

20. The Exile and Return

Study Notes

A Bible story from: 2 Kings 17; 24-25; 2 Chronicles 36; Ezra 1-10; Nehemiah 1-13

20:01

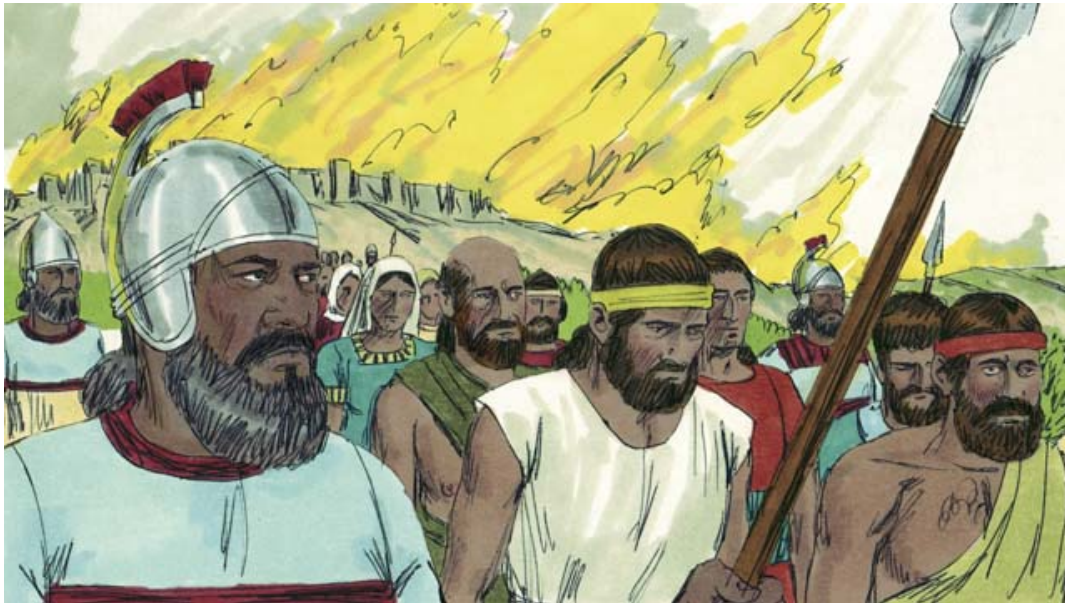


The kingdom of Israel and the kingdom of Judah both sinned against God. They **broke the covenant** that God had made with them at Sinai. God sent his prophets to warn them to repent and worship him again, but they refused to obey.

broke the covenant

The people disobeyed the commands God had given them in his covenant with them at Mount Sinai (See: [13:04](#)).

20:02



So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. Assyria was another nation that became very powerful. The Assyrians were also very cruel to other nations. They came and destroyed the kingdom of Israel. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything they wanted, and burned much of the country.

(No study notes for this frame)

20:03



The Assyrians gathered together all the leaders, the rich people, and the people who could make valuable things. They took them to Assyria. Only some very poor Israelites remained in Israel.
(No study notes for this frame)

20:04



Then the Assyrians brought **foreigners** to live in the land. The foreigners rebuilt the cities. They intermarried with the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of these people were called **Samaritans**.

foreigners

This refers to people who were not Israelites.

Samaritans

When the foreigners married the Israelites, their children were neither foreigners nor Israelites. They were a mixed race. These children were called Samaritans.

20:05



The people in the kingdom of Judah saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites. God sent prophets to warn them, but they refused to listen.

The people in the kingdom of Judah saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel

God punished the kingdom of Israel first by sending the Assyrians to defeat them. The people in the kingdom of Judah saw this happen, and had time to repent. Instead, they continued to worship idols rather than worship God.

20:06



About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful nation. The king of Judah **agreed to be** Nebuchadnezzar's servant and pay him a lot of money every year.

agreed to be

The king of Judah was forced to either serve the Babylonian king or be destroyed.

20:07



But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, **the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah.** They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah

This was the second time that the Babylonians attacked the kingdom of Judah. The first time, they forced the king of Judah to serve them. This second time, they destroyed Jerusalem.

20:08



To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and **then made him blind**. After that, they took the king away so he would die in prison in Babylon.

then made him blind

The Babylonians were very cruel. They made the king blind to punish him, but also so that the last thing he would remember seeing was them killing his sons.

20:09



Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields. This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the Promised Land is called **the Exile**.

the Exile

The word **exile** means someone is removed from their country by force. The **Exile** is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

20:10



Even though God punished his people for their sin by taking them away into exile, he did not forget them or his promises. God continued to watch over his people and speak to them through his prophets. He promised that, after 70 years, they would return to the Promised Land again.
(No study notes for this frame)

20:11



About 70 years later, Cyrus, the king of Persia, defeated Babylonia. So, instead of the Babylonian Empire, **the Persian Empire** now ruled over many nations. The Israelites were now called Jews. Most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon. Only a few very old Jews even remembered **the land of Judah**.

the Persian Empire

The Persian Empire grew to cover the area from central Asia to Egypt. It was located in the region of what is Iran today.

the land of Judah

That is, the area where the kingdom of Judah was located before the Exile. Jerusalem was the capital city of Judah.

20:12

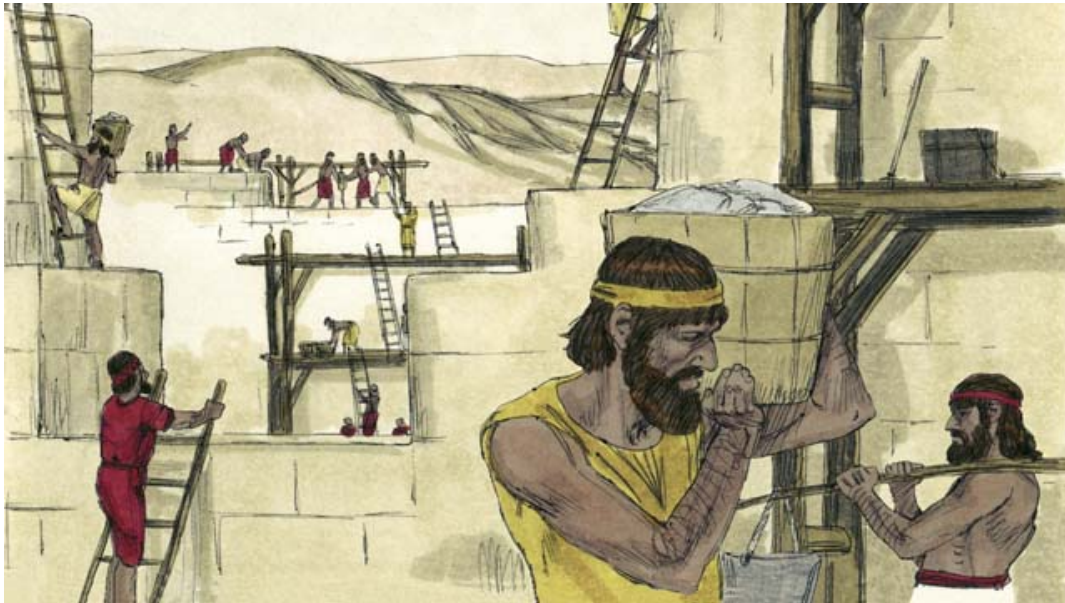


The Persians were very strong, but they had mercy on the people they conquered. Shortly after Cyrus became king of the Persians, he gave an order that any Jew who wanted to return to Judah could leave Persia and **go back to Judah**. He even gave them money to rebuild the Temple! So, after 70 years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.

go back to Judah

Since most of these Jews were the children and grandchildren of those who left Judah, they had never lived in Judah before.

20:13



When **the people** arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and **the wall** around the city. The Persians still ruled over them, but once again the Jews were living in the Promised Land and worshipping at the Temple.

the people

That is, the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob, who were now called the Jews.

the wall

This wall was very thick (2.5 meters) and was built to protect the city from attackers.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What nation did God send to destroy the kingdom of Israel?

God sent the Assyrians to destroy the kingdom of Israel. The Assyrians were very cruel. They killed many of the Israelites and took the rest of them to Assyria (See: [20:02](#), [20:03](#)).

2. Who did the Assyrians bring to live in the land of Israel?

The Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land of Israel. These foreigners married the Israelites who were left in the land. Their descendants were called Samaritans (See: [20:04](#)).

3. What did the people in the kingdom of Judah do when they saw how God had punished the kingdom of Israel?

The people in the kingdom of Judah continued to worship idols, including the gods of the Canaanites. They refused to believe the prophets whom God sent to warn them (See: [20:05](#)).

4. What nation did God send to attack the kingdom of Judah?

God sent the Babylonians to attack the kingdom of Judah. As a result, the king of Judah promised to pay a lot of money each year to Nebuchadnezzar, the king of the Babylonians (See: [20:06](#)).

5. What did Nebuchadnezzar do to the kingdom of Judah when they rebelled against him?

Nebuchadnezzar sent his army to destroy Jerusalem and the Temple. They took away all the treasures of the city. They also killed the king's sons and made him blind. Then they led him away to Babylon (See: [20:07](#), [20:08](#)).

6. Who remained in the land of Judah during the Exile?

The Exile is the time when many of the people of Judah were forced to go away to Babylon. During this time, Nebuchadnezzar left only the poorest people in the land (See: [20:09](#)).

7. Did God forget his people after he punished them by sending them into exile?

God did not forget his people as they were away from the land. He continued to send his prophets to speak to them for him. He promised that they would return to the land after 70 years in Babylon (See: [20:10](#)).

8. How did the Jews return to the land of Judah?

God caused the Persians to defeat the Babylonians. Cyrus, the Persian king, allowed the Jews to return to Jerusalem. He gave them money to rebuild the Temple. Many of the Jews returned to Jerusalem. They also rebuilt the walls of the city (See: [20:12](#), [20:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Does it seem right that God would send the cruel, evil Assyrians to destroy his people?

God warned the kingdom of Israel that he would punish them, but they would not repent. Therefore, God sent the Assyrians to destroy them. Even though the Assyrians were a cruel people, God allowed them to defeat Israel in order to punish Israel. Later, however, he punished the Assyrians by allowing the Babylonians to defeat them.

2. Why do you think the people in the kingdom of Judah refused to repent after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel?

People normally think they are not as bad as other people. Perhaps the people of the kingdom of Judah thought they were better than the people in the kingdom of Israel. They thought God would not punish them in the same way. But they were wrong. God sent his prophets to tell them that he would punish them if they did not repent. And he punished them just as he said that he would.

3. Why do you think the Babylonians were able to destroy the Temple in Jerusalem?

The Temple was the place where God stayed with the Israelites. However, God did not stay with them because they sinned against him and worshiped other gods. Therefore, God left the Temple and allowed the Babylonians to destroy it.

4. Why did the prophets say that the Israelites would only be in exile for 70 years?

God decided to allow the Jews to return to Judah after 70 years in exile in Babylon. He also decided to cause Cyrus and the Persians to defeat Babylon in order to let the Jews leave and go home to Judah. Since God knew beforehand that he was going to do this, he sent his prophets to tell the Jews that he would do these things.

5. How were the Jews able to rebuild the Temple?

God provided everything the Jews needed to rebuild the Temple. He even caused Cyrus, the king of the Persians, to give them the money they needed to rebuild the Temple. God wanted to live with his people there again. So he made it possible for them to rebuild the Temple where he would live with them.

Summary

The people in both of the kingdoms refused to believe that God would punish them. Even after God sent the Assyrians to destroy the kingdom of Israel, the people in the kingdom of Judah refused to repent and obey God. Therefore, God sent the Babylonians to destroy them as well. They were in exile in Babylon for 70 years before God caused a new king to allow them to return to Jerusalem. God made it possible for them to rebuild the Temple and the city of Jerusalem and to worship him there again.

21. God Promises the Messiah

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 3; 12; Deuteronomy 18:15; 2 Samuel 7; Psalm 16; 22; 35; 69; 41; Isaiah 7:14; 9:1-7; 61; 53; 50:6; 59:16; Jeremiah 31; Daniel 7; Micah 5:2; Zechariah 11:12-13; Malachi 4:5

21:01



Even when God created the world, he knew that he would send the Messiah at some time far later. He promised Adam and Eve that he would do this. He said that a descendant of Eve would be born who would **crush the snake's head**. Of course, **Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve**. God meant that the Messiah would defeat Satan completely.

crush the snake's head

A venomous snake cannot hurt anyone after its head has been crushed. To crush the snake's head is to completely destroy the snake.

Satan appeared as a snake in order to deceive Eve

Satan spoke to Eve in the form of a snake. This does not mean that he is a snake now.

to deceive Eve

The snake deceived Eve by making her doubt what God had said and tricking her into disobeying God.

21:02



God promised Abraham that **through him** all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. God would fulfill this promise by sending the Messiah at some later time. The Messiah would save people from their sin out of every people group in the world.

through him

The blessing that would come to all the people groups would be through Abraham because it would come through one of Abraham's descendants.

21:03

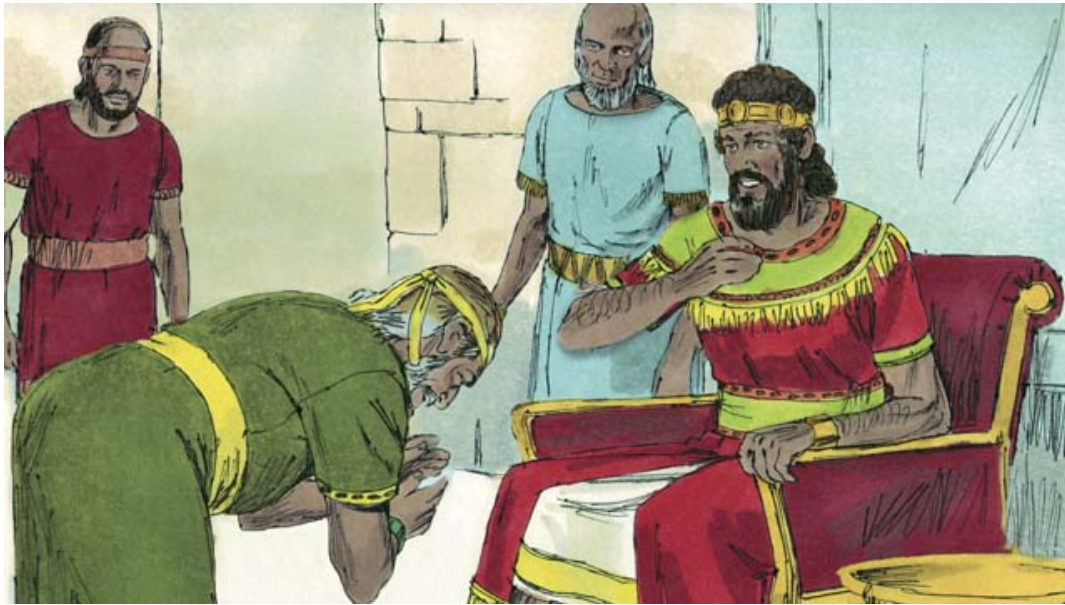


God promised Moses that in the future he would send another **prophet like Moses**. This prophet would be the Messiah. In this way, God promised again that he would send the Messiah.

prophet like Moses

To be like Moses, the future prophet would need to have great authority from God to lead and rescue his people.

21:04



God promised King David that one of his own descendants would be the Messiah. He would be king and rule over God's people forever.

(No study notes for this frame)

21:05



God spoke to the prophet Jeremiah and told him that he would make **a New Covenant** one day. The New Covenant would not be like the old covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. When he would make his New Covenant with people, he would make them to know him personally. Each person would love him and want to obey his laws. God said this would be like **writing his law on their hearts**. They would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. It is the Messiah who would make the New Covenant with them.

a New Covenant

The New Covenant would be truly effective. People really would know God. They would truly live as his people. And God would forgive their sins completely. God would make this New Covenant because the Messiah would die as a sacrifice for all who would believe in him.

writing his law on their hearts

This is in contrast with the way God had written his law on stone tablets for the Israelites.

21:06



God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king. A prophet is a person who hears the words of God and then proclaims God's messages to the people. The Messiah that God promised to send would be the perfect prophet. That is, the Messiah would hear God's messages perfectly, he would understand them perfectly, and he would teach them to people perfectly.
(No study notes for this frame)

21:07



Israelite priests kept on making sacrifices to God for the people. These sacrifices were **in place of God punishing the people** for their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people. However, the Messiah would be **the perfect high priest** who would **offer himself as a perfect sacrifice** to God. That is, he would never sin, and when he would give himself to be the sacrifice, no other sacrifice for sin would ever be necessary.

in place of God punishing the people

The people sin, but God would punish the Messiah for their sins. In this way, God would not need to punish anyone who believes in the Messiah.

the perfect high priest

The sacrifices the Israelite priests kept making were never good enough because the priests sinned. The Messiah would never sin. Therefore, his sacrifice was perfect and would satisfy God completely.

the perfect high priest

The sacrifices the Israelite priests kept making were never good enough because the priests sinned. The Messiah would never sin. Therefore, his sacrifice was perfect and would satisfy God completely.

offer himself

The Messiah would offer himself as a sacrifice by allowing himself to be killed.

a perfect sacrifice

There was no fault or imperfection in the Messiah's sacrifice.

21:08



Kings and chiefs rule over groups of people, and sometimes they make mistakes. King David ruled over only the Israelites. But the Messiah, a descendant of David's, will rule over the whole world, and he will rule forever. Also, he will always rule justly and make the right decisions.
(No study notes for this frame)

21:09



God's prophets said many other things about the Messiah. For example, **Malachi** said that another prophet would come before the Messiah came. That prophet would be very important. Also, the prophet Isaiah wrote that the Messiah would be born of a virgin. And the prophet **Micah** said that the Messiah would be born in the town of Bethlehem.

Malachi

Malachi was the last prophet in the Old Testament.

Micah

Micah was an Old Testament prophet of God who, like Isaiah, spoke his messages from God almost 800 years before the Messiah came.

21:10



The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in the region of Galilee. The Messiah would comfort people who were very sad. He would also **set prisoners free**. The Messiah would also heal sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.

set prisoners free

This means he would set free those who have unjustly been put into prison. This could also refer to setting people free from the bondage of sin.

21:11



The prophet Isaiah also said that people would hate the Messiah and refuse to accept him. Other prophets said that a friend of the Messiah would turn against him. The prophet **Zechariah** said that this friend would receive **30 silver coins** from other people for doing this. Also, some prophets said that people would kill the Messiah, and that they would gamble for his clothes.

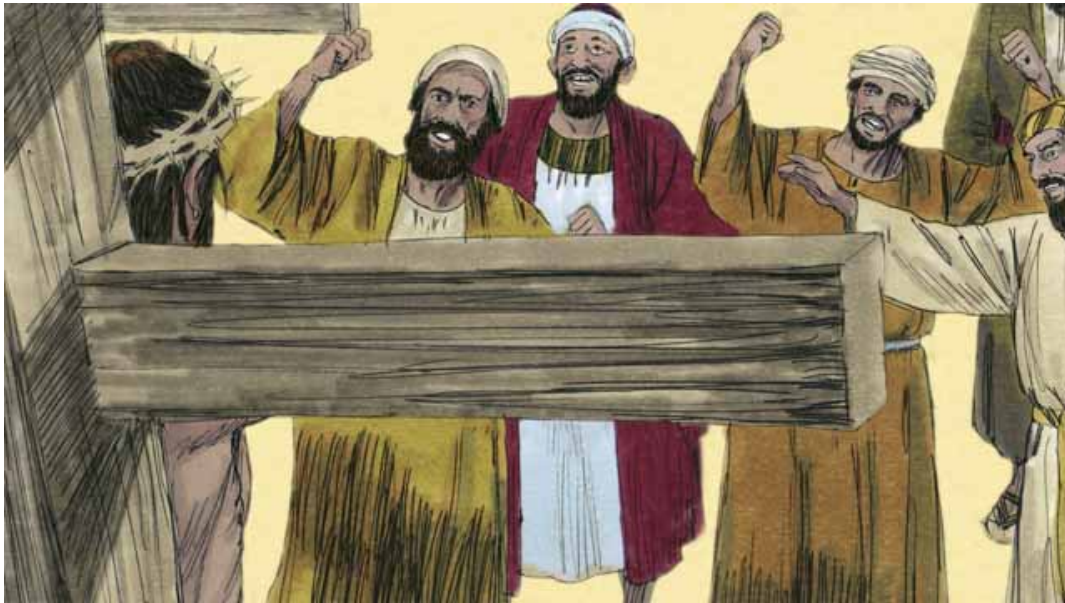
Zechariah

Zechariah was an Old Testament prophet who spoke to God's people after they returned to the Promised Land from the Exile in Babylon. This was about 500 years before the Messiah came.

30 silver coins

At the time, each of these coins was worth the amount of money a person could earn in four days.

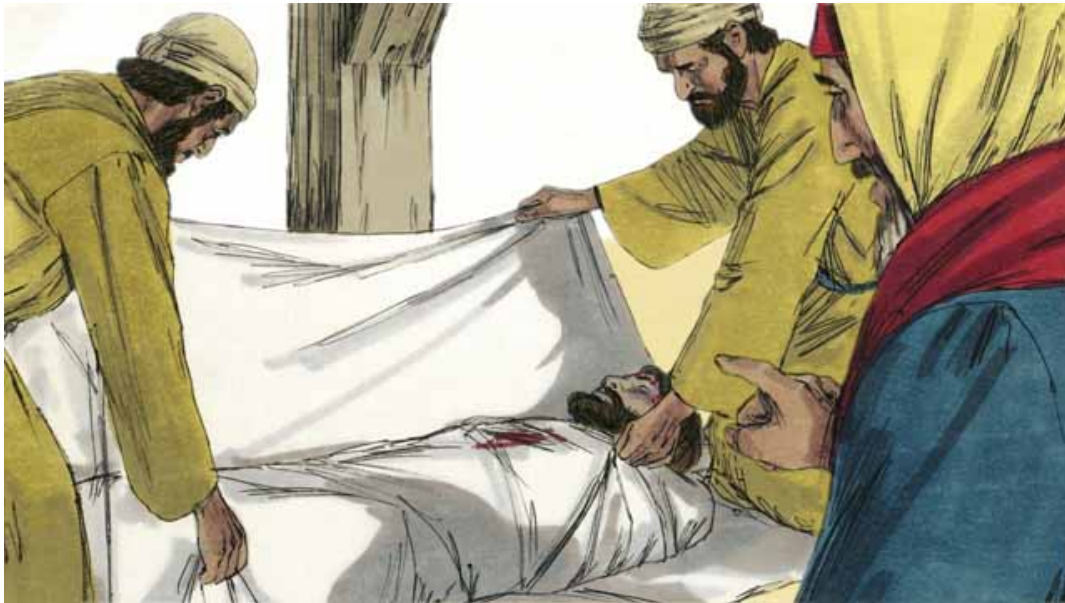
21:12



The prophets also told about how the Messiah would die. Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah. They would pierce him, and he would die in great suffering and agony even though he had not done anything wrong.

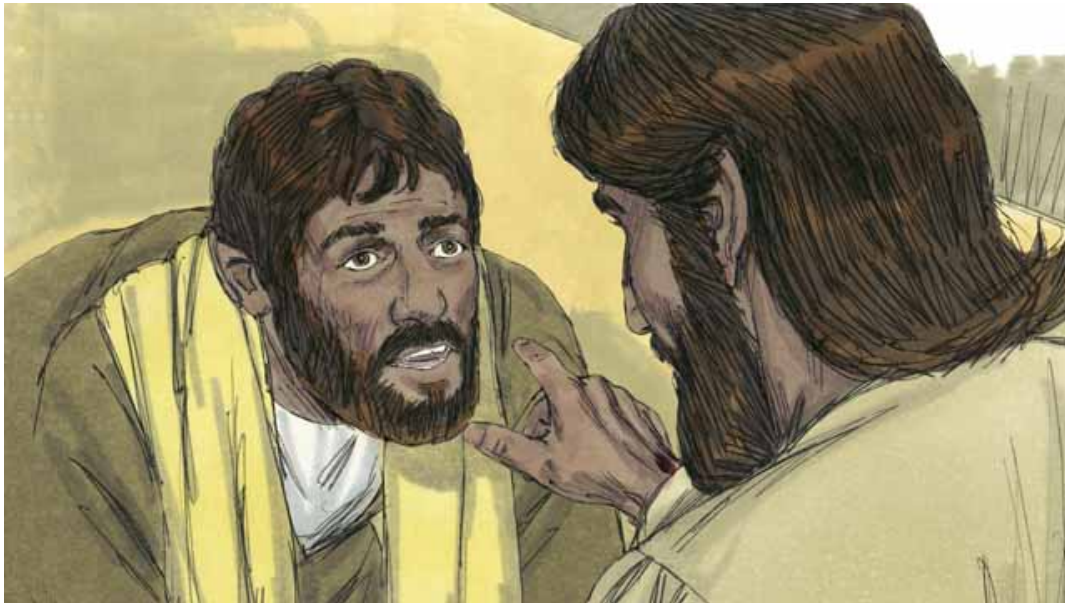
(No study notes for this frame)

21:13



The prophets also said that the Messiah would not sin. He would be perfect. But he would die because God would punish him for other people's sins. When he died, people would be able to have peace with God. This is why, in God's plan, the Messiah had to die.
(No study notes for this frame)

21:14



The prophets also said that God would raise the Messiah from the dead. This shows that Jesus' death and resurrection was all God's plan to make the New Covenant, so he could save people who had sinned against him. (No study notes for this frame)

21:15



God revealed to the prophets many things about the Messiah, but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets. More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, **at exactly the right time**, God sent the Messiah into the world.

at exactly the right time

God decided that he would send the Messiah at a specific time in history. God prepared everything so that the events his prophets spoke about would happen at that time.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Who would crush the snake's head?

The Messiah, a descendant of Eve, would crush the snake's head (See: [21:01](#)).

2. Who were the people whom the Messiah would save?

The Messiah would save people out of every people group in the world (See: [21:02](#)).

3. How would the New Covenant be different than the old covenant?

In the New Covenant, people would know God personally. They would love him and want to obey his laws. His law would be written on their hearts (See: [21:05](#)).

4. What perfect sacrifice would the Messiah offer to God?

The Messiah would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God (See: [21:07](#)).

5. What did the prophets say about the birth of the Messiah?

The prophets said the Messiah would be born of a virgin in the town of Bethlehem (See: [21:09](#)).

6. According to the prophet Isaiah, how would people receive the Messiah?

The prophet Isaiah said people would hate the Messiah and refuse to accept him. His friend would turn against him, and the people would kill him (See: [21:11](#)).

7. According to the prophets, why would the Messiah die?

The Messiah would die because God would punish him for other people's sins. He would die so they could have peace with God (See: [21:13](#)).

8. What would God do for the Messiah after he died?

The prophets said God would raise the Messiah from the dead (See: [21:14](#)).

9. After the prophets finished speaking about the Messiah, how much time passed before God send him into the world?

God sent the Messiah into the world 400 years after the prophets last spoke about him (See: [21:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think God spoke about the Messiah to Adam and Eve, even though God would not send the Messiah for a very long time?

When he first created the world, God already planned to send the Messiah to save us from our sins. Therefore, he began to tell people about the Messiah from the very beginning.

2. Abraham's descendants were the Jews, who are God's chosen people. Why is it significant that God told Abraham that he would bless all the people groups of the world through him?

God never planned to save only the Jews. Rather, from the very beginning, his plan was to save people from every people group in the world. However, God told Abraham that God would bless all these people through a Jewish descendant of Abraham. This descendant would be the Messiah.

3. The New Covenant will be written on people's hearts. Why is this important?

The old covenant was written on tables of stone and paper. Even the Jews who received it often forgot about it and did not obey it. But God will write the New Covenant within people so they cannot forget it. Because God will change their hearts, people will obey the New Covenant. They will willingly worship and serve God.

4. Why should we be encouraged that the Messiah never has to make another sacrifice for sin?

The Messiah offered himself as a perfect sacrifice to God. God accepted his sacrifice in place of punishing us. Since his sacrifice was perfect, he never has to offer it again. That means God will never punish believers for their sins, since the sacrifice of the Messiah will always be enough to please God.

5. The Messiah never sinned. Why did God allow people to kill him?

God wanted the Messiah to die because that was the only way God could forgive people's sins. God is holy and cannot ignore when people sin. But God punished the Messiah in the place of other people so God would not have to punish them.

Summary

When God first created the world, he had already decided to send the Messiah to die for people's sins. Throughout history, God has revealed to us what the Messiah would do. He promised Adam and Eve that the Messiah would destroy Satan. He told Abraham that the Messiah would bless all the people groups in the world. He told the prophets that the Messiah would be a perfect prophet, priest, and king. He would be born of a virgin and never sin. But people would hate him and kill him anyway. God would allow this to happen so that the Messiah could die and be punished in the place of other people.

22. The Birth of John

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Luke 1

22:01



In the past, God had spoken to his prophets so they could speak to **his people**. **Then came 400 years of silence** in which he did not speak to men. Then God sent an angel to a priest named **Zechariah**. Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, honored God. They were very old, and she had never born any children.

his people

This refers to the Israelites.

Then came 400 years of silence

The last Old Testament prophet, Malachi, has prophesied 400 years before.

Zechariah

This was not the same person as the Old Testament prophet by that name.

22:02



The angel said to Zechariah, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him John. God will **fill him with the Holy Spirit**, and John will get the people ready to accept the Messiah!" Zechariah responded, "My wife and I are too old to have children! How can I know you are telling me the truth?"

The angel

This refers to the angel that came to Zechariah in [22:01](#).

fill him with the Holy Spirit

That is, God will give him wisdom and power through the Holy Spirit.

22:03



The angel responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news. Because you did not believe me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born." Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak. Then the angel left Zechariah. After this, Zechariah returned home and his wife became pregnant.
(No study notes for this frame)

22:04



When **Elizabeth** was six months pregnant, the same angel suddenly appeared to **Elizabeth's relative**, whose name was Mary. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus. He will be the Son of the Most High God and will rule forever."

Elizabeth

She was Zechariah's wife.

Elizabeth's relative

Mary may have been Elizabeth's cousin, but we don't know exactly how these two women were related.

22:05



Mary replied, "**How can this be**, since I am a virgin?" The angel explained, "The **Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you**. So **the baby will be holy**, and he will be the Son of God." Mary believed what the angel said.

How can this be

Mary was not doubting the truth of the angel's words, but was asking how it would happen.

Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will come to you

By the power of God, the Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant. This was not a physical act. This was a miracle.

the baby will be holy

The word **holy** here means the baby will belong to God.

22:06



Soon after this happened, Mary went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Mary greeted her, Elizabeth's **baby jumped inside her**. The women rejoiced together about **what God had done for them**. After Mary visited Elizabeth for three months, Mary returned home.

baby jumped inside her

The baby moved suddenly inside Elizabeth's womb in response to Mary's greeting to Elizabeth.

what God had done for them

This refers to the fact that both women were pregnant through God's supernatural intervention. Mary had conceived without a man, and Elizabeth had conceived with Zechariah after she was too old to have a child.

22:07



After this, Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy. Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby John, as the angel had commanded. Then God made Zechariah able to speak again. Zechariah said, "Praise God, because he has remembered to help his people! You, my son, will be **the prophet of the Most High God**. You will tell the people how they can receive forgiveness for their sins!"

the prophet

John would be the prophet that the Old Testament prophets had predicted would come before the Messiah.

the Most High God

This title refers to the fact that God rules over everything.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How many years went by when God did not speak to his people through a prophet?

God did not speak to his people through a prophet for 400 years (See: [22:01](#)).

2. What problem did Zechariah and Elizabeth have?

They were very old, and Elizabeth had not been able to have children (See: [22:01](#)).

3. What would John get the people ready to do?

John would get the people ready to accept the Messiah (See: [22:02](#)).

4. Why did Zechariah become unable to speak?

Zechariah became unable to speak because he did not believe the angel when the angel said Zechariah would have a son (See: [22:03](#)).

5. To whom was Mary engaged to be married?

Mary was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph (See: [22:04](#)).

6. Who did the angel tell Mary that her son would be?

The angel said she should name her son Jesus, and he would be the Son of the Most High God who would rule forever (See: [22:04](#)).

7. Why was Mary confused about how she could have a son?

Mary was a virgin. Therefore, she did not understand how she could have a son (See: [22:05](#)).

8. How did Mary respond when the angel told her that God and the Holy Spirit would come to her so that she would be pregnant?

Mary believed that what the angel said would happen to her (See: [22:05](#)).

9. What did Elizabeth's baby do when Mary arrived to visit Elizabeth?

Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her when Mary arrived to visit (See: [22:06](#)).

10. Why did Zechariah and Elizabeth name their baby John?

The angel has commanded them to name their baby John.

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why were Zechariah and Elizabeth unable to have children before this time?

Zechariah and Elizabeth were unable to have children, but this did not mean that they had done anything wrong. They honored God, and he was pleased with them. Therefore, God did a miracle through them, allowing them to become the parents of John in their old age.

2. Was Zechariah being reasonable when he doubted the message of the angel?

It would certainly seem reasonable that Zechariah doubted the angel, because God had not spoken to his people for 400 years. However, God did not merely send a prophet to Zechariah. Instead, he sent one of his mighty angels. The presence of the angel should have convinced Zechariah to believe the message.

3. Mary was a virgin. Therefore, her son did not have a human father. Why do you think this was important?

Every descendant of Adam and Eve is born with a desire to sin. Mary's son, however, is the Son of God, conceived by the Holy Spirit. For that reason, he is holy and has never sinned. He is the only person who has ever been born who does not have this desire to sin. God did not need to punish him for his sins. Instead, he could be punished in the place of other people who sinned.

4. How was baby John able to know when Mary came to Elizabeth, and to jump in Elizabeth's womb?

John was already a person who could think and act even while he was in Elizabeth's womb. He was already able to worship God by jumping inside Elizabeth when Mary came near with the baby Son of God inside her.

5. Why did God send John ahead of the Messiah?

The Messiah is the most important person who ever came to earth. When important people traveled somewhere in that time, someone went ahead of them to make preparations for their arrival and to tell people that they were coming. This is what John did for the Messiah. He told them that the Messiah was coming, and prepared people to accept him.

Summary

God did not send the Messiah in the way that people usually arrive in the world. God did a miracle so that John could be born to elderly parents and prepare the way for the Messiah. Then God caused the Messiah to be born of a virgin so he would be without sin. The Messiah did not have a human father—he was the Son of God! There has never been anyone like him in the world.

23. The Birth of Jesus

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 1-2; Luke 2

23:01



Mary was engaged to a righteous man named Joseph. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, **he knew it was not his baby**. However, he did not want **to shame Mary**, so he decided to have mercy on her and to **divorce her** quietly. But before he could do that, an angel came to him in a dream and spoke to him.

he knew it was not his baby

Joseph knew that he was not the one who had caused Mary to be pregnant.

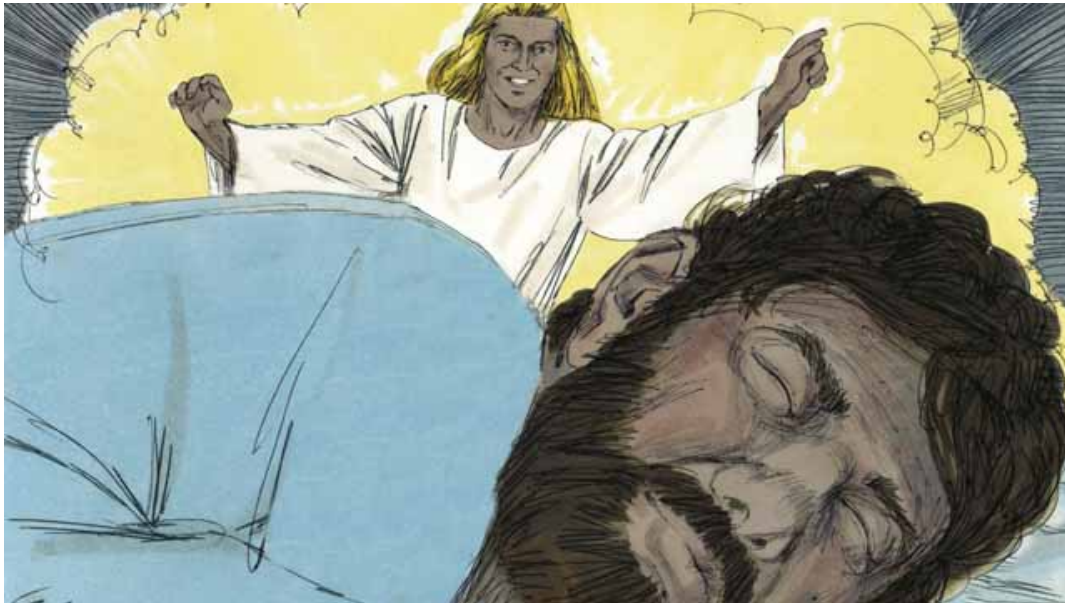
to shame Mary

Joseph was merciful to Mary, even though it seemed like she was an adulteress.

divorce her

In Jewish culture, an engagement was binding. The only way to end the engagement was to divorce the woman.

23:02



The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby that is in her is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

(No study notes for this frame)

23:03



So Joseph married Mary and took her home as his wife, but **he did not sleep with her** until she had given birth.

he did not sleep with her

Joseph kept Mary a virgin until after the baby was born.

23:04



When the time was near for Mary to give birth, she and Joseph made a long journey to the town of Bethlehem. They had to go there because **the Roman officials** wanted **to count all the people** in the land of Israel. They wanted everyone to go to where their ancestors had lived. King David had been born in Bethlehem, and he was the ancestor of both Mary and Joseph.

When the time was near for Mary to give birth

This could mean 'When it was near the end of Mary's pregnancy.'

the Roman officials

Rome had conquered and ruled over Israel at this time.

to count all the people

The Romans probably counted the people so they could tax them.

23:05



Mary and Joseph went to Bethlehem, but there was **no place for them to stay** except for **where some animals were kept**. It was there that Mary gave birth to her baby. She laid him in **a feeding trough** since there was no bed for him. They named him Jesus.

no place for them to stay

Because Bethlehem was so crowded at that time, the usual rooms for guests were already full of people.

where some animals were kept

This was a place for sheltering animals, not a place where people lived.

a feeding trough

This refers to an animal feed box. The box could have been filled with hay to provide a padded surface for the baby to lie on.

23:06



That night, there were some shepherds in a nearby field **guarding their flocks**. Suddenly, a shining angel appeared to them, and **they were terrified**. The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"

guarding their flocks

A **flock** is a group of sheep. The shepherds were caring for their sheep, and protecting them from harm or theft.

they were terrified

The shepherds were very afraid when a supernatural angel appeared.

23:07



“Go search for the baby, and you will find him **wrapped in pieces of cloth** and lying in a feeding trough.” Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels. They were praising God. They said, “May all honor be to God in heaven. May there be peace on earth to the people he favors!”

wrapped in pieces of cloth

The custom of that time was to tightly wrap newborn babies in long strips of cloth.

23:08



Then the angels left. The shepherds left their sheep to look for the baby. They soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them. They were very excited. Then the shepherds returned to the fields where their sheep were. They were praising God for **everything they had heard and seen**.

everything they had heard and seen

This included the glorious angels and their amazing message, as well as seeing the newborn Messiah himself.

23:09



There were some men in **a country far to the east**. **They studied the stars** and were very wise. They saw **an unusual star** in the sky. They said that it meant that a new king of the Jews had been born. So they decided to travel from their country to see **the child**. After a long journey, they came to Bethlehem and found **the house** where Jesus and his parents were staying.

a country far to the east

This country was to the east of Israel. Many scholars think it was near Persia, which is modern-day Iran or Iraq.

They studied the stars

These men may also have had access to the Old Testament prophets' writings that predicted the birth of the Messiah.

an unusual star

The star that they noticed was not a normal star. It was something that appeared at the time of Jesus' birth.

the child

As much as a year or two passed before the men arrived in Bethlehem. Jesus was no longer a baby.

the house

They were no longer staying in the place for animals where he was born.

23:10



When these men saw Jesus with his mother, they **bowed down** and worshiped him. They gave Jesus expensive gifts. Then they returned home.

bowed down

At that time, this was the customary way of showing great respect or reverence.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did Joseph decide to divorce Mary quietly?

Mary was pregnant, and Joseph knew it was not his baby. Therefore, he decided to divorce her. However, he decided to have mercy on her and not to shame her. Therefore, he was going to divorce her quietly (See: [23:01](#)).

2. The angel told Joseph how Mary became pregnant. How did he say this happened?

The angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit placed the baby in her (See: [23:02](#)).

3. What does the name **Jesus** mean?

It means 'Yahweh saves' (See: [23:02](#)).

4. How long did Mary remain a virgin?

Joseph did not sleep with her until after she had given birth (See: [23:03](#)).

5. Why did Joseph and Mary need to travel to Bethlehem?

Their ancestor, King David, was born in Bethlehem. The Roman officials told everyone to travel back to where their ancestors lived. Therefore, Joseph and Mary went to Bethlehem (See: [23:04](#)).

6. Who told the shepherds that the Messiah was born?

An angel told the shepherds that the Messiah was born. Then many other angels also appeared to the shepherds, praising God for what he had done (See: [23:06](#)), (See: [23:07](#)).

7. What did the shepherds do after the angel told them about the Messiah?

The shepherds went to Bethlehem and found the baby in the feeding trough, just as the angel had told them (See: [23:08](#)).

8. Why did men come from the east to see the baby?

They studied the stars and saw an unusual star in the sky. They knew this meant the king of the Jews had been born. Therefore, they came to see him (See: [23:09](#)).

9. What did the wise men do when they saw the child?

They bowed down and worshiped him, and they gave him expensive gifts (See: [23:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Joseph learned that Mary was pregnant, and knew he was not the father of the baby. Why do you think he decided to have mercy on Mary?

Joseph believed that Mary was pregnant because she had been unfaithful to him and had slept with another man. Joseph could have been angry with Mary and wanted to punish her. Joseph was a righteous man, and did not want to marry an adulteress. However, he was a good man, and it appears that he loved Mary. Therefore, he decided to have mercy on her instead of punishing her.

2. How might Mary have felt when people learned that she was pregnant?

Mary must have been very sad when people learned that she was pregnant, because they did not believe that her baby was from the Holy Spirit. Everyone thought she was an adulteress. Even Joseph thought she had sinned, and did not want to marry her. However, Mary knew that she had obeyed God and was still a virgin. She waited patiently until God told Joseph that she was faithful, and that he should marry her.

3. Why did Joseph not sleep with Mary until the baby was born?

God told Joseph that Mary was a virgin and that the baby inside her was from God. Perhaps Joseph was so amazed that the Son of God was in Mary's womb that he kept her a virgin. Or perhaps he wanted to be able to tell everyone that Mary's baby could not possibly be the result of a human father. Therefore, he did not sleep with her until Jesus was born.

4. How was the location of Jesus' birth different than where you would expect the Son of God to be born?

Joseph and Mary were forced to travel far away to another city while she was pregnant. She gave birth to Jesus in a place where animals were kept. They were too poor to be able to find a proper room to stay in. None of their family or friends were with them. Joseph and Mary honored and obeyed God. And Jesus was the Messiah, the Son of God. However, they still faced many difficult situations. But God took care of them during that time.

5. What did God do to encourage Joseph and Mary after Jesus was born?

God sent the shepherds to tell Joseph and Mary about the angels that visited them. He also sent the wise men who brought expensive gifts and worshiped Jesus.

Summary

Life was very difficult for Mary when she became pregnant. Her friends and family, and even her fiancée, did not believe that the baby was from God. However, God intervened to tell Joseph to marry her. Joseph obeyed and kept her a virgin until Jesus was born. Joseph and Mary were all alone when Jesus was born. But God sent his angels and the wise men to celebrate his birth!

24. John Baptizes Jesus

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 3; Mark 1; Luke 3; John 1:15-37

24:01



John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate **wild honey** and **locusts**, and wore **clothes made from camel hair**.

wild honey

This honey was the natural product of bees in the wilderness; it was not cultivated by people.

locusts

These were large, hopping insects with wings, like very large grasshoppers. Some people who live in the desert eat them.

clothes made from camel hair

The hair of a camel is very coarse and strong. Clothes made of camel hair would not quickly wear out in the wilderness as other clothes would.

24:02



Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!**"

Repent

To repent means to begin to think and act differently about something. In this case, it means to decide to change your behavior because it was wrong to sin.

the kingdom of God is near

That means the kingdom of God is ready to appear.

24:03



When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them. Many religious leaders also came to see John, but they **did not repent** or **confess their sins**.

did not repent

That is, they did not turn away from their sins.

confess their sins

To confess is to acknowledge that something is true. These leaders did not want to acknowledge that they had sinned.

24:04



John said to the religious leaders, **“You poisonous snakes! Repent and change your behavior. God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire.”** John fulfilled what the prophets had said, **“See, I will soon send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”**

You poisonous snakes

John was calling the religious leaders poisonous snakes because they were dangerous and deceptive.

every tree that does not bear good fruit

John is not really talking about trees. This is an expression that compares good fruit to good actions and attitudes that come from God.

God will cut down every tree that does not bear good fruit, and he will throw them into the fire

These phrases mean God will judge them and punish them.

See

This word means that what follows is very important, and the one who hears should pay close attention to it.

ahead of you

In this phrase, the word **you** refers to the Messiah.

prepare your way

The prophets said that God’s messenger will prepare the people to listen to the Messiah.

24:05

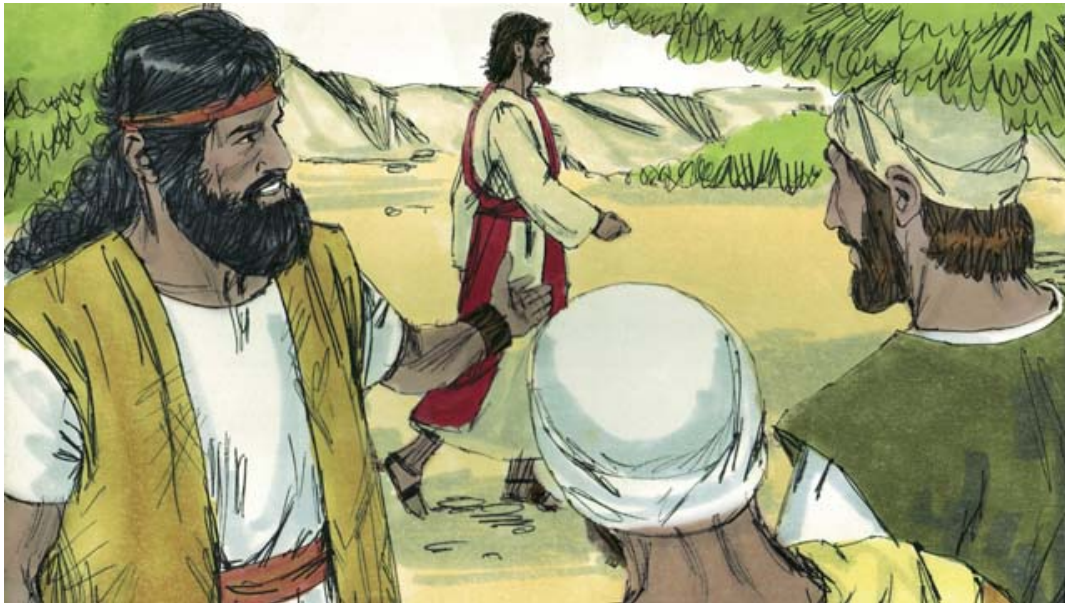


Some religious leaders asked John if he was the Messiah. John replied, "I am not the Messiah, but he is coming after me. He is so great that I am **not even worthy to untie his sandals.**"

not even worthy to untie his sandals

John meant that, compared to the Messiah, John was not important enough to do even the most menial task for him. Untying sandals was a very low job, something a slave would do.

24:06



The next day, Jesus came for John to baptize him. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is **the Lamb of God** who **will take away** the sin of the world."

the Lamb of God

Jesus was the perfect sacrifice for sin that God promised to provide. He fulfilled the image that was presented by the sacrifice of lambs in the Old Testament.

will take away

The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

24:07



John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead." But Jesus said, "You should baptize me, because it is the right thing to do." So John baptized him even though Jesus had never sinned. (No study notes for this frame)

24:08



When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him. At the same time, God spoke from heaven. He said, "**This is my Son.** I love him, and I am very pleased with him."

This is my Son

God the Father called Jesus **my Son**.

24:09



God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and stay on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God." There is only one God. But when John baptized Jesus, he heard God the Father speak, saw God the Son, who is Jesus, and he saw the Holy Spirit.

God had told John

God had told John this before Jesus came to be baptized.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Where did John live?

He lived in the wilderness, apart from other people (See: [24:01](#)).

2. What was the message that John preached to the people?

John told the people to repent, for the kingdom of God is near (See: [24:02](#)).

3. How did people respond when they heard John's message?

Some of the people repented from their sins and John baptized them. However, many of the religious leaders who came to John did not repent (See: [24:03](#)).

4. To what did John compare the religious leaders who did not repent?

He compared them to poisonous snakes (See: [24:04](#)).

5. How did John respond when the religious leaders asked him if he was the Messiah?

John told them that he was not the Messiah, but that the Messiah was coming after him (See: [24:05](#)).

6. What was the title that John called Jesus when Jesus came to John?

John called Jesus the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world (See: [24:06](#)).

7. Why did John not want to baptize Jesus?

John said he was not worthy to baptize Jesus, but that Jesus should baptize John instead (See: [24:07](#)).

8. What came down and landed on Jesus after John baptized him?

After John baptized Jesus, the Spirit of God came down in the form of a dove and rested on Jesus (See: [24:08](#)).

9. What did God say about Jesus when he spoke from heaven?

God said that Jesus was his Son, and that he was very pleased with Jesus (See: [24:08](#)).

10. What had God told John about the person on whom the Holy Spirit would stay?

God told John that the person on whom the Holy Spirit would stay would be the Son of God (See: [24:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think John preached in the wilderness instead of in a city?

Perhaps John wanted to preach God's message to people who wanted to listen. Few people lived in the wilderness, so people had to make an effort to go there in order to hear John. Most of the people who came to John were serious about listening to his message.

2. John told people to repent, for the kingdom of God was near. Why was his message so simple?

John's message was indeed very simple. However, he told the people everything they needed to know at that time. That is, the Messiah was coming soon to establish his kingdom. People had to repent of their sins if they wanted to participate in that kingdom.

Why do you think the religious rulers came to John?

3.

The religious rulers did not come to John to repent of their sins. Perhaps they were curious about why other people were coming to see him. Or perhaps they were jealous that people were coming to John instead of coming to them. We know John did not think the leaders came for good reasons, because he called them poisonous snakes. Even today, some people come to hear preaching for evil reasons.

4. How did John show that he was a humble man?

John openly said that he was not the Messiah, and that he was not worthy to untie the sandals of the Messiah. He also told Jesus that he was not worthy to baptize him. John is an example for us. He was a great prophet, but he knew the Messiah was greater than he was.

5. How can Jesus be both the Messiah and the Lamb of God?

The Messiah is the only person who did not sin. Therefore, he was the only one who could be a perfect sacrifice to God. In that way, he was punished for the sins of everyone in the world who believes in him.

6. Why did the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit appear together when Jesus was baptized?

By appearing together, they demonstrated that the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit are all working together to save people from their sins, and to enable them to enter into the kingdom of God. When Jesus was baptized, he was doing what God the Father wanted him to do. The Holy Spirit guided Jesus to prepare him to do the work of the Messiah and to become the Lamb of God.

Summary

John told people to repent and prepare for the kingdom of God. Many people came to him and repented that they had sinned. Jesus also came so John could baptize him, even though Jesus never sinned. God the Father spoke from heaven to say that Jesus, his Son, pleased him. And the Holy Spirit came in the form of a dove to show that he was with Jesus.

25. Satan Tempts Jesus

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13

25:01



Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness. Jesus was there for 40 days and 40 nights. **During that time he fasted**, and Satan came to Jesus and **tempted him to sin**.

During that time he fasted

Most scholars believe Jesus fasted during the entire 40 days and 40 nights.

tempted him to sin

Satan tried to convince Jesus to sin.

25:02



First, Satan said to Jesus, "If you are the Son of God, **turn these rocks into bread** so you can eat!"

turn these rocks into bread

Satan was reminding Jesus that, as the Son of God, Jesus had the power to supernaturally change the rocks into bread.

25:03



But Jesus said to Satan, **"It is written in God's word, 'People do not only need bread in order to live, but they need everything that God tells them!'"**

It is written in God's word

Jesus speaks the words that are written in Deuteronomy 8:3.

People do not only need bread in order to live

Jesus knew that God had led him into the wilderness to fast. Therefore it would be wrong for Jesus to change the rocks into bread for him to eat.

they need everything that God tells them

Jesus knew that hearing from God and obeying him was more important than eating food. By quoting this verse, Jesus showed that he was willing to follow it.

25:04



Then Satan took Jesus to **the highest point on the Temple**. He said to him, "If you are the Son of God, jump off to the ground, because **it is written**, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"

the highest point on the Temple

This part of the Temple in Jerusalem would have been about 150 meters from the ground.

it is written

Satan spoke words from Psalm 91:11-12.

25:05

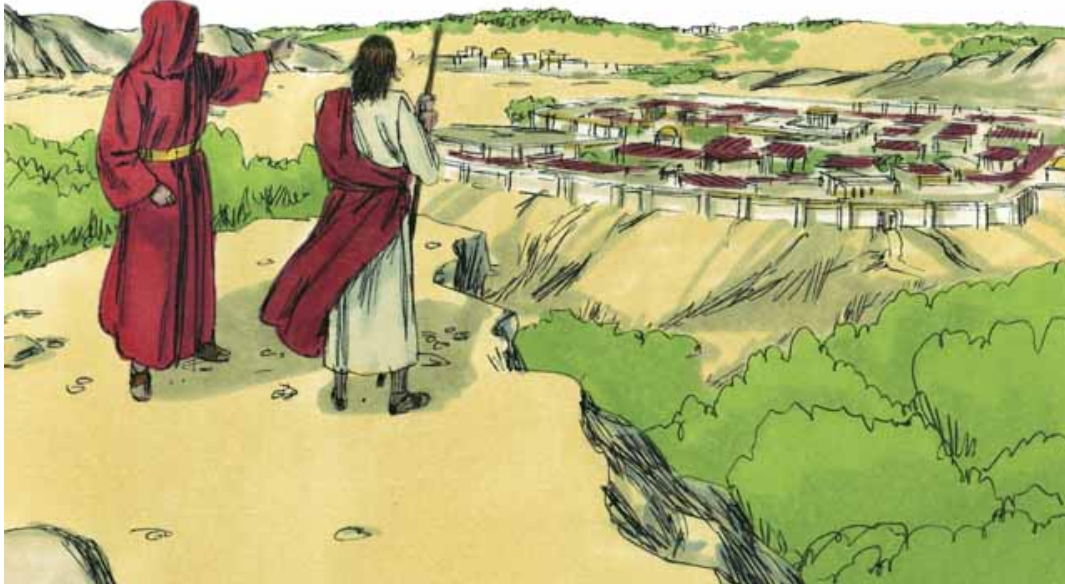


But Jesus did not do what Satan asked him to do. Instead, he said, "God tells everyone, '**Do not test the Lord your God.**'"

Do not test the Lord your God

Jesus speaks the words that are written in Deuteronomy 6:16. Jesus wanted to say that it would be wrong to challenge God to take care of him while doing something that God did not want him to do.

25:06



Then Satan showed Jesus **all the kingdoms of the world**. He showed him how powerful they were, and how wealthy they were. He said to Jesus, "**I will give you all this** if you bow down and worship me."

all the kingdoms of the world

This refers to all the greatest cities, countries, and other territories of the world.

I will give you all this

It appears that Satan is able to give things of this world to people who obey him.

25:07

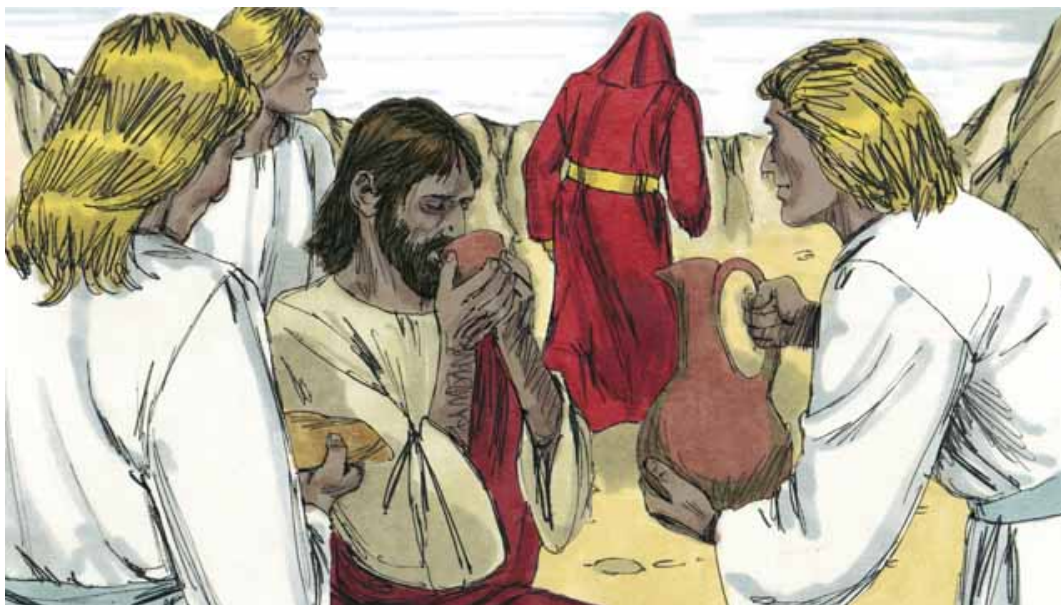


Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, **'Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God.'**"

Worship only the Lord your God. Honor only him as God

Jesus speaks the words that are written in Deuteronomy 6:16. We must worship and honor only the Lord God.

25:08



Jesus **did not give in to** Satan's temptations, so Satan left him. Then angels came and took care of Jesus.

did not give in to

Jesus did not do the things that Satan was tempting him to do. He did not sin.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did Jesus go out into the wilderness?

The Holy Spirit led him into the wilderness (See: [25:01](#)).

2. What did Jesus do in the wilderness before Satan came to tempt him?

Jesus had fasted for 40 days and 40 nights before Satan came to tempt him (See: [25:01](#)).

3. What did Satan tell Jesus to do the first time he tempted him?

Satan told Jesus to turn the rocks into bread so he could eat. (See: [25:02](#)).

4. What did Jesus say was more important than eating bread?

Jesus said it was more important to obey God than to eat bread (See: [25:03](#)).

5. Why did Satan say that Jesus would not be hurt if he jumped off the top of the Temple?

Satan said the angels of God would catch Jesus so that he would not hit the ground (See: [25:04](#)).

6. Why did Jesus refuse to jump off the top of the Temple?

Jesus did not want to test God, and God had not told him to jump off the Temple (See: [25:05](#)).

7. What was the only thing Satan told Jesus to do in order to receive all the kingdoms of the world?

Satan told Jesus he would give him all the kingdoms of the world if he would bow down and worship Satan (See: [25:06](#)).

8. Did Jesus do any of the sinful things that Satan tempted him to do?

No, Jesus refused to do any of the things that Satan told him to do (See: [25:08](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Satan tempted Jesus to turn a stone into bread?

Satan knew that Jesus was very hungry after he had fasted for 40 days and nights. Satan often uses a person's weakness when he tries to tempt them.

2. Why do you think the Holy Spirit led Jesus into the wilderness to fast for 40 days?

God wanted to prove that Jesus would not sin. To show this, he caused Jesus to be weak and hungry. Yet, even though Jesus was weak, he did not sin. He did not do what Satan told him to do.

3. Why did Satan quote from the scripture when he told Jesus to jump off the top of the Temple?

Satan knows the scripture and can quote it. However, he does not use the scripture in the correct way. He tries to give the scripture meanings that God did not intend for it to have. Satan only uses the scripture to deceive people.

4. Did Satan really have the authority to offer all the kingdoms of the world to Jesus?

Jesus did not contradict Satan when. There is no reason to believe that Satan cannot give people wealth and power in this world.

5. How was Satan trying to deceive Jesus by offering him all the kingdoms of the world?

The things in this world will end. However, only God can give wealth and power that lasts forever in heaven. Jesus correctly chose to wait until God gave him all the kingdoms of the world so that he could rule forever in heaven.

6. Why was it impossible for Jesus to worship Satan even for a short time in order to receive the kingdoms of this world from Satan?

God demands that people serve him alone. It is never right to serve Satan or anyone else—not even for a short time. We are to worship God only. We sin if we worship anyone or anything other than God.

Summary

Jesus could not die for the sins of other people if he himself were a sinner. Therefore, the Holy Spirit led Jesus into the wilderness so that Satan could tempt him. God wanted to prove to Satan and everyone else that Jesus never sinned, even though Satan personally tried to make him sin. Jesus was weak, tired, and hungry. Even so, he never sinned. He refused to do what Satan told him to do. He understood when Satan used scripture to try to trick him into testing God. And Jesus chose not to accept all the wealth and power in the world from Satan. Instead, he faithfully waited until God would make him ruler over the world. This would not happen until after he had suffered for our sins.

26. Jesus Starts His Ministry

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 4:12-25; Mark 1-3; Luke 4

26:01



After Jesus refused Satan's temptations, he returned to the region of Galilee. This is where he lived. The Holy Spirit was giving him much power, and Jesus went from place to place and taught people. Everyone said good things about him.

After Jesus refused Satan's temptations

Jesus did not do the wrong things Satan tried to get him to do, so Jesus defeated him.

26:02



Jesus went to the town of Nazareth. This is **the village where he had lived when he was a child**. On the Sabbath, he went to **the place of worship**. The leaders handed him **a scroll with the messages of the prophet Isaiah**. They wanted him to read from it. So Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.

the village where he had lived when he was a child

Jesus was born in Bethlehem, but Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth. They moved back to Nazareth when Jesus was a young boy and lived there after that.

the place of worship

This was not the main Temple in Jerusalem where the Jews offered sacrifices. There were smaller buildings in many towns where the Jews worshiped and prayed together every week. This was one of those places.

a scroll

A scroll was a long sheet of paper or leather that was rolled up and had writing on it.

a scroll with the messages of the prophet Isaiah

This was a copy of the scroll that Isaiah had written hundreds of years before.

26:03



Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can **proclaim good news to the poor**. He has sent me **to set prisoners free**, to make the blind people see again, and to free those whom others are oppressing. This is the time when the Lord will be merciful to us and help us."

proclaim good news to the poor

This means to tell poor and needy people the good message that God will help them.

to set prisoners free

This means to tell people who are wrongfully in prison that they will be released.

26:04



Then Jesus sat down. Everybody was watching him closely. They knew the passage of scripture that he had just read was about the Messiah. Jesus said, "**The things I just read to you, they are happening right now.**" All the people were amazed. "**Isn't this the son of Joseph?**" they said.

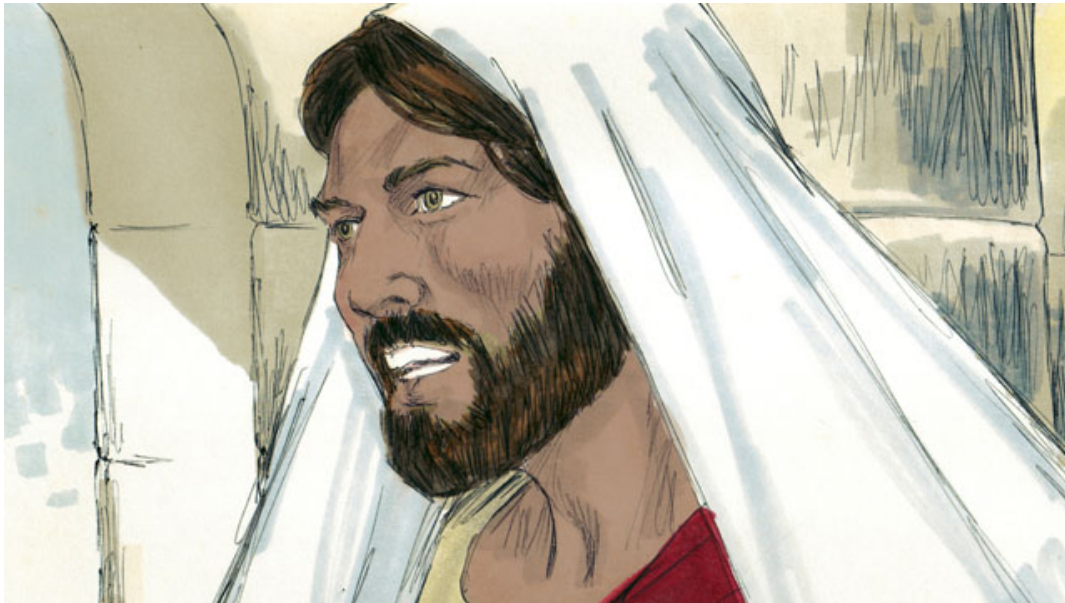
The things I just read to you, they are happening right now

Jesus wanted to say that God was causing this passage about the Messiah to happen at that time. This meant that Jesus was the Messiah.

Isn't this the son of Joseph?

The people were not asking if he was Joseph's son or not. They were wondering how he could be the Messiah since they thought he was only the son of an ordinary man.

26:05



Then Jesus said, "It is true that **people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in**. During the time of the prophet Elijah, there were many widows in Israel. But when it did not rain for three and a half years, God did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel. Instead, **he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation.**"

people never accept a prophet in the town he grew up in

Jesus was perhaps speaking a Jewish proverb. This proverb meant that people do not recognize the authority of a prophet who has grown up among them. Since Jesus grew up in Nazareth, the people there would not believe he was the Messiah.

he sent Elijah to a widow in a different nation

Jesus is referring to a story in the Old Testament about the prophet Elijah. God provided food for that widow during a famine so she could take care of Elijah.

26:06



Jesus continued, saying, "And during the time of the prophet **Elisha**, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not heal any of them. **He only healed the skin disease of Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies." But the people who were listening to Jesus were Jews. So when they heard him say this, **they were furious at him**.

Elisha

Elisha was God's prophet who came after Elijah. Like Elijah, Elisha confronted Israelite kings who were sinning against God and he did miracles that God gave him power to do.

He only healed the skin disease of Naaman

Jesus is again referring to a story in the Old Testament. God healed Naaman because he obeyed what Elisha told him to do.

they were furious at him

The Jews did not want to hear that God had blessed any people besides themselves, so they were very angry at what Jesus said.

26:07



The people of Nazareth seized Jesus and dragged him out of the place of worship. They took him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him. But **Jesus walked through the crowd** and left the town of Nazareth.

Jesus walked through the crowd

The crowd was trying to seize and kill Jesus. We do not know how Jesus was able to walk through the middle of them. Perhaps God confused them or prevented them from seeing Jesus. As a result, they were not able to do to Jesus what they had planned to do.

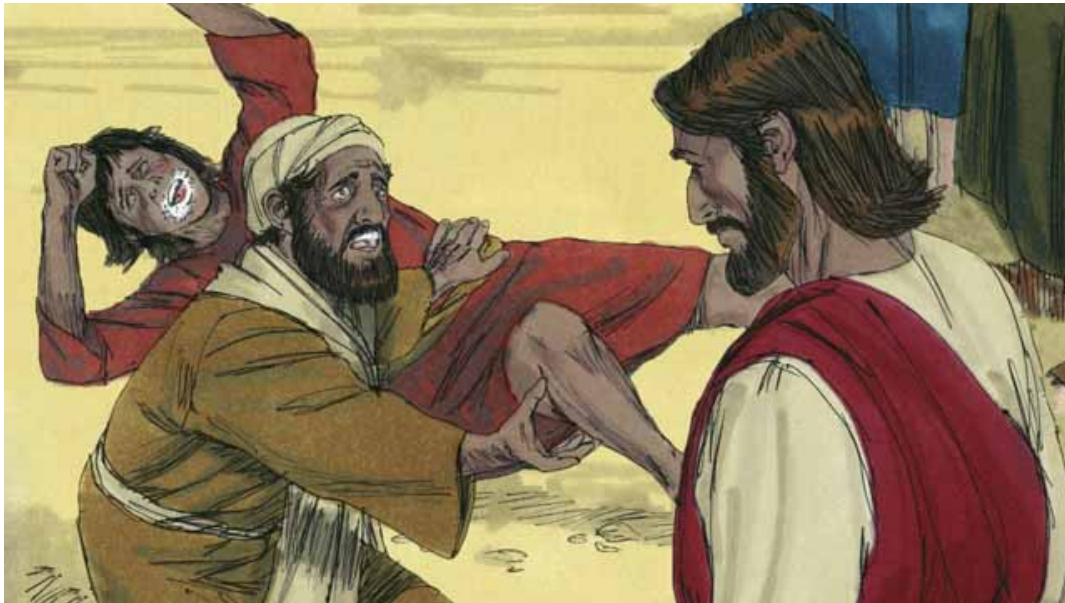
26:08



Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or disabled. There were some who were blind, others who were crippled, deaf, or mute, and Jesus healed them.

(No study notes for this frame)

26:09



Also, many people **who had demons in them** were brought to Jesus. Jesus commanded the demons to come out of them, so the demons came out. The demons often shouted, "**You are the Son of God!**" The crowds of people were amazed, and they praised God.

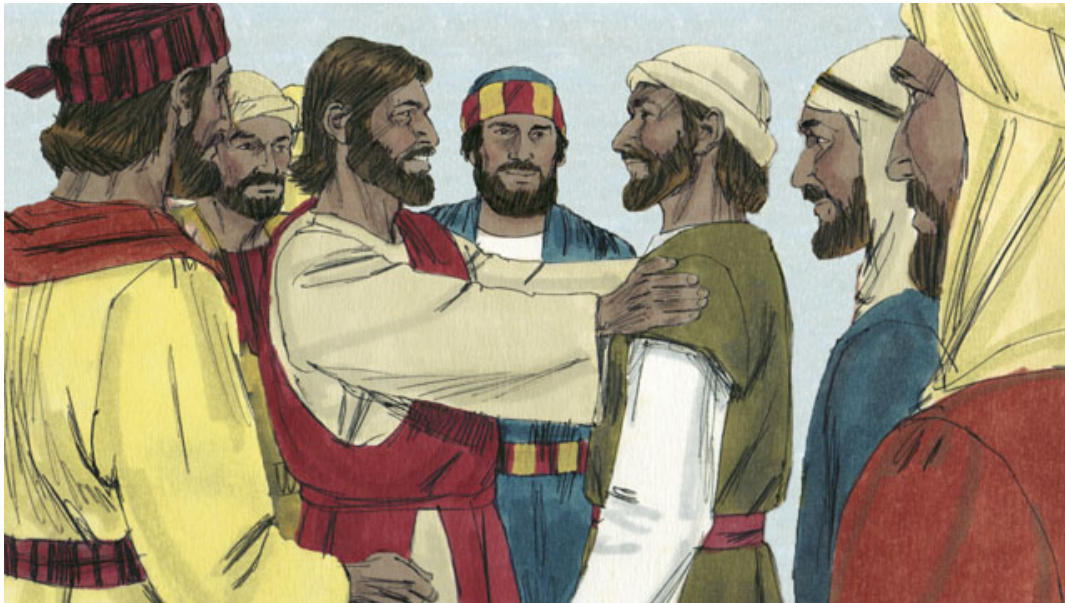
who had demons in them

These people were controlled by evil spirits.

You are the Son of God!

Even the demons knew that Jesus was the Son of God.

26:10



Then Jesus chose 12 men from among his disciples to be his special representatives. He called them “**apostles.**” These apostles traveled with Jesus and learned from him.

apostles

Jesus chose these 12 men from among his many disciples to be apostles. They spent more time with Jesus than his other disciples. And he later gave the apostles more authority than he gave his other disciples.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did Jesus receive power to do the things that he did?

The Holy Spirit was giving him power (See: [26:01](#)).

2. Why did the people of Nazareth know Jesus well?

Jesus lived in Nazareth when he was a child (See: [26:02](#)).

3. Who wrote the scroll that the leaders asked Jesus to read?

The leaders asked Jesus to read the scroll that the prophet Isaiah wrote (See: [26:02](#)).

4. Who was the scripture about that Jesus read?

The scripture that Jesus read was about the Messiah (See: [26:04](#)).

5. Why were the people amazed?

Jesus said the things he had read were happening right then. He wanted to say that the Messiah was doing those things right then. This amazed the people (See: [26:04](#)).

6. Who did the prophet Elijah go to help?

Elijah went to help a widow from another nation (See: [26:05](#)).

7. Who did the prophet Elisha heal?

Elisha healed a commander of Israel's enemies (See: [26:06](#)).

8. Why did the people of Nazareth take Jesus out of the place of worship?

The people wanted to throw Jesus off a cliff to kill him because he said that the prophets helped Israel's enemies (See: [26:07](#)).

9. What did Jesus do when the people in Galilee brought many sick people and people with demons to him?

Jesus healed them all (See: [26:08](#), [26:09](#)).

10. What did Jesus call the 12 men whom he called to travel with him and learn from him?

Jesus called these 12 men his apostles (See: [26:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Jesus grew up in Nazareth. Did that influence how the people responded to him when he claimed to be the Messiah?

Because the people of Nazareth knew Jesus when he was a little boy, they continued to think of him as an unimportant person. Therefore, it was hard for them to believe that he was the Messiah. For this reason, Jesus said that people do not accept a prophet in the town where he grew up. Have you seen this happen?

2. Jesus did not directly tell the people of Nazareth that he was the Messiah. Instead, he read the scripture and said it was happening right then. Why do you think Jesus revealed himself in this way?

Jesus knew that the people of Nazareth did not want to accept that he was the Messiah. Therefore, instead of stating that as a fact, he read the scripture and said that it was talking about him. If the people of Nazareth wanted to know who he was, they could see that he was doing all the things that the scripture said the Messiah would do. If they were willing to believe in him, they could figure out for themselves from the scripture that he was the Messiah.

3. Why were the Jews so angry when Jesus told them what Elijah and Elisha did?

The Jews believed that God loved only Jews, and would not help people from other nations. They were wrong. Jesus spoke about Elijah and Elisha to show that God also loved people of other nations. God send the prophets to help the people who would believe in him. But he did not send them to help the Jews when the Jews did not serve him.

4. Why did Jesus choose 12 men to be his apostles?

Jesus knew that he would die for our sins. After he would die, someone would have to be able to tell everyone what Jesus had done for us. Therefore, Jesus chose 12 men to prepare them to teach about him. They traveled with him and he taught them so they would be ready to be witnesses for him when he went back to heaven.

Summary

Jesus went to the city of Nazareth in Galilee, the place where he grew up. The people there came together every week to worship God. However, they were not ready to believe that Jesus came from God. When he showed them in the scriptures that he was doing the work of the Messiah, they did not want to believe him. And when Jesus told them that God would accept people from other nations who believed in him, they were so angry that they tried to kill Jesus. Therefore, he left them and went away to preach to other people in Galilee. Many saw the works he did and believed in him. From those who believed, Jesus then chose 12 men to be with him as his apostles. They traveled with him, and he began to teach them so they could tell people about him.

27. The Story of the Good Samaritan

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Luke 10:25-37

27:01



One day, **an expert in the Jewish law** came to Jesus. He wanted to show everyone that Jesus was teaching wrongly. So he said, "Teacher, what must I do **to inherit eternal life**?" Jesus answered, "**What is written in God's law?**"

an expert in the Jewish law

This man studied and taught the laws God had given the Israelites, as well as other Jewish laws.

to inherit eternal life

The law expert was asking how he could be worthy to receive eternal life as an inheritance from God the Father.

eternal life

This refers to life forever with God after the mortal body dies.

What is written in God's law?

Jesus asked this question because he wanted the man to think about what God's law really teaches.

27:02



The man said, "It says, 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And love your neighbor as yourself.'" Jesus answered, "You are correct! If you do this, you will have eternal life."

Love the Lord your God

Jesus is quoting what God's law commands people to do in Deuteronomy 6:5.

with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind

This could mean 'with your whole self' or 'with every part of yourself.'

heart

The heart refers to the part of a person that has desires and emotions.

soul

The soul refers to the nonphysical, spiritual part of a person.

strength

Here **strength** refers to the physical body and all of its abilities.

mind

Here **mind** refers to the part of a person that thinks, plans, and has ideas.

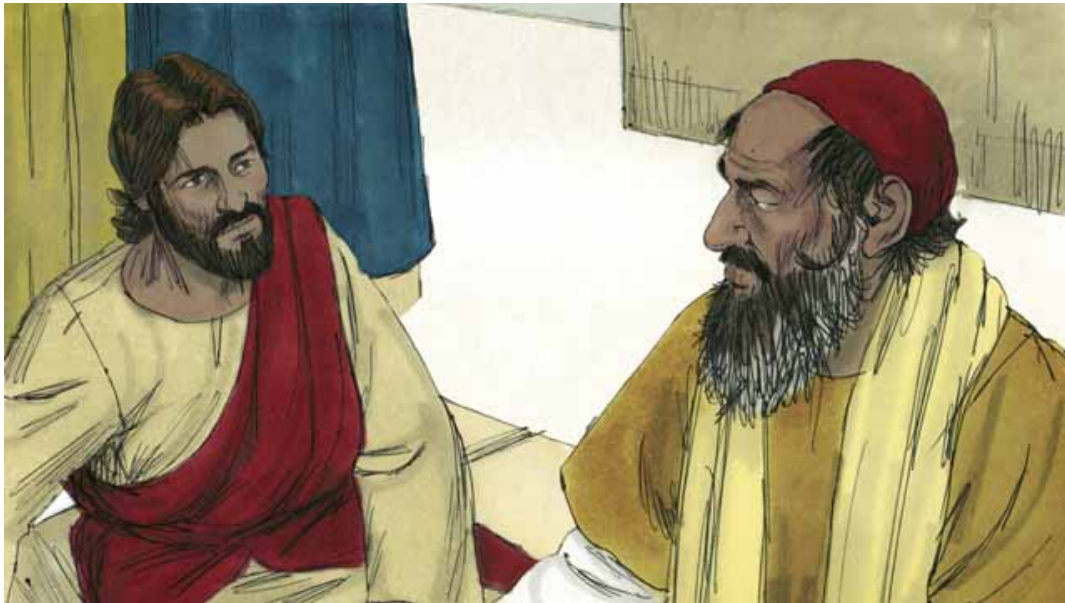
neighbor

Although the word **neighbor** normally refers to a person who lives near us, the Jews applied the term to everyone except close relatives, foreigners, and enemies.

love your neighbor as yourself

This could mean 'love your neighbor to the same extent that you love yourself.'

27:03



But the law expert wanted to show the people that his way of living was correct. So he asked Jesus, "Well then, **who is my neighbor?**"

who is my neighbor?

The law expert knew that he did not love everyone, and was asking which people he needed to love.

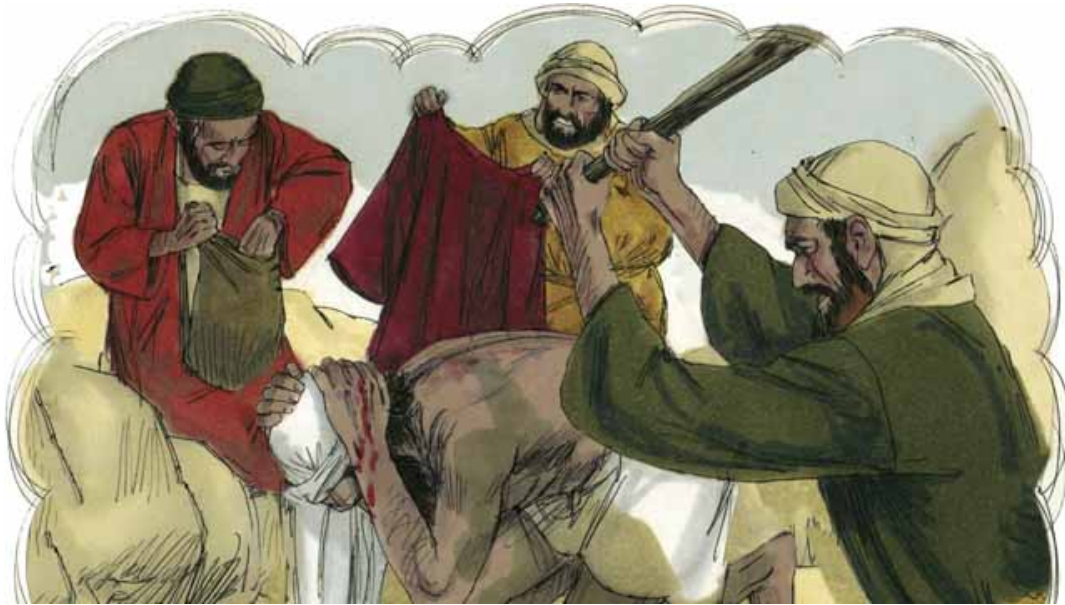
27:04



Jesus answered the law expert by telling a story. "There was a Jewish man who was traveling along the road from Jerusalem to Jericho."

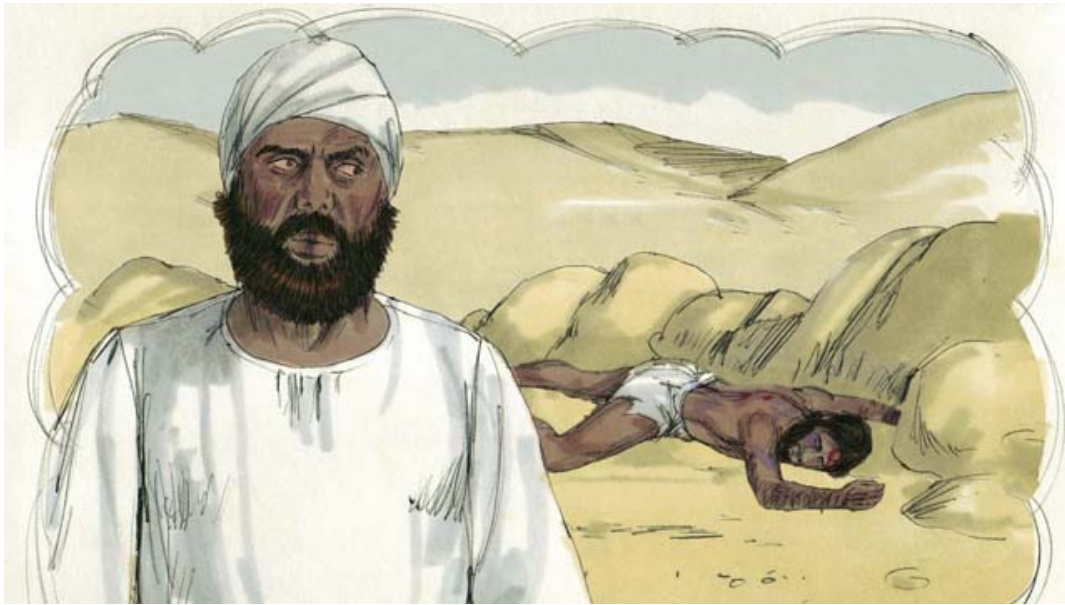
(No study notes for this frame)

27:05



"But some robbers saw him and attacked him. They took everything he had and beat him until he was almost dead. Then they went away."
(No study notes for this frame)

27:06



“Soon after that, a Jewish priest **happened to walk down** that same road. This priest saw that man lying in the road. When he saw him, he moved to the other side of the road and kept on going. He completely **ignored that man.**”

happened to walk down

The priest was not just walking on the road, but was traveling to get to another city.

ignored that man

The priest did not help that man or show any concern for him.

27:07



“Not long after that, a Levite came down the road. (**Levites were a tribe of Jews** who helped the priests at the Temple.) The Levite also crossed over to the other side of the road. He also **ignored** that man.”

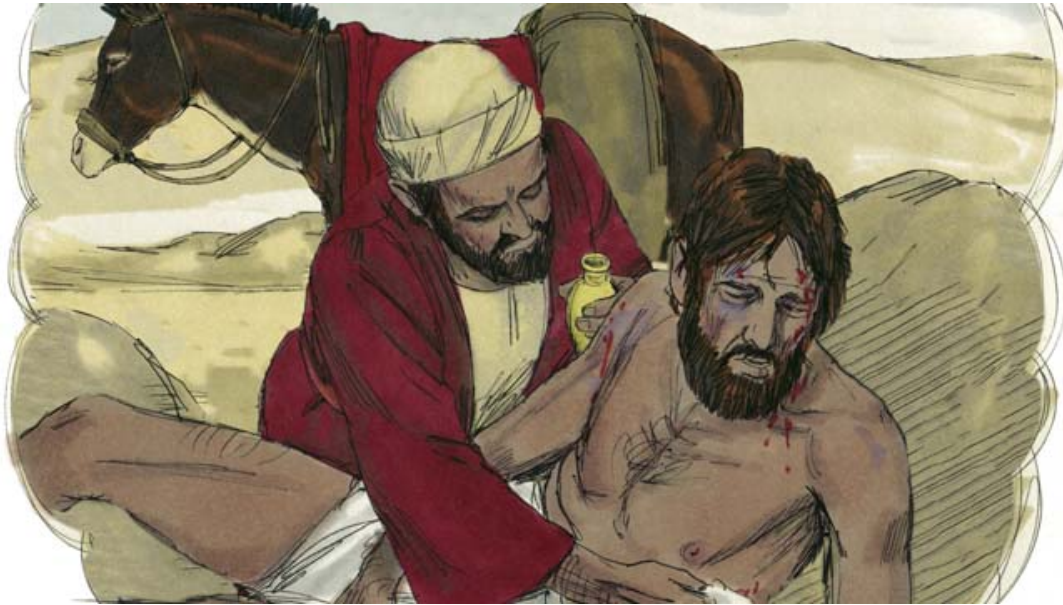
Levites were a tribe of Jews

The Levites were from the Israelite tribe of Levi.

ignored

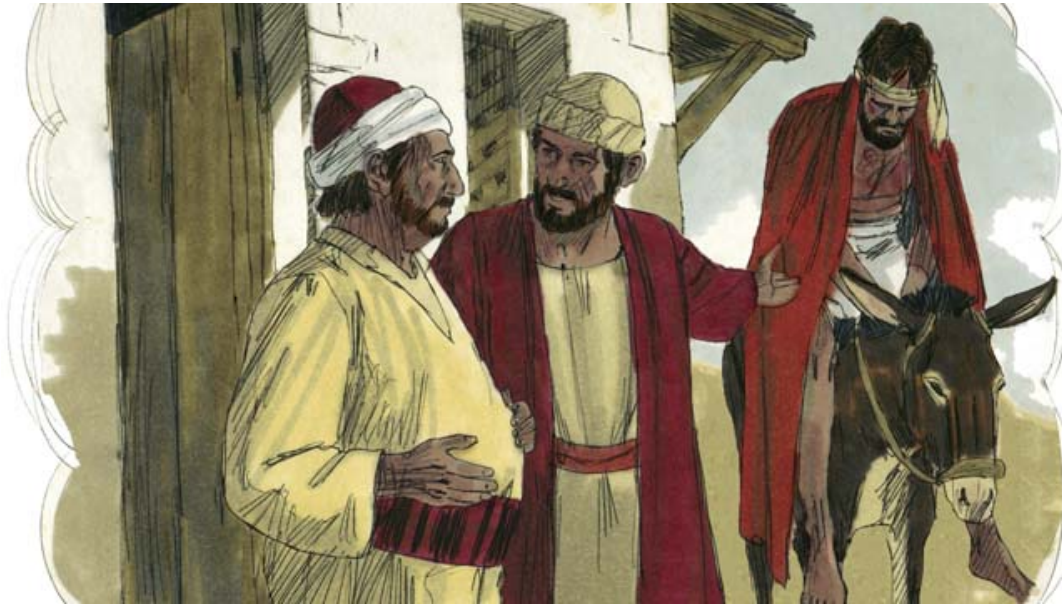
This means he did not help the man.

27:08



"The next person to walk down that road was a man from Samaria. (Samaritans and Jews hated each other.) The Samaritan saw the man in the road. He saw he was Jewish, but he still had very strong compassion for him. So he went to him and bandaged his wounds."
(No study notes for this frame)

27:09

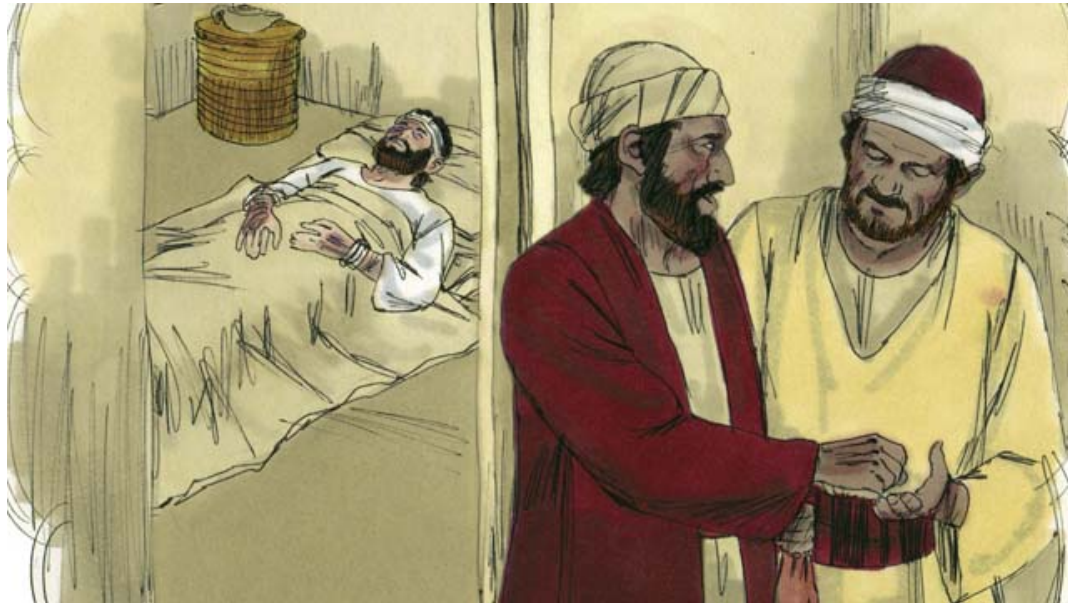


“Then the Samaritan lifted the man onto his own donkey. He took him to **an inn by the road**. There he continued to take care of him.”

an inn by the road

This was a place where travelers could get food and stay overnight.

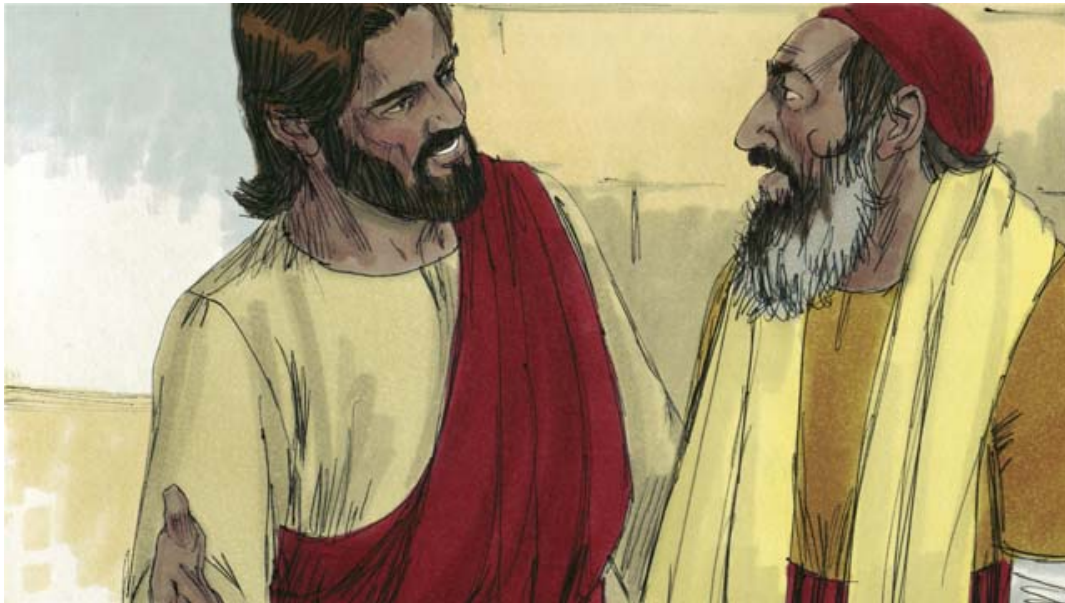
27:10



"The next day, the Samaritan needed to continue his journey. He gave some money to the person in charge of the inn. He said to him, 'Take care of this man. If you spend any more money than this, I will repay those expenses when I return.'"

(No study notes for this frame)

27:11



Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of **the three men** was a **neighbor** to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was merciful to him." Jesus told him, "You go and **do the same.**"

the three men

The three men were the priest, the Levite, and the Samaritan.

neighbor

Jesus is using the word **neighbor** in a broader sense than in [27:02](#). **Neighbor** here refers to anyone that we meet who needs our help.

do the same

This could mean 'love others, even your enemies.'

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Did the expert in the Jewish law really want to know how to have eternal life?

No, he only wanted to show that Jesus was teaching wrongly (See: [27:01](#)).

2. Where did Jesus tell the man to find the answer to his question?

Jesus asked the man to see what was written in God's law (See: [27:01](#)).

3. What did Jesus say would happen to the man if he did what God's law told him to do?

Jesus said the man would have eternal life if he did what God's law told him to do (See: [27:02](#)).

4. Why did the man ask Jesus who his neighbor was?

The man wanted to show people that he was living correctly (See: [27:03](#)).

5. Why did Jesus tell a story to the man?

Jesus told the man a story in order to answer his question about who was his neighbor (See: [27:04](#)).

6. What did the priest and the Levite do when they saw the injured man?

The priest and the Levite both ignored the injured man and did not help him (See: [27:06](#), [27:07](#)).

7. Why was it surprising that the Samaritan helped the injured Jewish man?

The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other (See: [27:08](#)).

8. Which of the men was merciful to the injured man?

The Samaritan was the only one who was merciful to the injured man (See: [27:11](#)).

9. What did Jesus tell the expert in the Jewish law to do?

Jesus told the expert in the Jewish law to be merciful to people in need, just as the Samaritan in the story did to the injured Jewish man (See: [27:11](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why was it surprising that Jesus asked the expert in the Jewish law about what was written in God's law?

The man knew far more about the Jewish law than any other person in Israel. He continually studied it and taught it to others. However, he did not really understand what the law meant. Therefore, Jesus started questioning him about the law so that he could show the man that he did not really know what God's law taught.

2. Why do you think the man asked Jesus who his neighbor was?

The man knew God's law said to love his neighbor as himself. But he also knew that he did not love other people as he should. Therefore, he asked about his neighbor because he was hoping that he only needed to love a few specific people in order to obey the law.

3. Why might Jesus have chosen to talk to this man about a priest and a Levite?

The Jews considered the priests and Levites to be the most spiritual people in Israel. They also considered the experts in the law to be very much like the priests and the Levites. Because the experts studied and taught God's law, people assumed they knew more about God than other people did.

4. Why might the expert in the Jewish law have been offended when Jesus compared the actions of the priest and the Levite to the actions of the Samaritan?

The expert in the Jewish law considered the priests and the Levites to be good people, but he hated the Samaritan. He thought all Samaritans were sinners. However, in the story that Jesus told him, the Samaritan was the only person who acted kindly to the injured Jewish man.

5. How much did the Samaritan show mercy to the injured man?

The Samaritan did not merely help the injured man a little bit. Instead, he did more for the injured man than anyone would expect him to do. He bandaged him, took him to the inn, and paid all of the expenses for the man.

6. What does the story tell us about loving our neighbor?

The Samaritan saw another person who had a serious need. Although the man was a stranger from a people that the Samaritans hated, he felt compassion for him. He took care of the man, doing more than was necessary or expected to help him. He treated the injured man as he would like to be treated himself if he was in need. This is what it means to be a neighbor to someone.

Summary

The expert in the law who came to Jesus did not believe in Jesus, and he did not really understand God's law. Instead, he wanted to embarrass Jesus. Jesus knew this, and so he questioned the man about the law. He then told a story that showed how a follower of God should treat other people. God gives eternal life to people who believe in him and obey him, rather than to people who hold powerful religious positions. When the simple Samaritan was merciful to the injured man, he acted more like God than do the most religious people in Israel.

28. The Rich Young Ruler

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 19:16-30; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:18-30

28:01



One day, **a rich young ruler** came up to Jesus and asked him, “**Good teacher**, what must I do **to have eternal life?**” Jesus said to him, “**Why do you call me ‘good’?** There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

a rich young ruler

This man was already a rich and powerful political official, even though he was still young.

Good teacher

He meant to say that Jesus was a righteous teacher. He was not saying that Jesus was simply a skilled teacher.

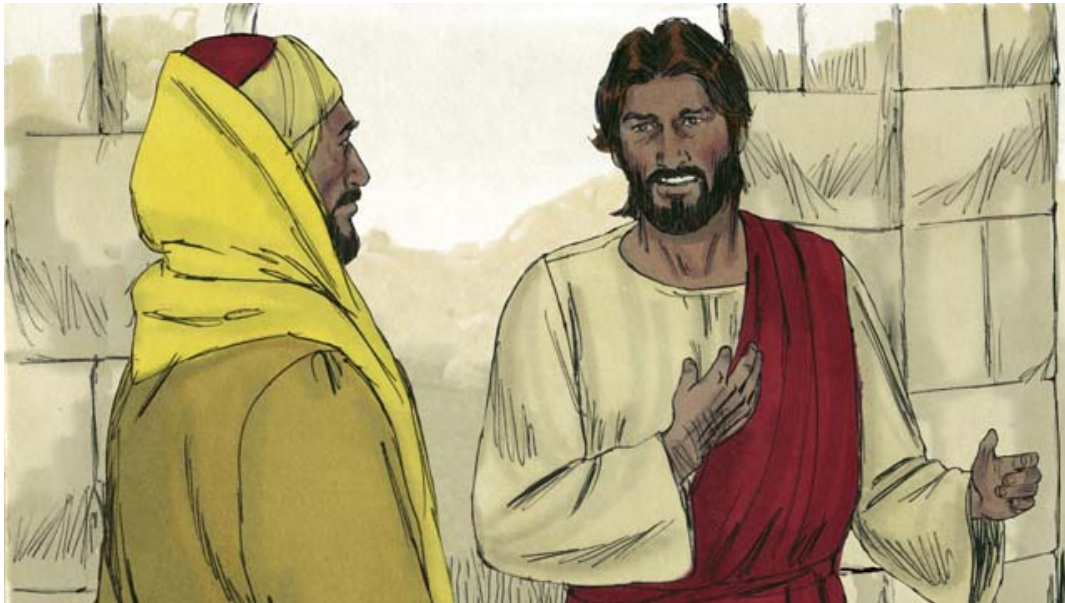
to have eternal life

This could mean ‘to live with God forever.’

Why do you call me ‘good’?

Jesus is not denying that he is good. Rather, he is asking if the ruler understands that Jesus is God.

28:02

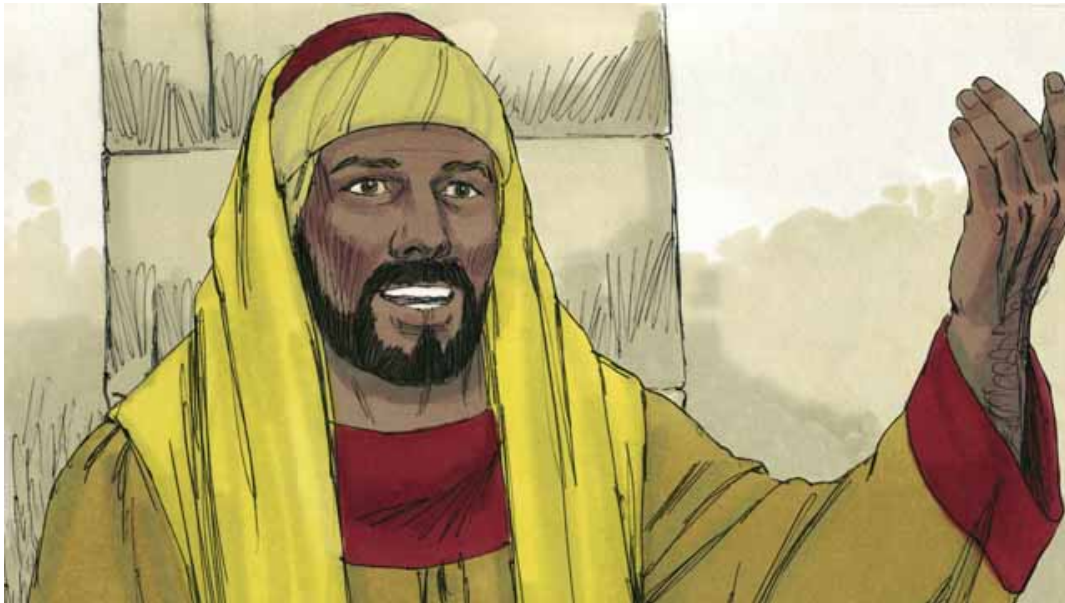


"Which ones do I need to obey?" he asked. Jesus replied, "Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor **as you love yourself.**"

as you love yourself

This could mean 'as much as you love yourself.'

28:03



But the young man said, "I have obeyed all these laws ever since I was a boy. What do I still need to do in order to live forever?" Jesus looked at him and loved him.
(No study notes for this frame)

28:04



Jesus answered, "If you want to be **perfect**, then go and sell everything you own and give the money to the poor, and you will have treasure **in heaven**. Then come and follow me."

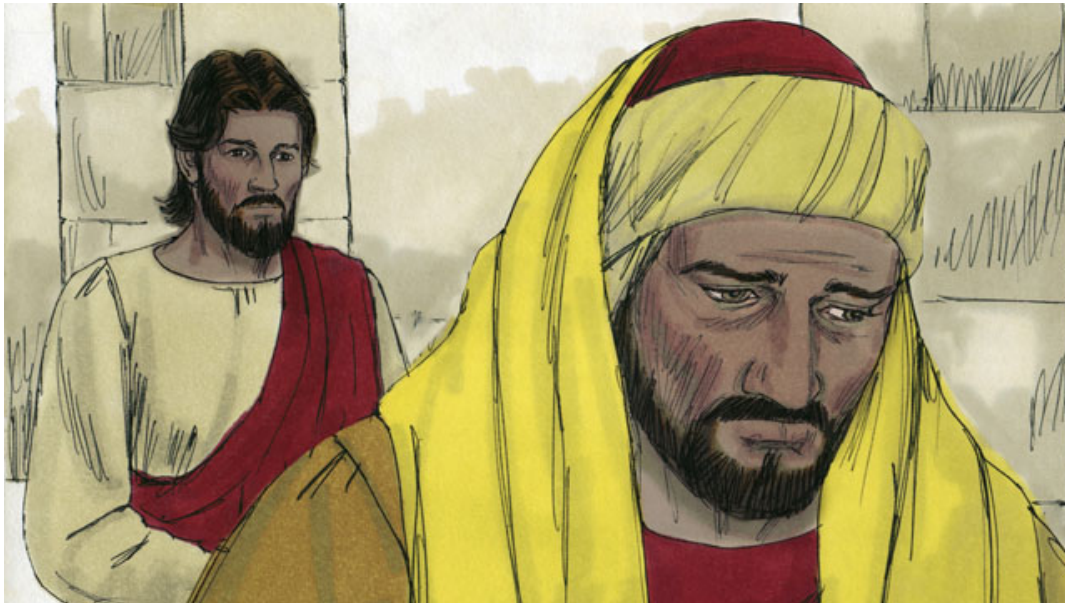
perfect

This could mean 'completely righteous.'

in heaven

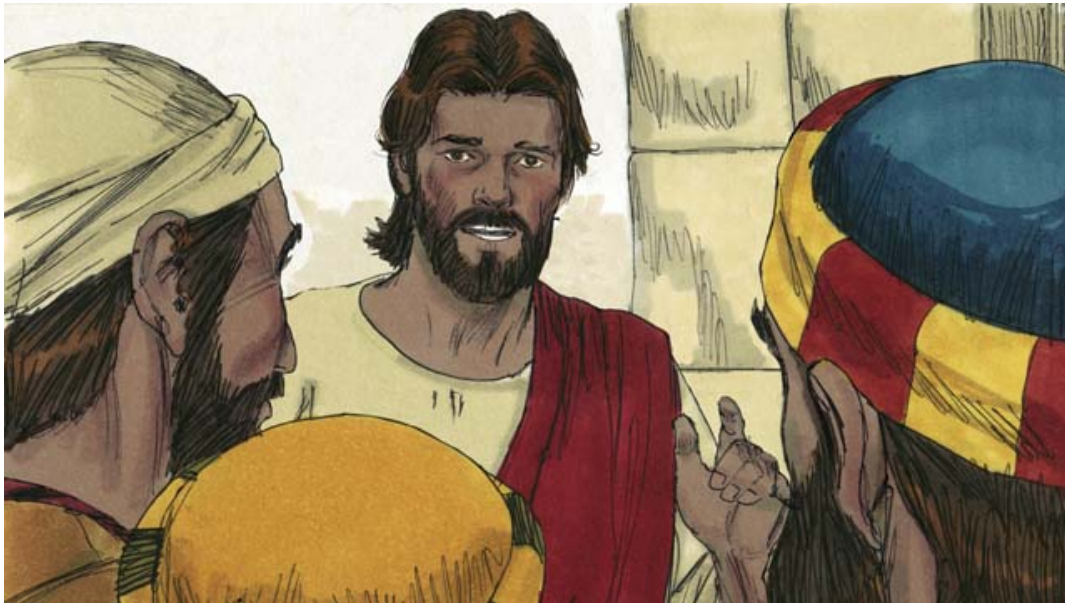
Jesus is asking the man to give up wealth now in order to gain it later on when he will be with God.

28:05



When the young man heard what Jesus said, he became very sad because he was very rich and did not want to give away all the things he possessed. He turned and went away from Jesus.
(No study notes for this frame)

28:06



Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for **a camel** to go through **the eye of a needle** than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."

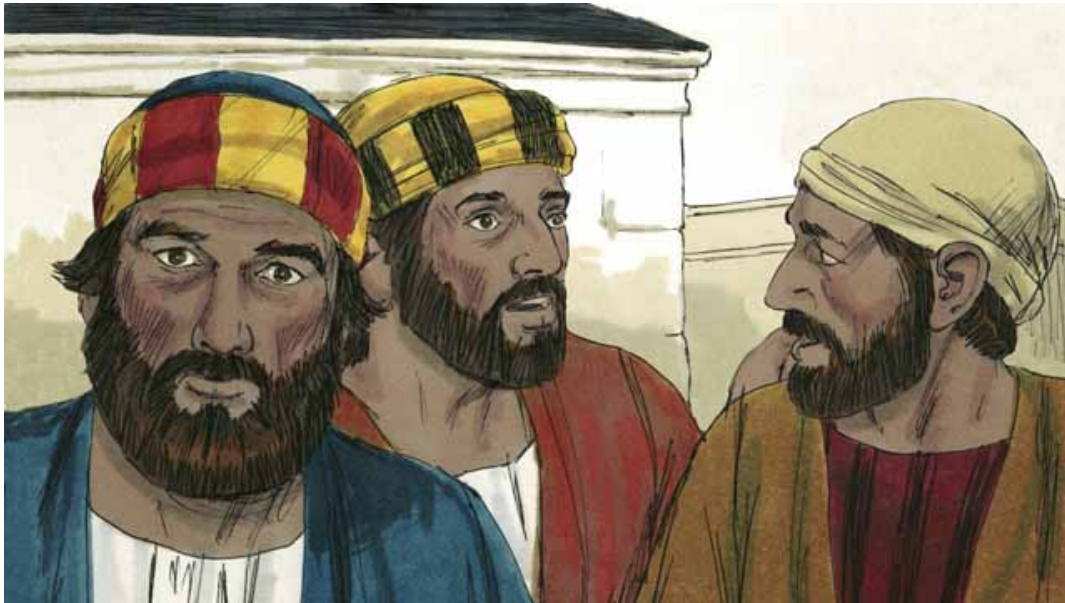
a camel

Camels are very large animals that are often used to carry heavy loads.

the eye of a needle

This refers to the tiny hole in the end of a sewing needle. The idea of something as large as a camel going through the eye of a needle is intended to represent something that is impossible.

28:07



When the disciples heard what Jesus said, they were shocked. They said, **"If it is like this, who will God save?"**

If it is like this, who will God save?

The disciples were surprised because many people believed that being rich was a sign of God's favor.

save

This refers to God not judging or condemning them for their sin, and allowing them to be citizens in his kingdom.

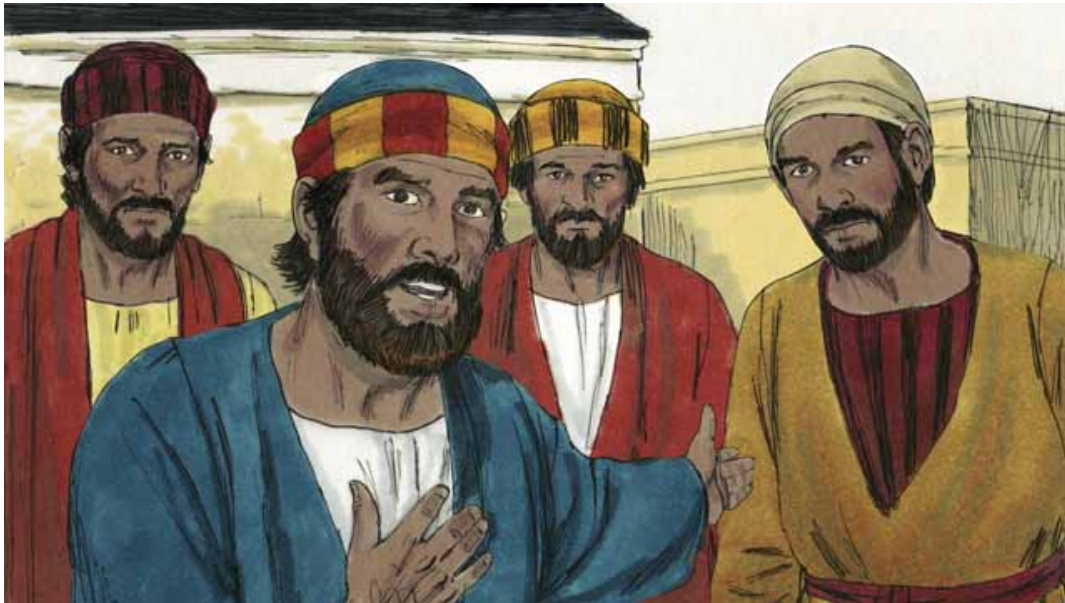
28:08



Jesus looked at the disciples and said, "It is impossible for people to save themselves. But nothing is impossible for God to do."

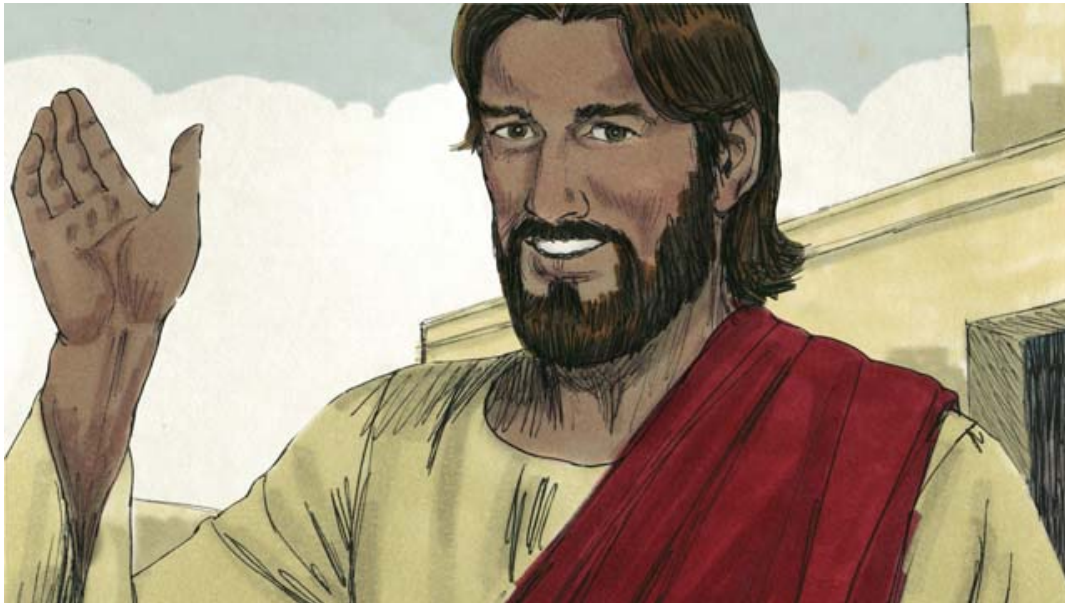
(No study notes for this frame)

28:09



Peter said to Jesus, "We disciples have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
(No study notes for this frame)

28:10



Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my sake will receive **100 times more** and will also receive eternal life. But **many who are first will be last**, and **many who are last will be first.**"

100 times more

This could mean 'very much more than he had before.'

many who are first will be last

This could mean 'many people who are important now, will not be important then.'

many who are last will be first

This could mean 'many people who are considered to not be very important on earth will be considered very important in heaven.'

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did the rich young ruler want Jesus to tell him?

The rich young ruler wanted Jesus to tell him how he could have eternal life. He wanted to live forever with God (See: [28:01](#)).

2. How did Jesus respond when the man called him **good**?

Jesus asked the young man what he meant to say when he called Jesus **good**. Jesus did not wait for the man to answer. He reminded the man that only God is truly good. Perhaps Jesus was asking the man if he believed that Jesus was God (See: [28:01](#)).

3. What did Jesus tell the young man he should do in order to have eternal life?

Jesus told him to obey God's laws in order to have eternal life (See: [28:01](#)).

4. How well did the young man think he had obeyed the law?

The young man thought he had always fully obeyed God's law. Of course, no one can do that. But he honestly believed that he had done everything that God asked him to do (See: [28:03](#)).

5. What did Jesus tell the young man to give up?

Jesus told the young man to give up all of his possessions (See: [28:04](#)).

6. What did Jesus tell the young man to do after he gave up his possessions?

Jesus told the young man to follow him as his disciple (See: [28:04](#)).

7. Why did the young man go away sad?

The young man went away sad because he had many possessions, and he did not want to give them up (See: [28:05](#)).

8. According to Jesus, how do riches affect whether a person enters heaven?

Jesus said that it was almost impossible for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of heaven (See: [28:06](#)).

9. If disciples give up things for Jesus' sake, how much more will they receive from him?

Disciples who give up things for Jesus will receive 100 times as much from him as a reward (See: [28:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did the young man ask which laws he must obey?

The young man did not understand that people must obey all of God's laws. God considers that we sin if we fail to obey even one of his laws. The young man wrongly thought that God would accept him if he faithfully obeyed some of God's most important laws.

2. Why did Jesus talk to the young man about being perfect?

The young man wrongly thought he could be 'good enough' to have eternal life. Jesus wanted him to know that he had to be perfect—that is, without any sin—in order to have eternal life. He could not keep God's law perfectly. The only way for him to be perfect was to follow Jesus and trust that Jesus would save him from his sin.

3. If the young man wanted to have eternal life, why was he not willing to give up his possessions?

Jesus promised that the young man would have treasure in heaven if he followed Jesus. However, the young man could not yet see and touch that treasure. He had to believe that Jesus would reward him. However, he could easily see and touch the possessions that he already had in this world. Therefore, it was hard for him to give up his current treasure to gain something that he could not yet see.

4. Why were the disciples so shocked to hear that it was almost impossible for a rich man to enter the kingdom of heaven?

The people of that day believed that if God loved someone, he made them wealthy. The more possessions a person had, the more people thought God loved them. The disciples were shocked to hear that God does not necessarily accept a person who is rich.

5. When will Jesus reward his disciples for giving up things for his sake?

Jesus does not say when he will reward his disciples. He may give them some things in this life, but most of their reward will be in heaven. Jesus clearly told his disciples that he would give them 100 times as much as they give up for him in this life. Other people may think they are poor in this life, but Jesus will richly reward them in his kingdom.

Summary

The rich young ruler who came to Jesus genuinely wanted to receive eternal life. He thought that he had obeyed God enough to be worthy of eternal life. Jesus loved him, but also knew that the young man loved his possessions. Therefore, Jesus tested him by telling him to give up his possessions and to follow Jesus in order to have eternal life. However, this made the young man very sad. The disciples were surprised that Jesus did not accept the rich young man. But Jesus explained that he would reward the disciples who gave up their wealth for his sake.

29. The Story of the Unmerciful Servant

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 18:21-35

29:01



One day, Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive **my brother** when he sins against me? Up to seven times?" Jesus said, "**Not seven times, but 70 times seven!**" By this, Jesus meant that we should always forgive. Then Jesus told this story.

my brother

This term sometimes included people who were not actually siblings, but who shared another very strong connection such as religion, ethnic background, etc.

Not seven times, but 70 times seven!

Jesus was not talking about an exact number. He was saying that we should forgive people every time they sin against us.

29:02



Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted **to settle accounts with his servants**. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years' wages."

to settle accounts with his servants

That is, to collect the money his servants had borrowed from him.

29:03



"But the servant could not pay his debt, so the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as slaves to pay his debt.'" (No study notes for this frame)

29:04



“The servant **fell on his knees** before the king and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ The king felt pity for the servant, so he **canceled all of his debt** and let him go.”

fell on his knees

That is, he quickly knelt down on the ground. This was a way to show his humility and his desire for the king to help him.

canceled all of his debt

The king said the servant did not need to pay back any of the money that he owed the king.

29:05



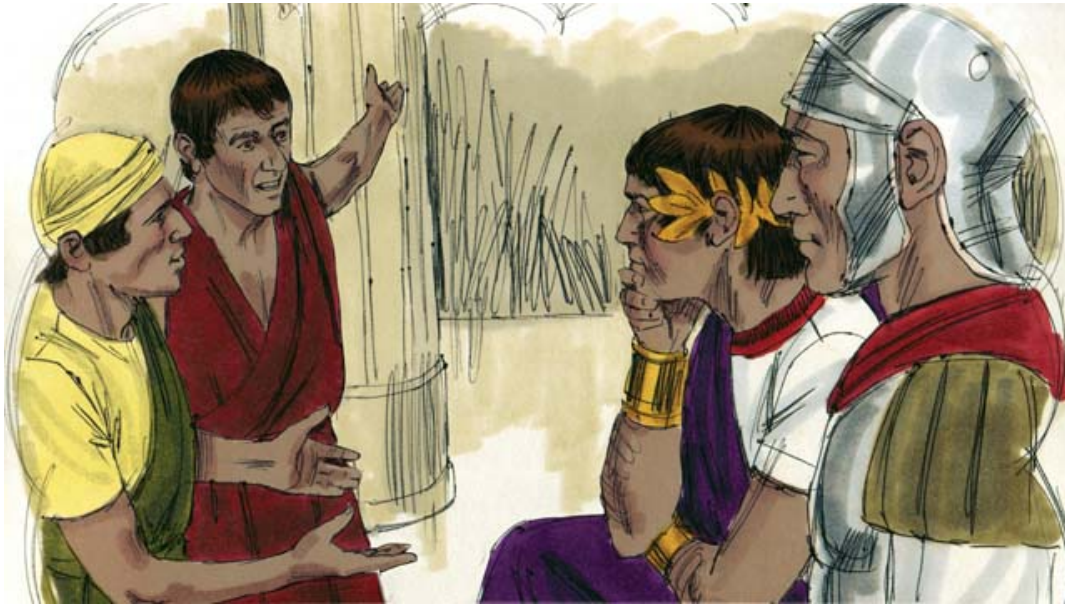
"But when the servant went out from the king, he found a fellow servant who owed him a debt worth four months' wages. The servant grabbed his fellow servant and said, 'Pay me the money that you owe me!'"
(No study notes for this frame)

29:06



"The fellow servant fell on his knees and said, 'Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.' But instead, the servant threw his fellow servant into prison until he could pay the debt."
(No study notes for this frame)

29:07



"Some other servants saw what had happened and were greatly disturbed. They went to the king and told him everything."

(No study notes for this frame)

29:08



"The king called the servant and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you begged me. You should have done the same.' The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt."

(No study notes for this frame)

29:09



Then Jesus said, "This is what **my heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

my heavenly Father

Jesus is expressing his unique, personal relationship to God the Father.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Jesus mean when he told Peter to forgive his brother 70 times seven?

When Jesus told Peter to forgive his brother 70 times seven, he wanted to say that Peter should forgive his brother as many times as necessary without stopping (See: [29:01](#)).

2. How would the king get his money back by selling the servant and his family as slaves?

The king would take the money that he would receive from selling the man and his family as slaves. This money would be a partial payment toward what the servant owed the king (See: [29:03](#)).

3. Would the servant ever be able to repay the money he owed to the king?

Since the servant owed 200,000 years' wages, he would not be able to repay the king in his lifetime (See: [29:02](#), [29:04](#)).

4. Would the servant who owed four months' wages be able to repay the other servant?

The servant who owed four months' wages might have been able to repay the other servant if he had time to earn the money (See: [29:05](#), [29:06](#)).

5. Why were the other servants disturbed by what happened?

The other servants thought the servant whom the king forgave had treated the other servant unfairly. He should have forgiven the other servant (See: [29:07](#)).

6. Why was the king so angry?

The king was angry because he had forgiven the debt of the servant, but now he saw that the servant was a wicked man. He was not willing to forgive other people as the king had forgiven him (See: [29:08](#)).

7. For how long did the king put the wicked servant into prison?

The king put the servant into the prison until he could repay his debt. However, his debt was so large that he would never be able to repay it. Therefore, he would be in prison for the rest of his life (See: [29:08](#)).

8. Why did Jesus tell this story?

Jesus wanted his disciples to know that God had forgiven them, and that he expected them to forgive each other in the same way (See: [29:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Peter offered to forgive his brother seven times?

Peter apparently thought that he was being merciful if he forgave his brother seven times. That seemed like a lot to Peter. However, Jesus answered that seven times was not enough. Disciples of Jesus should forgive 70 times more than that. That is, they should forgive their brothers without limit.

2. How did the debts of the two servants compare to each other?

The debt of the first servant was so large that it would be impossible to repay. The debt of the second servant was significant, but not impossible to pay.

3. Who do you think the king and the servants represent in this story?

In this story, the king represents God. The servants represent the disciples of Jesus. Every disciple owed God a payment for his sin that was impossible to pay, just as the servant owed the king a huge debt. However, God forgave their sin because Jesus died in their places. Therefore, God expects his disciples to forgive each other.

4. How will God respond to disciples who do not forgive other disciples?

God will be very angry with disciples who are not willing to forgive other disciples. He will judge them severely.

Summary

Peter asked Jesus how many times he should forgive a fellow disciple who sinned against him. He thought that perhaps seven times would be enough. But Jesus told him that he should continue to forgive his brother even 70 times more than that. Jesus then told a story to show that God is like a king who has forgiven his disciples a great debt of sin. Therefore, his disciples should also forgive their fellow disciples. The debt that they owe each other is much less than the debt they owed to God. If his disciples do not forgive each other, God will be angry with them and will punish them.

30. Jesus Feeds Thousands of People

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:31-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:5-15

30:01

Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages. When they returned to where Jesus was, they told him what they had done. Then Jesus invited them to go with him to a quiet place across **the lake** to rest for a while. So, they got into a boat and went **to the other side of the lake**.

the lake

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

to the other side of the lake

They went across the northern part of the lake. This would have been about 5-8 kilometers by boat.

30:02



But there were many people who saw Jesus and the disciples leave in the boat. These people ran along the shore of the lake **to get to the other side** ahead of them. So when Jesus and the disciples arrived, a large group of people was already there, waiting for them.

to get to the other side

The distance around that part of the lake was about 8-10 kilometers.

30:03



The crowd had **over 5,000 men in it, not counting the women and children**. Jesus felt great compassion towards the people. To Jesus, these people were **like sheep without a shepherd**. So he taught them and healed the people among them who were sick.

over 5,000 men in it, not counting the women and children

Some scholars think there may have been as many as 10,000 or 15,000 people.

like sheep without a shepherd

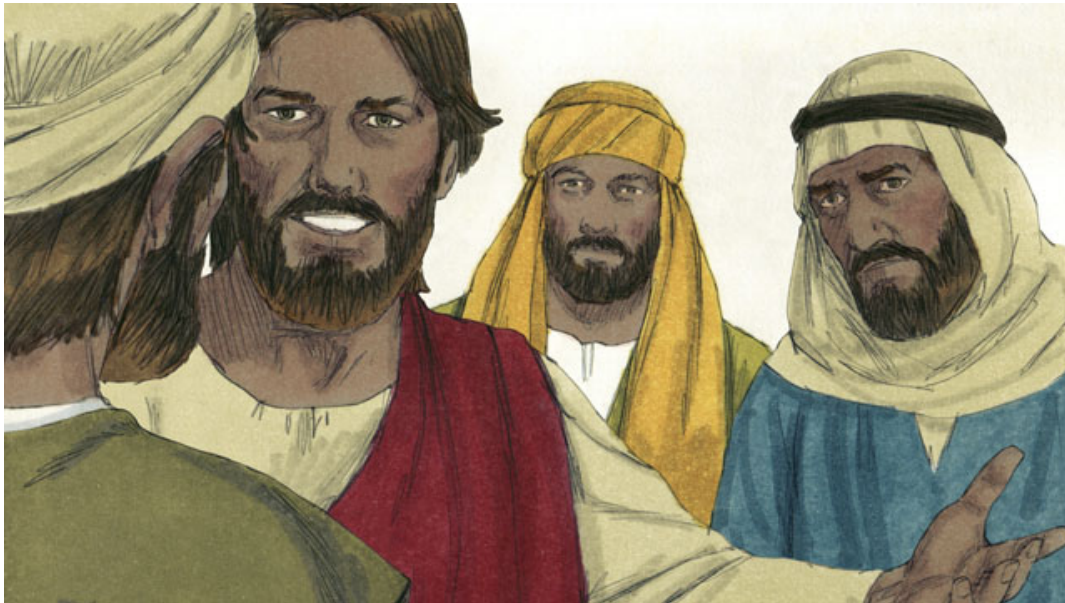
This means the people were vulnerable and lost, just like sheep are when they have no shepherd to take care of them.

30:04



Late in the day, the disciples told Jesus, "It is late and there are no towns nearby. Send the people away so they can go get something to eat."
(No study notes for this frame)

30:05



But Jesus said to the disciples, "You give them something to eat!" They responded, "**How can we do that?** We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish."

How can we do that?

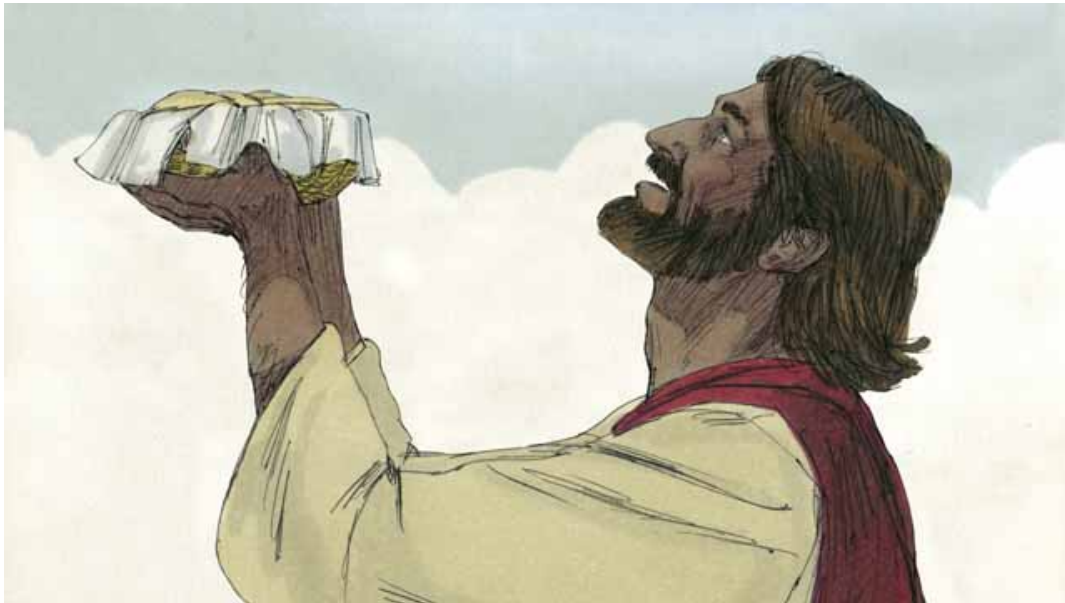
The disciples were not asking an actual question. Rather, they were strongly expressing that they did not think this was possible.

30:06



Jesus told his disciples to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass in groups of 50 people each.
(No study notes for this frame)

30:07



Then Jesus took the five loaves of bread and the two fish, looked up to heaven, and thanked God for the food.
(No study notes for this frame)

30:08



Then Jesus broke the bread and the fish into pieces. He gave the pieces to his disciples to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and **it never ran out!** All the people ate and **were satisfied.**

it never ran out!

This was a miracle. The small amount of food became enough for thousands of people as Jesus gave it to his disciples.

were satisfied

That is, they were no longer hungry.

30:09



After that, the disciples collected the food that had not been eaten. It was enough to fill 12 baskets! All the food came from the five loaves of bread and two fish.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did Jesus invite his disciples to go to a quiet place to rest?

His disciples had been preaching and teaching about Jesus in many different villages, and they were tired (See: [30:01](#)).

2. What did the people do in order to see Jesus?

The people ran along the shore of the lake in order to get to the other side to be there when the boat carrying Jesus and his disciples would arrive there (See: [30:02](#)).

3. How many people were in the crowd that waited for Jesus?

There were over 5,000 men in the crowd, but there were also many woman and children. We do not know the total number of people who were there (See: [30:03](#)).

4. How did Jesus respond to the crowds that waited for him?

Jesus had compassion on the people, because they were like sheep without a shepherd (See: [30:03](#)).

5. How much food did the disciples have with them?

The disciples only had five loaves of bread and two small fish (See: [30:05](#)).

6. What did Jesus do with the loaves and the fish?

Jesus thanked God for the loaves and fish, broke them into pieces, and gave them to his disciples to give to the people (See: [30:07](#), [30:08](#)).

7. What happened when the crowd ate the five loaves of bread and the two small fish?

The bread and the fish never ran out. The crowd ate as much as they wanted and they were satisfied (See: [30:08](#)).

8. How much food was left over after the crowd ate what they wanted?

The disciples picked up 12 baskets full of food that was left over (See: [30:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Should disciples rest even when there is a lot of work to do?

Rest is a good thing. When God created the earth, he commanded people to rest on the seventh day of the week. When the disciples finished preaching and teaching, Jesus took them away to rest. People need to rest occasionally in order to do their work well.

2. How did Jesus respond to the crowd when they interrupted him and the disciples as they were going to a place to rest?

Even though Jesus wanted the disciples to rest, he was not angry with the crowds that followed them. Instead, he felt compassion on the people. Even though he and his disciples needed to rest, they taught and healed the people in the crowd.

3. Why did Jesus tell the disciples to give the crowd something to eat?

Jesus knew that they did not have enough food to feed the crowd. He told the disciples to feed them so that the disciples would understand that it was impossible to do that. Then, when Jesus caused the bread and the fish to increase and feed them all, the disciples would understand that he had done what was impossible. They would know that God had worked through him in a mighty way.

4. Who caused the food to increase?

Jesus was the one who caused the food to increase and satisfy all the people. The disciples passed out the food to the people, but Jesus was the one who continually gave them the food. When everyone had finished eating, the disciples knew that Jesus was the one who had done this miracle.

5. Why do you think the disciples collected the leftover food?

Jesus wanted the disciples to see how much he had multiplied the food. The leftover food was more than the five loaves of bread and two fish that they had at the beginning. Those would fit into a single basket. But now there were 12 full baskets. Each of the 12 disciples had a full basket of leftover food.

Summary

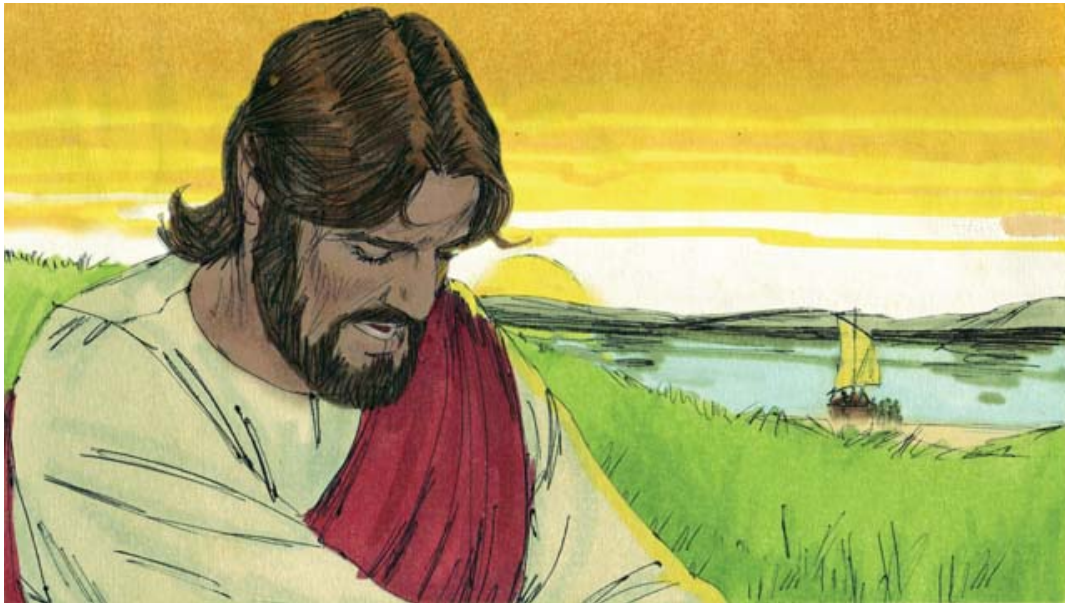
Jesus' disciples were tired from preaching and teaching about Jesus. Jesus knew they needed rest, so he took them in a boat to a quiet place. However, thousands of people who wanted to see Jesus ran ahead to that place. But Jesus was not angry with them. Instead, he felt compassion for them. They did not have anyone to teach them and to care for them, so he did that. Even though there was not enough for the people to eat, Jesus multiplied the small amount of food they had and gave it to his disciples to give to the people. The food fed all of the people as much as they wanted to eat. The disciples had more food left over than they had before they fed the people. Jesus took the small amount of food that they had and enabled them to meet the needs of the entire crowd with it. Only God can do that.

31. Jesus Walks on Water

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 14:22-33; Mark 6:45-52; John 6:16-21

31:01



After Jesus fed the crowd, he told the disciples to get into a boat. He told them to sail **to the other side of the lake** while he stayed behind for a little while. So the disciples left, and Jesus sent the crowd to their homes. After that Jesus went up on a mountainside to pray. He was there all alone, and he prayed until late at night.

to the other side of the lake

They went across the northern part of the Sea of Galilee. This would have been about 5-8 kilometers by boat.

31:02



During this time, the disciples were **rowing their boat**, but the wind was blowing hard against them. When it was late in the night, they had only reached the middle of the lake.

rowing their boat

The boat had a sail, but it would not have helped them much when the wind was against them.

31:03



At that time, Jesus finished praying and started to go back to meet his disciples. He **walked on top of the water** toward their boat.

walked on top of the water

This was a miracle. The average depth of the Sea of Galilee is 25 meters.

31:04



Then the disciples saw him. They were very afraid because **they thought he was a ghost**. Jesus knew that they were afraid, so he called out to them and said, "Do not be afraid. It is I!"

they thought he was a ghost

The disciples thought Jesus was a spirit, because a human being cannot walk on water.

31:05



Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told Peter, "Come!"
(No study notes for this frame)

31:06



So, Peter got out of the boat and **started walking to Jesus** on the surface of the water. But after walking a short distance, he turned his eyes away from Jesus and began to look at the waves and to feel the strong wind.

started walking to Jesus

Jesus enabled Peter to begin to actually walk on top of the water.

31:07



Then **Peter became afraid and began to sink** in the water. He cried out, "Master, save me!" Right away, Jesus reached out and grabbed him. Then he said to Peter, "You have so little faith! Why did you not trust me to keep you safe?"

Peter became afraid and began to sink

Peter sank into the water because he stopped looking at Jesus and became afraid of the waves instead.

31:08



Then Peter and Jesus got into the boat, and the wind immediately stopped blowing. The water became calm. The disciples were amazed and bowed down to Jesus. **They worshiped him** and said to him, "Truly, you are the Son of God."

They worshiped him

The disciples realized that Jesus could only do these miracles because he was the Son of God.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Jesus do after he sent his disciples across the lake in a boat?

Jesus sent away the crowd and then went up on a mountainside to pray alone (See: [31:01](#)).

2. What difficulty did the disciples have on the lake?

The wind was blowing hard, so the disciples were having difficulty crossing the lake in the boat (See: [31:02](#)).

3. How did Jesus come to the disciples?

Jesus walked on top of the water to the boat in the middle of the lake (See: [31:03](#)).

4. Why were the disciples afraid of Jesus when he came to them?

The disciples were afraid when they saw Jesus walking on top of the water because they thought Jesus was a ghost (See: [31:04](#)).

5. What did Peter ask Jesus to do in order to prove that Jesus was not a ghost?

Peter asked Jesus to command him to walk to Jesus on the water (See: [31:05](#)).

6. What happened when Peter stepped onto the water?

Peter was also able to walk on the water for a short distance (See: [31:06](#)).

7. Why did Peter begin to sink in the water?

Peter began to sink when he took his eyes away from Jesus and looked at the waves instead (See: [31:06](#), [31:07](#)).

8. What did Peter do to save himself as he was sinking in the water?

Peter shouted for Jesus to save him. Jesus reached out and grabbed Peter (See: [31:07](#)).

9. What happened to the storm?

The storm stopped as soon as Peter and Jesus stepped into the boat (See: [31:08](#)).

10. How did the disciples respond when Jesus entered the boat?

The disciples were amazed. They all bowed down and worshiped Jesus as the Son of God (See: [31:08](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did Jesus remain on the mountainside and pray until late at night?

Jesus believed that prayer was important even for him. He often spent time talking to his Father. Even when he was very busy, he took time to pray. He became an example for all of his disciples, and for us.

2. Why do you think the disciples had difficulty crossing the lake? Jesus had sent them there.

A disciple who follows Jesus will still experience difficult times. Jesus did not say it was easy to be his disciple. In this situation, Jesus sent the wind against the disciples so he could show them that he had authority over the storm. God often causes difficult times in our lives so that he can show us his power.

3. Why do you think it was wise for Peter to try to walk on the water to Jesus?

Peter often did not think carefully about things before he did them. Perhaps this occasion is an example. It may have been a foolish thing to do. But at the same time, it was also very brave. None of the other disciples tried to go to Jesus. They all remained in the boat and waited for Jesus to come to them.

4. Why did Jesus say that Peter had little faith?

Peter began to trust Jesus. He asked Jesus to cause him to walk on the water. That shows that Peter believed in Jesus. However, when Peter saw the wind and the waves, he began to fear that Jesus could not keep him safe on the water. His faith began to waver. At that point, he began to sink. His faith was not strong enough to trust Jesus for very long.

5. Why did the disciples worship Jesus?

The disciples saw that he had walked across the water of the lake during the storm, and that he had calmed the wind. Many of the disciples were fishermen. They knew that no mere man could walk on the water. They understood clearly that Jesus was doing things that only God could do. Therefore, they bowed down and worshiped him.

Summary

Jesus stayed behind as he sent his disciples across the lake in the boat. While they went, he prayed to his Father until late at night. Jesus often spend much time in prayer, no matter how busy he was. Eventually, Jesus began to walk across the lake on the water toward the disciples. They were afraid when they saw him, but Peter asked permission to come to Jesus on the water. He walked partway to Jesus before he became afraid the waves and began to sink. Jesus saved Peter, but he rebuked him for not believing in Jesus enough. When Jesus got into the boat, the storm stopped. The disciples were so amazed at what Jesus had done that they all fell down and worshiped him as the Son of God.

32. Jesus Heals a Demon-Possessed Man & a Sick Woman

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 8:28-34; 9:20-22; Mark 5; Luke 8:26-48

32:01



Jesus and his disciples went in their boat to the region where **the Gerasene people** lived. They reached land and got out of their boat.

the Gerasene people

The Gerasenes lived in an area along the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee. They were descendants of the Jews, but we know few details about them.

32:02

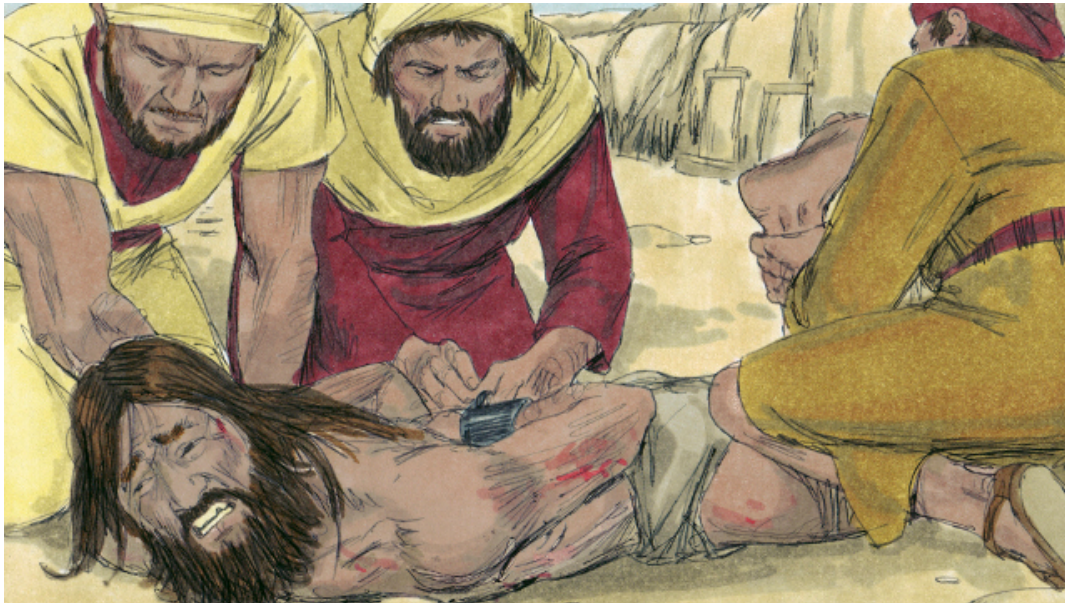


Now there was a man there who **was demon possessed**.

was demon possessed

The man was controlled by evil spirits.

32:03



This man was so strong that nobody could control him. Sometimes people even fastened his arms and legs with chains, but he kept breaking them.
(No study notes for this frame)

32:04



The man lived among the tombs in the area. This man would scream all day and all night. He did not wear clothes, and he often cut himself with stones.
(No study notes for this frame)

32:05



This man ran up to Jesus and **knelt down in front of him**. Then Jesus spoke to the demon in the man and said, "Come out of this man!"

knelt down in front of him

The man knelt down before Jesus as a sign of respect. He wanted Jesus to free him from the demons.

32:06



The demon cried out in a loud voice, “**What do you want with me**, Jesus, Son of **the Most High God**? Please do not torture me!” Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is **Legion**, because we are many.”

What do you want with me

This expression means ‘What are you going to do to me?’

the Most High God

This title means that God is the Supreme God who rules over everything.

Legion

This was the name of the group of demons, but it also indicates that the evil spirits were very numerous.

32:07



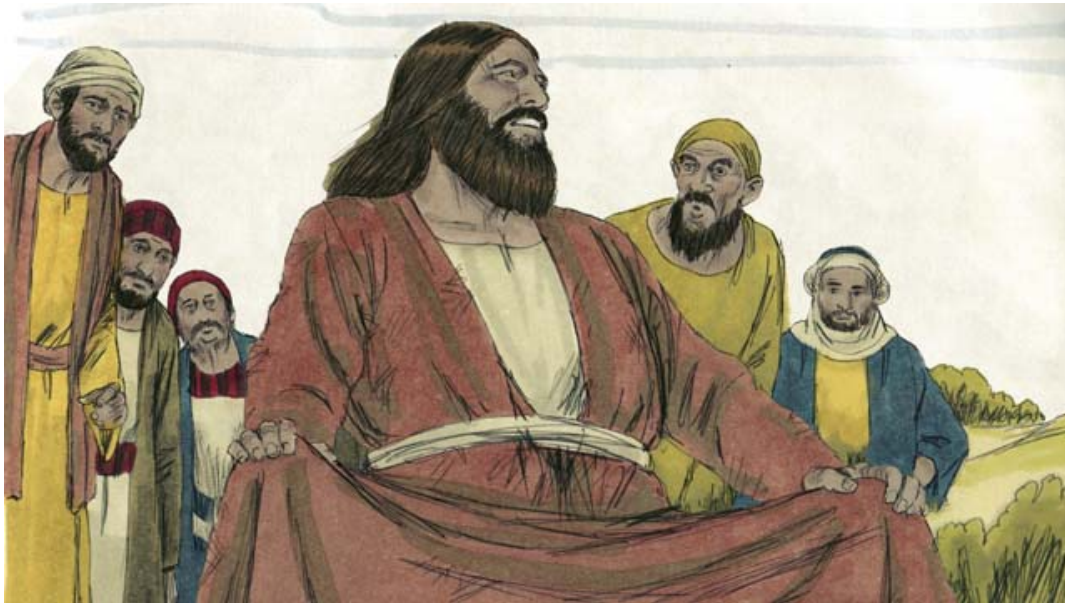
The demons begged Jesus, "Please do not send us out of this region!" There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So the demons begged Jesus, "Please send us into the pigs instead!" Jesus said, "Alright, go into them!"
(No study notes for this frame)

32:08



So the demons came out of the man and entered the pigs. The pigs ran down a steep bank into the lake and drowned. There were about 2,000 pigs in the herd.
(No study notes for this frame)

32:09



There were people taking care of those pigs. When they saw what happened, they ran into the town. There they told everyone what Jesus had done. The people from the town came and saw the man who used to have the demons. He was sitting calmly, wearing clothes, and acting like a normal person.
(No study notes for this frame)

32:10

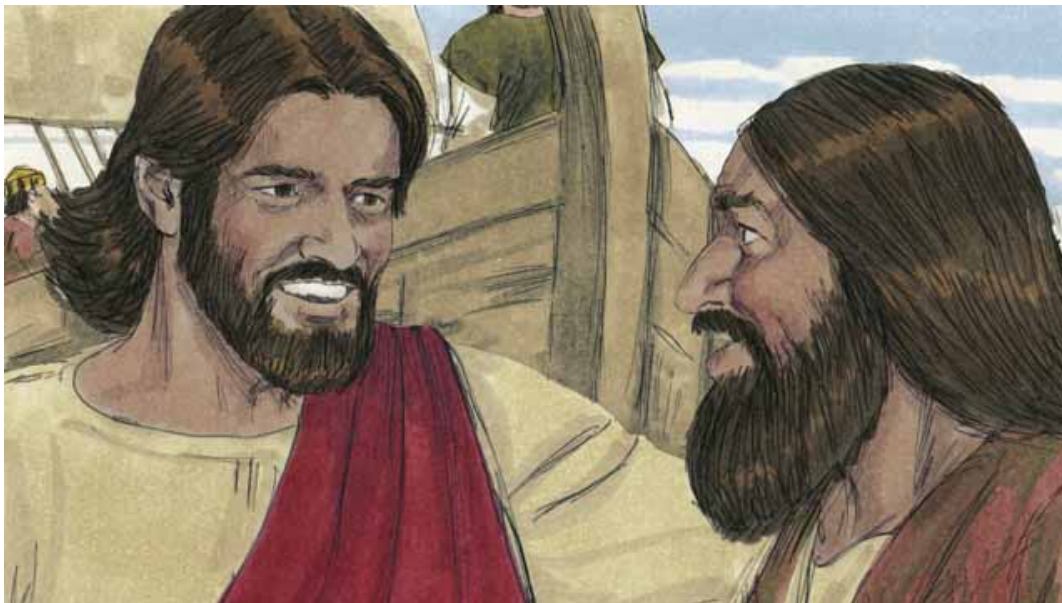


The people were very afraid and asked Jesus to leave. So Jesus got into the boat. The man who used to have the demons **begged to go along with Jesus.**

begged to go along with Jesus

The man wanted to become one of Jesus' disciples.

32:11



But Jesus said to him, "No. **I want you to go home** and tell everyone what God has done for you. Tell them how he has had mercy on you."

I want you to go home

Jesus told the man to serve him in his own town instead of traveling with Jesus to other places.

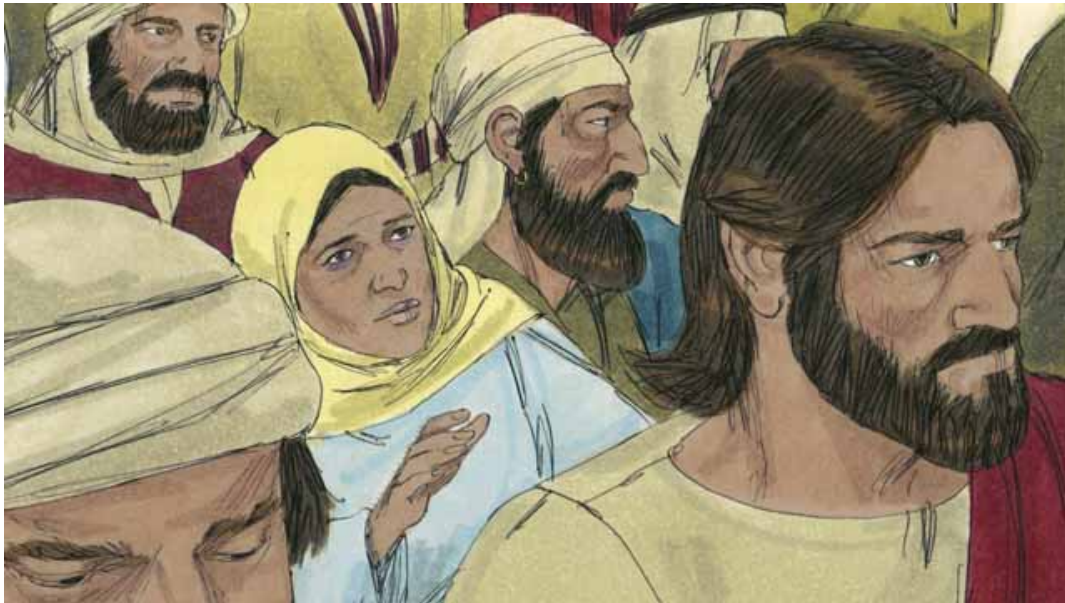
32:12



So the man went away and told everyone about what Jesus had done for him. Everyone who heard his story was amazed.

(No study notes for this frame)

32:13



Jesus returned to the other side of the lake. After he arrived there, a large crowd gathered around him and pressed in on him. In the crowd was a woman who had suffered from a bleeding problem for 12 years. She had paid all of her money to doctors so they would heal her, but she only got worse.
(No study notes for this frame)

32:14



She had heard that Jesus had healed many sick people and thought, 'I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed too!' So she came up behind Jesus and touched his clothes. As soon as she touched them, the bleeding stopped!
(No study notes for this frame)

32:15



Immediately, Jesus realized that **power had gone out from him**. So he turned around and asked, "Who touched me?" The disciples replied, "There are many people crowding around you and bumping into you. Why did you ask, 'Who touched me?'"

power had gone out from him

Jesus knew that his power had healed the woman. He asked who touched him because he wanted the woman to testify about what happened to her.

32:16



The woman fell on her knees before Jesus, **shaking and very afraid**. Then she told him what she had done, and that she had been healed. Jesus said to her, **“Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”**

shaking and very afraid

The woman was very afraid because she had tried to be healed secretly. She thought perhaps Jesus was angry with her for doing that.

Your faith has healed you

Jesus did not heal the woman because she touched him, but because she believed that he was able to heal her.

Go in peace

People spoke this traditional blessing when they left each other. Jesus may also have spoken these words because the woman was afraid. Now, however, she would know that Jesus had accepted her because of her faith in him.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did the demon affect the man he possessed?

The demon made the man so strong that no one could control him. But it also made him scream all day and night, go around without clothes, and cut himself with stones (See: [32:03](#), [32:04](#)).

2. What was the name of the demon in the man?

The name of the demon was Legion because he was actually a group of many demons (See: [32:06](#)).

3. The demons asked Jesus for permission to do what?

The demons asked Jesus for permission to go into the pigs instead of leaving the region (See: [32:07](#)).

4. What happened when the demons entered into the pigs?

All 2,000 pigs ran into the lake and drowned (See: [32:08](#)).

5. What did the people of the region ask Jesus to do when they saw the man who was healed and heard that the pigs were dead?

Because the people of the region were afraid of Jesus, they asked him to leave them (See: [32:10](#)).

6. What problem did the woman in the crowd have?

The woman had been bleeding for 12 years. She spent all of her money on doctors and none of them could heal her. Instead, she got worse (See: [32:13](#)).

7. What did the woman think would heal her?

The woman thought she would be healed if she could only touch Jesus' clothes (See: [32:14](#)).

8. What happened when the woman touched Jesus?

The woman immediately stopped bleeding when she touched Jesus. But Jesus knew that power had gone out from him, and asked who had touched him (See: [32:14](#), [32:15](#)).

9. What did Jesus say was the reason the woman was healed?

Jesus told the woman that her faith had healed her. She was well because she believed that Jesus could heal her (See: [32:16](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. How did the demons treat the man they possessed?

The demons caused the man they possessed to suffer and to bring shame upon himself. They caused him to harm even his own body. He would scream in pain all day and all night. Demons want to destroy the people whom God created.

2. This story show that Jesus had which power over the demons?

Jesus had the power to command the demons to come out of the man. He also had the power to decide where they could go after they left him. Jesus could send them into eternal punishment. The demons were afraid Jesus would do that. That is why they asked to go into the pigs instead.

Why did the people ask Jesus to leave their region?
3.

The people were very concerned about the money they lost when their pigs drowned, but they did not care that the man was released from the demons. They asked Jesus to leave because they valued their possessions more than they valued other people.

4. Why did Jesus tell the man who was freed from the demons to go to his home?

The man wanted to follow Jesus as his disciple. But Jesus told the man to stay and to be his disciple among his own people. The people sent Jesus away. So Jesus told the man to stay at his home so that he could tell the people there about Jesus after Jesus went away.

5. Why did Jesus ask the woman to tell what had happened to her?

Jesus healed the woman because she believed in him. But Jesus also wanted other people to believe in him. For that reason, he did not allow the woman to be healed in secret. Instead, he caused her to tell everyone how he had healed her. In this way, she acted as his disciple.

Summary

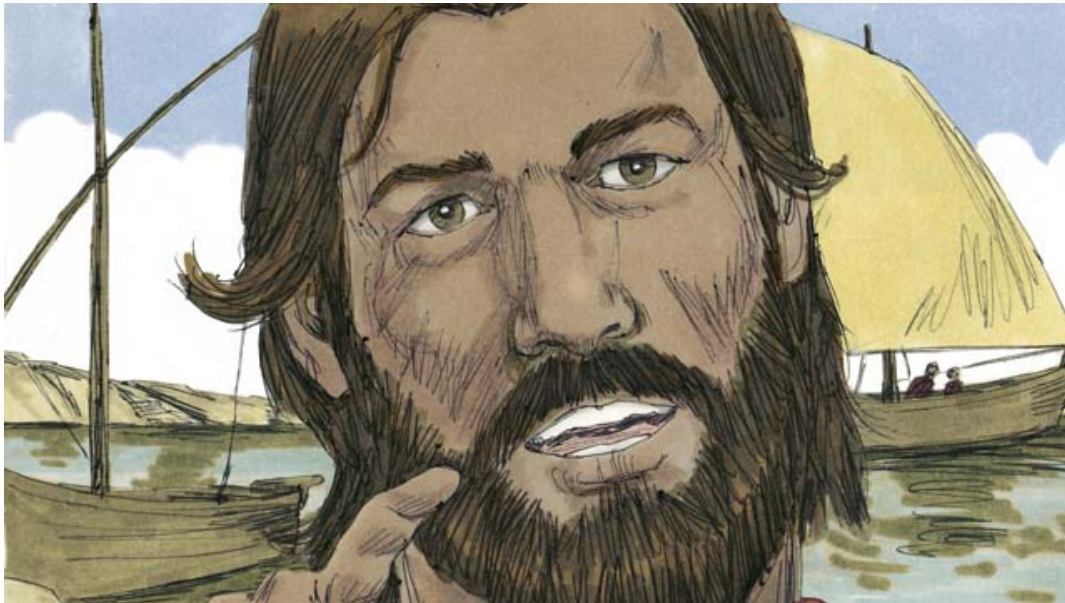
Jesus healed two people who were suffering greatly. The man had a demon that no one could control or remove. The woman was bleeding and no doctor could heal her. Jesus had the power to easily heal them both. However, he did not heal either person in secret. He sent the demons from the man into the pigs so that they died. As a result, everyone in the region heard that he had healed the man. Furthermore, he told the man who was healed to go home and to continue to tell everyone there what Jesus had done for him. Likewise, Jesus did not allow the woman to be healed in secret. He called her out before the crowd so that she could tell them all how Jesus had healed her. Jesus was preparing people to be able to tell everyone who he was and what he had done for them.

33. The Story of the Farmer

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:1-23; Mark 4:1-20; Luke 8:4-15

33:01



One day, Jesus was near the shore of **the lake**. He was teaching a very large crowd of people. So many people came to hear him that Jesus did not have enough room to speak to them all. So he got into a boat in the water. There he sat and taught the people.

the lake

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

33:02



Jesus told this story. "A farmer went out to plant some seed. As he was **spreading the seed by hand**, some of the seed happened to fall on **the path**. But birds came and ate all of that seed."

spreading the seed by hand

Farmers in the ancient Middle East typically planted grain-bearing crops by throwing the seed on the soil.

the path

The path was packed hard from people walking on it. The seed could not go down into the soil, so it was easy for the birds to eat all of it.

33:03



“Other seed fell on rocky ground, where there was **very little soil**. The seed in the rocky ground sprouted quickly, but its roots were not able to go deep into the soil. When the sun came up and it got hot, the plants withered and died.”

very little soil

The rocky ground had enough soil to hide the seed from the birds, but not enough for the roots to grow well.

33:04



“Still other seed fell among thorn bushes. This seed began to grow, but the thorns **choked it out**. So the plants that grew from the seed in the thorny ground did not produce any grain.”

choked it out

The thorn bushes were so dense that the grain plants could not get enough sunlight to grow well.

33:05



"Other seed fell into good soil. This seed grew up and produced 30, 60, or even 100 times as much grain as the seed that had been planted. Whoever wants to follow God, let him pay attention to what I am saying!"
(No study notes for this frame)

33:06

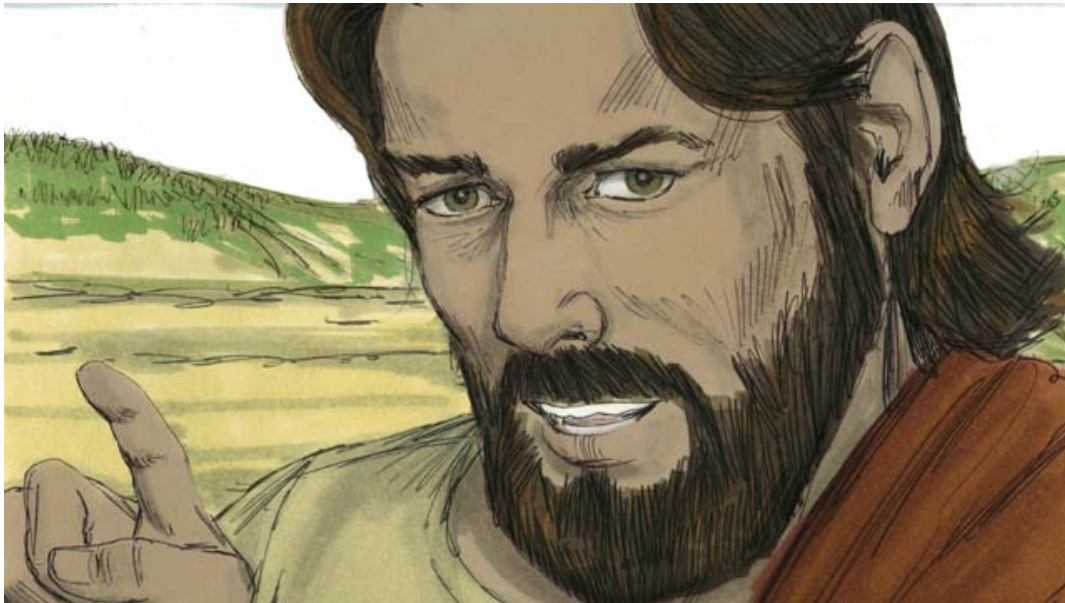


This story confused the disciples. So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it. Then the devil takes the word away from him. That is, the devil keeps him from understanding it."

This story confused the disciples

The disciples understood what happened to the seed, but they did not understand what it taught about God.

33:07



"The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he suffers hardships, or when other people make him suffer, he falls away from God. That is, he stops trusting in God."
(No study notes for this frame)

33:08



“The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word. But he begins to worry about many things, and he tries to make a lot of money, and he tries to get many things. After some time, he is not able to love God any longer. So what he learned from God’s word does not make him able to please God. He is like wheat stalks that **do not produce any grain.**”

do not produce any grain

This could mean ‘do not produce spiritual fruit’ or ‘do not behave in a way that shows God’s Spirit is working in him.’

33:09



“But the seed in the good soil is a person who hears the word of God, believes it, and **produces fruit.**”

produces fruit

This means he does the things that God wants him to do.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did Jesus get into a boat to teach the people?

The people were crowding too tightly around him. So Jesus got into the boat so that he would have room to speak to all the people (See: [33:01](#)).

2. What happened to the seed that fell on the path?

The birds ate the seed that fell on the path (See: [33:02](#)).

3. What happened to the seed that fell on rocky ground?

The seed that fell on rocky ground did not have enough soil for its roots, so it withered and died (See: [33:03](#)).

4. What happened to the seed that fell among the thorns?

The thorns choked out the seed that fell among them so that it did not produce any grain (See: [33:04](#)).

5. What happened to the seed that fell on the good soil?

The seed that fell on the good soil produced 30, 60 or even 100 times as much grain as the seed that was planted (See: [33:05](#)).

6. What does the seed in the story represent?

The seed in the story represents the word of God that goes out to different people (See: [33:06](#)).

7. What does the seed on the path represent?

The seed on the path represents people who do not understand the word of God. Then the devil takes it away from them (See: [33:06](#)).

8. What does the seed on the rocky ground represent?

The seed on the rocky ground represents people who hear the word of God, but then hardship causes them to stop trusting in God (See: [33:07](#)).

9. What does the seed on the thorny ground represent?

The seed on the thorny ground represents people who allow money and other things to distract them from their love for God (See: [33:07](#)).

10. What does the seed in the good soil represent?

The seed in the good soil is the person who hears and believes the word of God (See: [33:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Jesus told this story to the large crowd?

There would be many kinds of people in the large crowd. They would respond to the words of Jesus in different ways. This story described how they would respond. They would all hear the words of Jesus, but only a few would believe his words and do what God wanted them to do. The other people would fail to love God for different reasons.

How can hardship and suffering cause a person to stop trusting in God?

2.

Many people wrongly think that God will only allow good things to happen to them. Therefore, when they suffer, they think that God has deceived them or that he does not care about them. They stop trusting in him and following him. But God promised that people would treat his disciples badly.

3. How do worries about money and other things cause people to stop loving God?

Jesus said that people cannot love both God and money. They must choose to serve either God or possessions. Many people try to do both, but they cannot. If they do not stop loving their possessions, they stop loving God. God is not pleased with these people.

4. How does a person produce 30, 60 or 100 times as much fruit?

A single person can cause many other people to hear about Jesus and to love God. This may not happen all at once. But if they obey God throughout their lives and tell others about him, many people will respond to their testimony. The people may be their family, their friends, or even total strangers.

Summary

A large crowd came to hear Jesus teach. There were so many people that he had to get into a boat in the water so that he had room to speak to them all. The people in the crowd would respond to his words in different ways. Some would not understand at all. Others would believe for a while and then fade away. But some would believe his words and serve God for their entire lives. For this reason, Jesus told the story about a farmer sowing seed. The seed fell on different kinds of soil, and it grew in different ways. The seed on the different kinds of soil represented the different people in the crowd. Jesus was telling the crowd and his disciples that they should pay attention to whether they believed the word of God. They should also make sure that they did not let anything else in their lives take the place of their love for God. If they continued to believe, they would accomplish much for God.

34. Jesus Teaches Other Stories

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:31-46; Mark 4:26-34; Luke 13:18-21; 18:9-14

34:01



Jesus told many other **stories** about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, “The kingdom of God is like **a mustard seed** that someone planted in his field. You know that the mustard seed is **the smallest seed of all.**”

stories

Jesus used these stories to teach truths about God’s kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not.

a mustard seed

This probably refers to the seed of the black mustard plant, which has tiny seeds that rapidly grow into very large plants.

the smallest seed of all

That means the smallest of all the seeds that people planted at that time.

34:02



"But when the mustard seed grows, it becomes the largest of all of the garden plants, big enough that even the birds come and rest in its branches."

(No study notes for this frame)

34:03



Telling another story, Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like **yeast** that a woman mixes into some **bread dough** until **it spreads throughout the dough.**"

yeast

Yeast is added to bread dough to make it rise. A little bit of yeast mixed into a large amount of dough makes the whole batch of dough rise.

bread dough

This is a mixture of flour and liquid that can be shaped and baked into bread.

it spreads throughout the dough

The yeast works its way into every part of the dough and causes it all to rise.

34:04



“The kingdom of God is also like treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and wanted it very much. So he **buried it again**. He was so filled with joy that he went and sold everything he had so he could **buy that field** where the treasure was.”

buried it again

He buried the treasure so that no one else would find it before he could buy the field.

buy that field

After he bought the field, he could openly search for all of the treasure, and it would all be his.

34:05



“The kingdom of God is also like **a perfect pearl** of great value. When **a pearl merchant** found it, he sold all that he had so he could buy it.”

a perfect pearl

This refers to a pearl that does not have any defects, and is therefore very valuable.

a pearl merchant

This refers to a person whose business is buying and selling pearls.

34:06



There were some people who thought God would accept them because they were doing good things. These people **despised others** who did not do those good things. So Jesus told them this story: "There were two men, both of whom went to **the Temple** to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader."

despised others

This means they considered other people to be inferior to themselves.

the Temple

This refers to the Jewish Temple in Jerusalem.

34:07



“The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like **that tax collector** over there.’”

that tax collector

The Jews considered the tax collectors to be sinners because they worked for the Romans, collecting taxes from fellow Jews.

34:08



“For example, **I fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”

I fast

The religious ruler believed that doing this would earn favor with God.

34:09



“But the tax collector **stood far away** from the religious leader. He **did not even look up to heaven**. Instead, **he pounded on his chest with his fist** and prayed, “God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.””

stood far away

He did not think he was worthy to come close to the religious leader.

did not even look up to heaven

The word **up** indicates that people normally looked up to heaven when praying to God, but that this man did not because he was so ashamed of his sin.

he pounded on his chest with his fist

The tax collector pounded on his chest as a sign that he was very sorry that he had sinned.

34:10



Then Jesus said, "I tell you, God heard the tax collector's prayer, and **declared him to be righteous rather than the religious leader**. God will dishonor everyone who is proud, but he will honor whoever humbles himself."

declared him to be righteous

Even though the tax collector was a sinner, God was merciful to him because of his humility and repentance.

rather than the religious leader

God did not accept the prayer of the religious leader because he prayed in a proud way. The religious leader did not understand that he was also a sinner.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What was Jesus talking about when he told his stories?

He was talking about the kingdom of God (See: [34:01](#)).

2. How did Jesus describe the mustard seed?

The mustard seed was the smallest of all the seeds that people planted at that time (See: [34:01](#)).

3. What happens to the mustard seed when it grows?

The mustard seed becomes bigger than other garden plants, so that even birds nest in its branches (See: [34:02](#)).

4. What happens to the yeast that a woman mixes into bread dough?

It spreads throughout the dough (See: [34:03](#)).

5. What did the man do when he found the treasure in a field?

He was filled with joy, and went and sold everything he had so he could buy that field (See: [34:04](#)).

6. What did the merchant do when he found a perfect pearl?

He sold all that he had so he could buy that pearl (See: [34:05](#)).

7. How did the religious leader pray?

He thanked God that he was not a sinner like other men (See: [34:07](#)).

8. How did the tax collector pray?

He asked God to be merciful to him because he was a sinner (See: [34:09](#)).

9. Which man did God declare to be righteous?

Jesus said that God declared the tax collector to be righteous (See: [34:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. In what way is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?

The kingdom of God will be small when it begins, but it will grow to become larger than all other kingdoms of the world.

2. In what way is the kingdom of God like yeast?

The kingdom of God will spread throughout the world.

3. In what way is the kingdom of God like a treasure hidden in a field?

The kingdom of God is so valuable that a person should be willing to sell everything they own in order to obtain it, and then rejoice.

4. What wrong understanding did some people have about who God would accept?

Some people thought God would accept them because they did good things. Jesus told the story of the two men in order to correct their wrong understanding.

5. Why might the people who heard the story of the two men be surprised about who God accepted?

The people of that time thought tax collectors were evil and religious rulers were good. They did not understand that everyone is a sinner, and that God only accepts the people who humble themselves and confess that they are sinners.

Summary

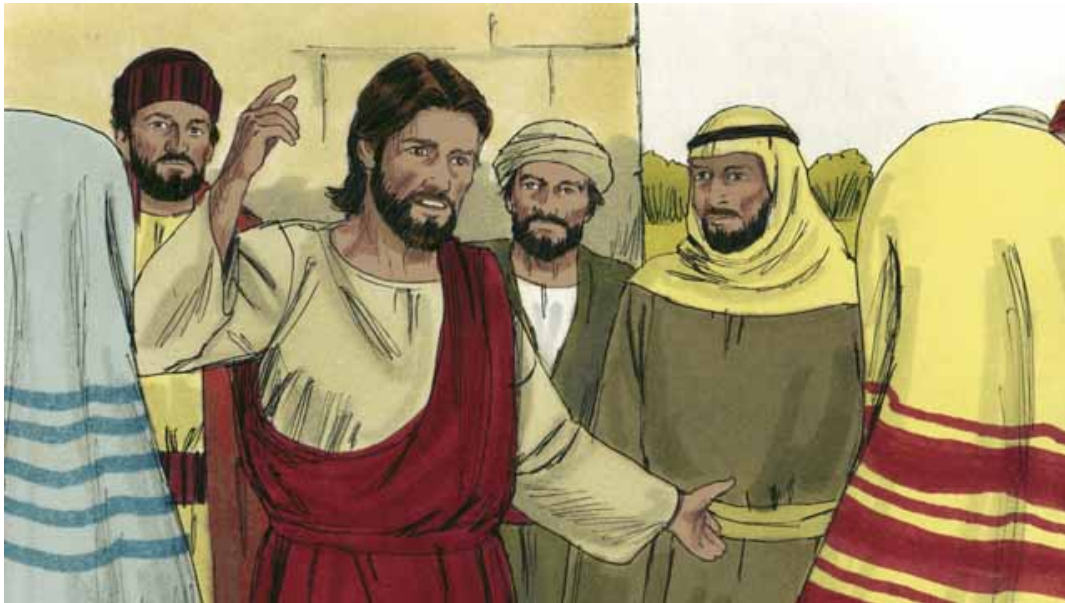
Jesus told five stories to explain what the kingdom of God is like. The stories of the mustard seed and the yeast showed that the kingdom of God will begin small, but will become larger than all other kingdoms, filling the whole earth. The stories of the treasure and the perfect pearl showed that the kingdom of God is so valuable that people should be willing to sell all they own in order to obtain it. And the story of the two men who prayed showed that God will only accept into his kingdom people who confess their sins. He will not accept proud people who trust in their good works instead of confessing their sins.

35. The Story of the Compassionate Father

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Luke 15

35:01



One day, Jesus was teaching many people who had gathered to hear him. These people were **tax collectors** and also other people who did not try to obey the Law of Moses.

tax collectors

The tax collectors were Jews who collected taxes for the Romans. The Jews hated them for that, and because they often collected higher taxes than the Romans required, keeping the difference for themselves.

35:02



Some **religious leaders** saw Jesus talking to these people as friends. So they began to tell each other that he was doing wrong. Jesus heard them talk, so he told them this story.

religious leaders

This refers to the Jewish religious officials.

35:03



"There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, **I want my inheritance now!**' So the father **divided his property** between his two sons."

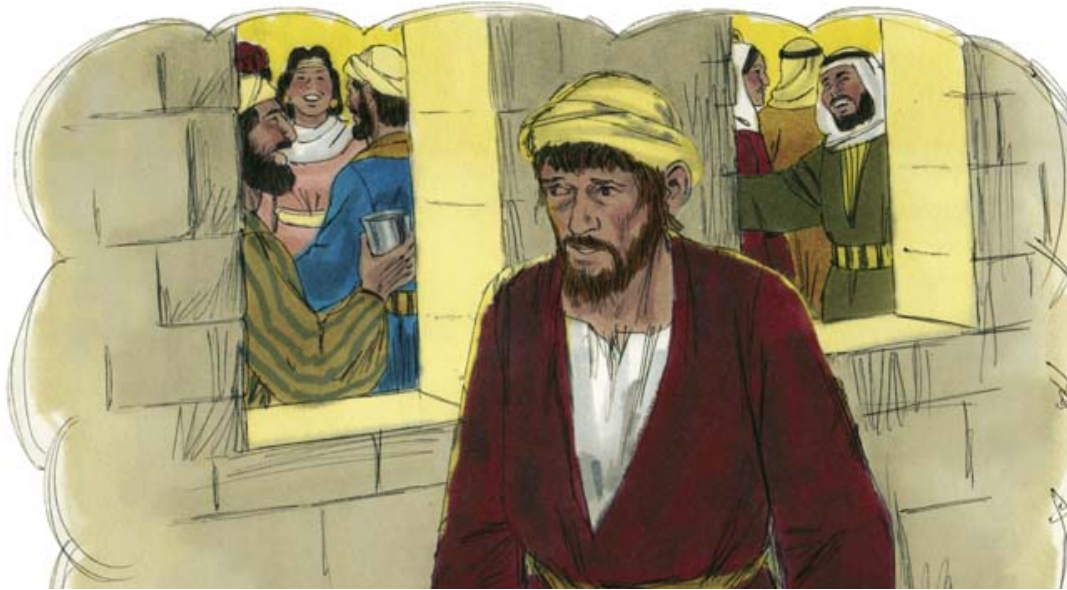
I want my inheritance now!

This was not normal. Sons received their inheritance when their fathers died.

divided his property

The father was extremely generous to divide his property while he was still alive. An older son always received twice as much inheritance as a younger son.

35:04



"Soon the younger son gathered all that he had and went far away and wasted his money in sinful living."
(No study notes for this frame)

35:05



“After that, a severe famine occurred in the land where the younger son was, and he had no money to buy food. So he took the only job he could find, **feeding pigs**. He was so miserable and hungry that he wanted to eat the pigs’ food.”

feeding pigs

The Law of Moses did not allow Jews to touch pigs. This was a shameful job for a Jewish man.

35:06

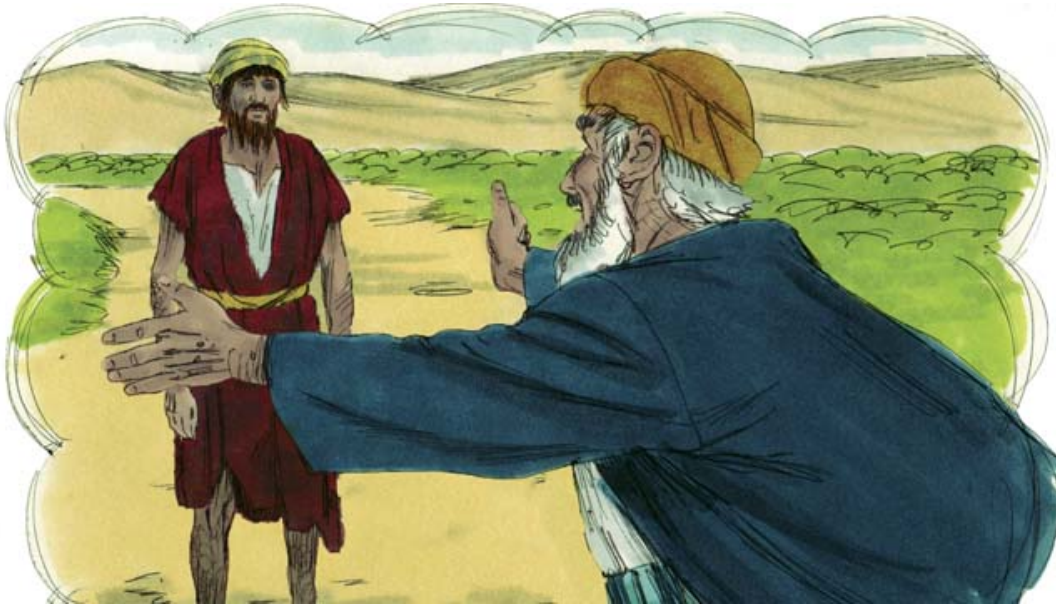


“Finally, the younger son said to himself, ‘What am I doing? All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be **one of his servants.**’”

one of his servants

The younger son assumed that his father would not accept him as his son, but might let him be a servant.

35:07

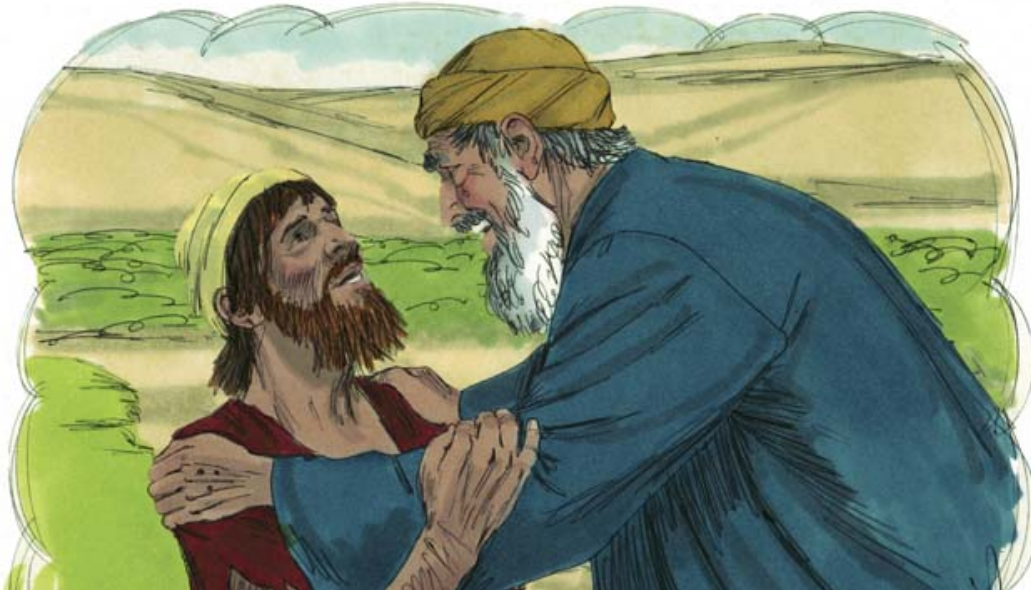


“So the younger son started back towards his father’s home. When he was still far away, his father saw him and felt compassion for him. **He ran to his son** and hugged him and kissed him.”

He ran to his son

Older men did not run to meet people. The father was so excited to see his son that he ignored the culture and ran to kiss and hug his son.

35:08



“The son said, ‘Father, **I have sinned against God** and against you. **I am not worthy to be your son.**’”

I have sinned against God

The son had offended God, as well as his father by doing the things that he did (See: [35:03](#), [35:04](#)).

I am not worthy to be your son

The younger son did not have time to ask to be a servant before his father interrupted him (See: [35:06](#)).

35:09



“But his father told one of his servants, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my son! **Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet.** Then **kill the best calf** so we can have a feast and celebrate, because my son was dead, but now he is alive! He was lost, but now we have found him!’”

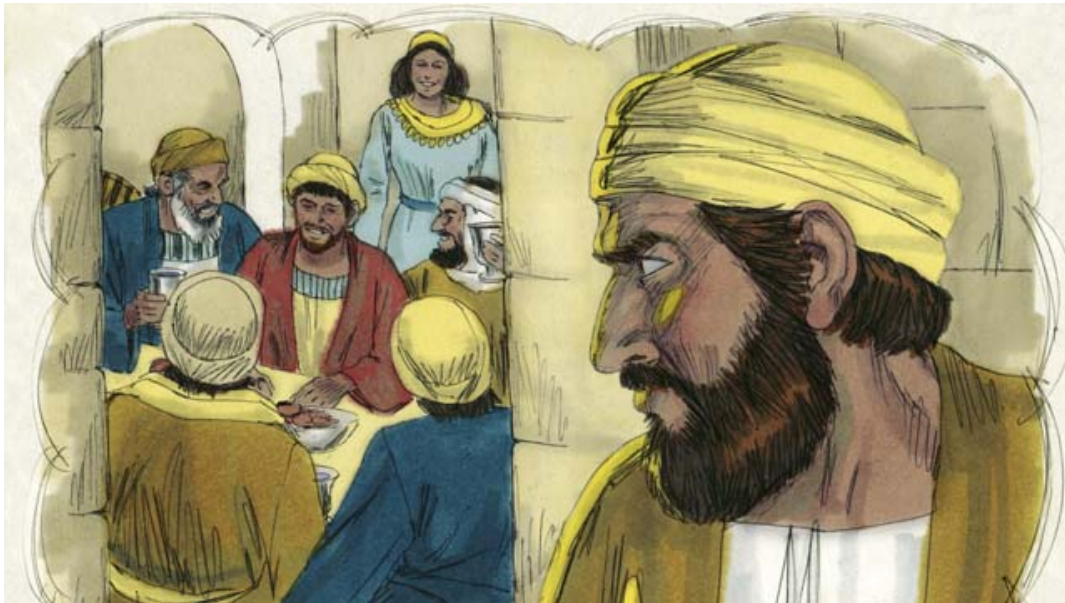
Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet

A ring, sandals, and a fine clothes were symbols that showed the son was a member of the family and not a servant.

kill the best calf

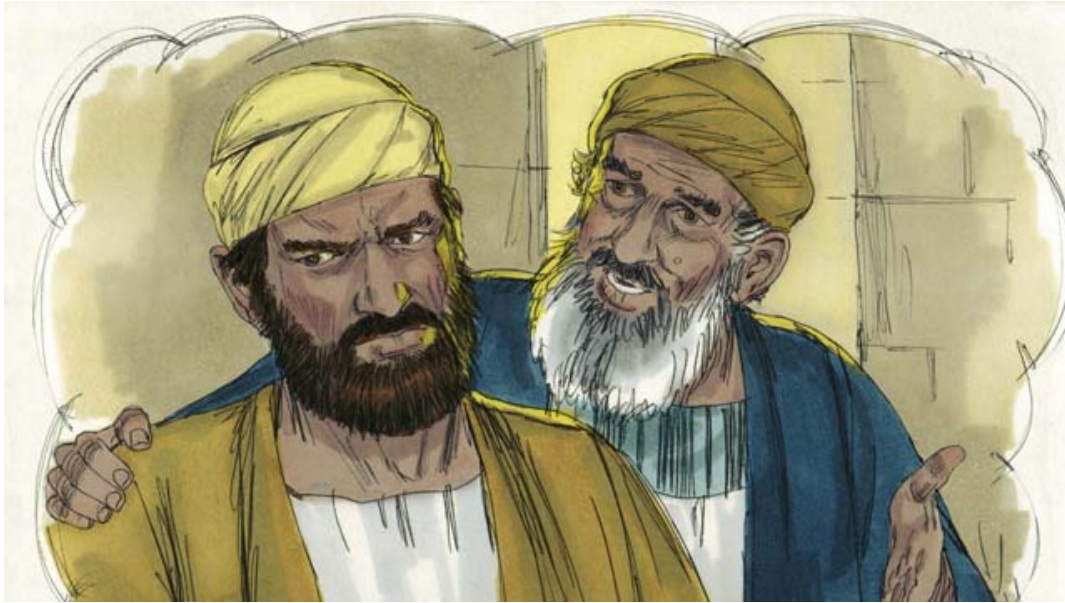
The Jews of that time often fed one of their calves special food so that it would be especially good to eat at a feast or other special occasion.

35:10



“So the people began to celebrate. Before long, the older son came home from working in the field. He heard the music and dancing and wondered what was happening.”
(No study notes for this frame)

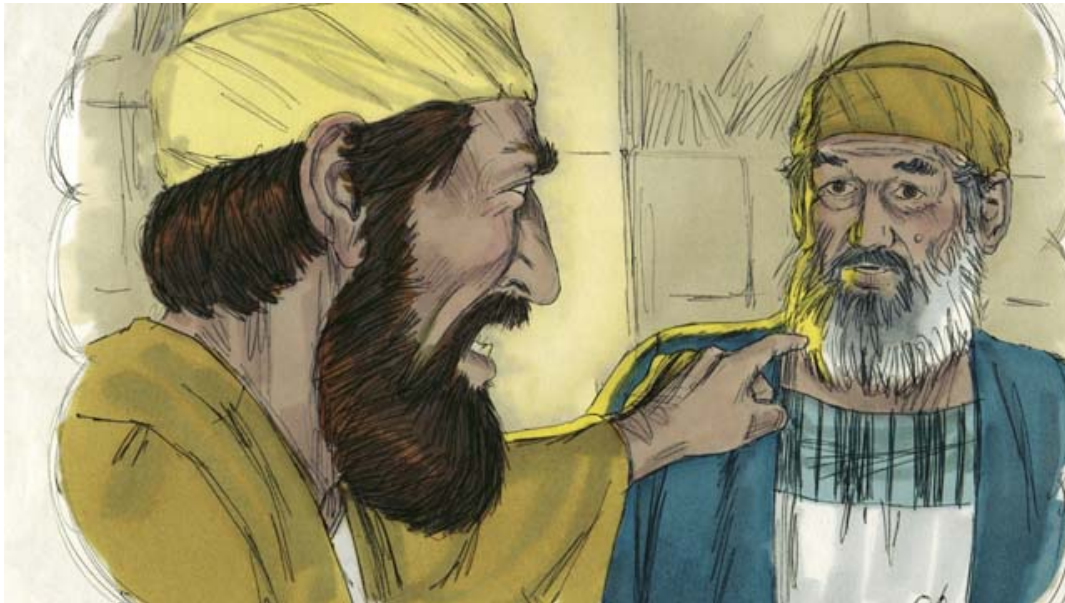
35:11



"When the older son found out that they were celebrating because his brother had come home, he was very angry and would not go into the house. His father came out and begged him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused."

(No study notes for this frame)

35:12



"The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still **you did not give me even one small goat** so I could celebrate with my friends. But **this son of yours** has wasted your money doing sinful things. When he came home, you killed the best calf to celebrate!'"

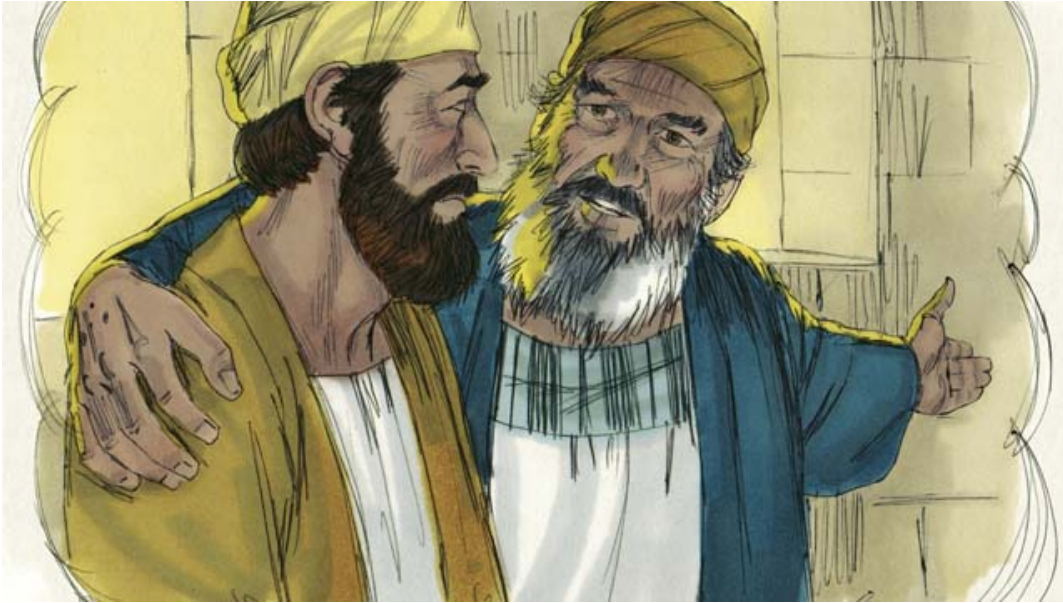
you did not give me even one small goat

A small goat was much less expensive than the best calf. The older brother was angry, and ignored the fact that his father had already given him twice the inheritance that he gave to the younger brother (See: [35:03](#)).

this son of yours

The older son was so angry that he did not speak of the younger son as his own brother.

35:13



"The father answered, 'My son, you are always with me, and **everything I have is yours**. But it is right for us to celebrate because **your brother was dead, but now is alive**. He was lost, but now we have found him!'"

everything I have is yours

The father reminded his older son that he had already given him all of his possessions as an inheritance (See: [35:03](#)).

your brother

The father reminds his older son that his sons are also brothers.

was dead, but now is alive

The younger son was so far away and separated from his family that it was as if he were dead. But now that he had returned, it was as if he were alive again (See: [35:09](#)).

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did the religious leaders criticize Jesus?

The religious leaders criticized Jesus because he treated the tax collectors and sinners as friends (See: [35:02](#)).

2. Why did the man's younger son decide to return to his father?

The younger son had no money, and was so hungry that he wanted to eat the food he gave to the pigs. He realized that the servants of his father lived better than that (See: [35:05](#), [35:06](#)).

3. What did the man's younger son want his father to do for him when he returned home?

The man's younger son wanted his father to treat him as a servant, and not as a son (See: [35:06](#), [35:08](#)).

4. What did the father do when he saw his younger son?

The father was so happy that he ran to his younger son and hugged and kissed him (See: [35:07](#)).

5. What did the man's younger son tell his father after his father greeted him?

The man's younger son told his father that he had sinned against his father and against God, and that he was not worthy to be his father's son (See: [35:08](#)).

6. Why did the father need to go out to his older son?

The father went out to his older son because the older son would not come into the house where they were celebrating that his younger brother had returned (See: [35:11](#)).

7. Why was the man's older son angry with his father?

The man's older son was angry with his father because he thought his father treated his younger son better than he treated his older son. The man's older son thought his father should treat him better because he stayed home and worked while his younger brother went away and wasted his money (See: [35:12](#)).

8. Why should the father and his older son celebrate?

The father told his older son that they should celebrate because his younger brother had returned to them alive. This was a time to rejoice, rather than a time to be angry about the past (See: [35:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did the man's younger son demand that his father give him his inheritance while his father was still alive?

Perhaps the man's younger son only wanted his father's possessions, and was not interested in honoring his father (See: [35:03](#)).

2. Why do you think the father agreed to give his inheritance to his sons while he was still alive?

It seems that the father loved his sons more than he loved his possessions (See: [35:03](#)).

3. How is the younger son an example of people who run away from God and live according to their desires?

Many people are like the younger son. They want to live according to their own desires rather than to be friends with God the Father.

Do you think the father should have treated his younger son well when he returned?

4.

Many people would think the father should have rejected his younger son since that son abandoned him. However, the father in the story was merciful, just as God the Father is merciful. He continued to love his son and accepted him with joy when he returned.

5. How should people who have sinned, but who now want to come to God, expect God to treat them?

Jesus told this story to people who had sinned, but who were then coming to God. He wanted them to know that God will accept them when they come to him.

6. Why do you think some believers want to make it difficult for people who have sinned to come to God?

Some believers do not think it is fair that God accepts people who have sinned without punishing them. In this story, Jesus showed that God will not punish people who have sinned when they come to him and ask him to forgive them.

Summary

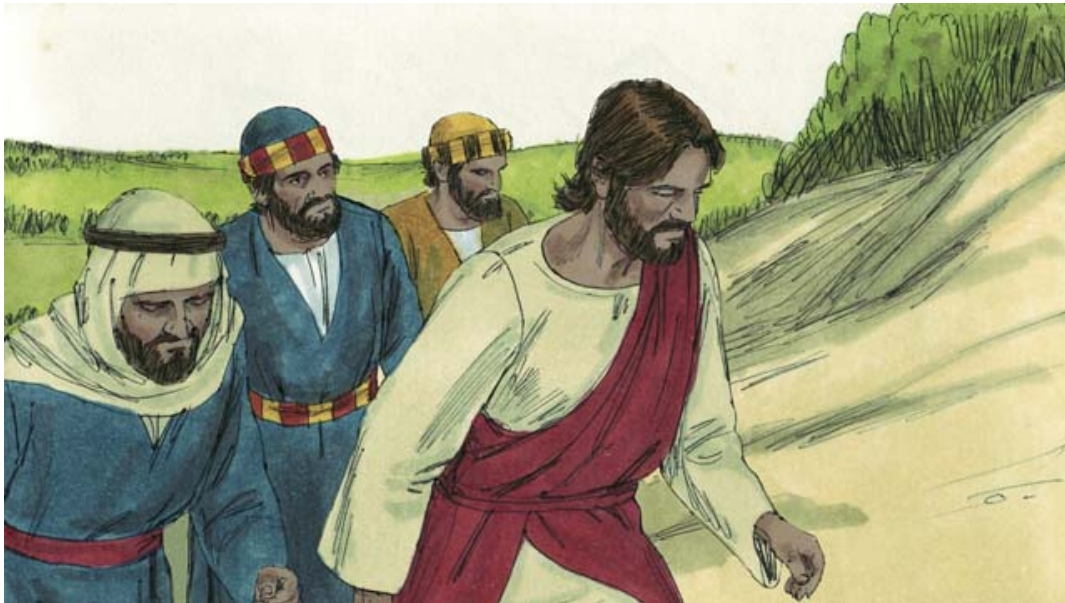
The religious leaders worked hard to try to please God. They were angry that Jesus treated tax collectors and sinners as friends when they came to listen to his teaching. So Jesus told this story to show them why God was happy when sinners returned to him. The father in the story represents God the Father. The older son represents the religious leaders. The younger son represents the tax collectors who sinned, but were now coming back to God. Jesus wanted the religious leaders to know that it was right to celebrate that these sinners were coming to God.

36. The Transfiguration

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 17:1-9; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36

36:01

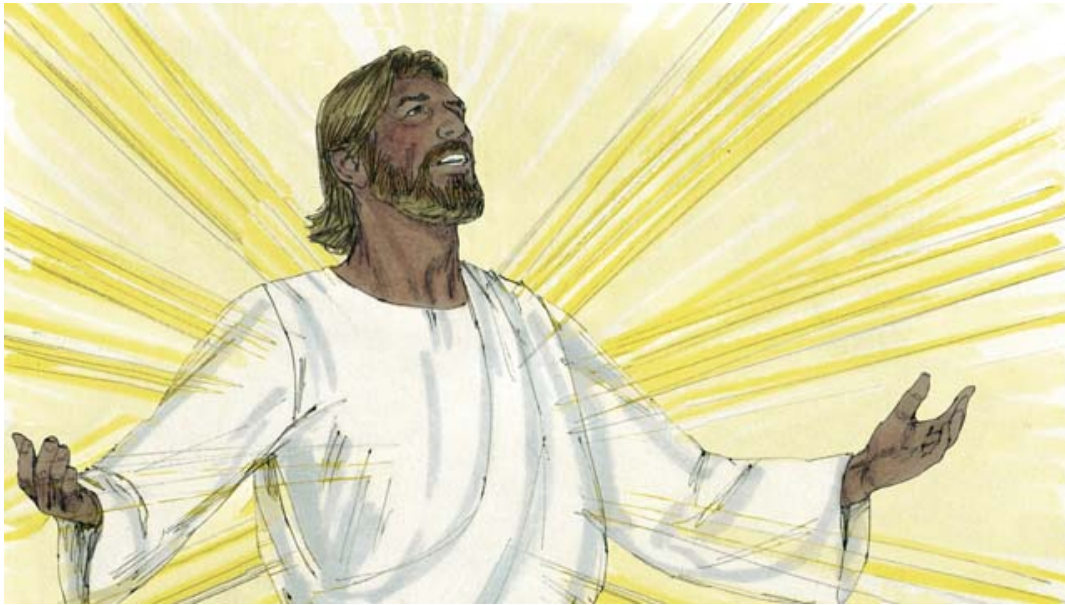


One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, **James**, and John, with him. (The disciple named John was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves to pray.

James

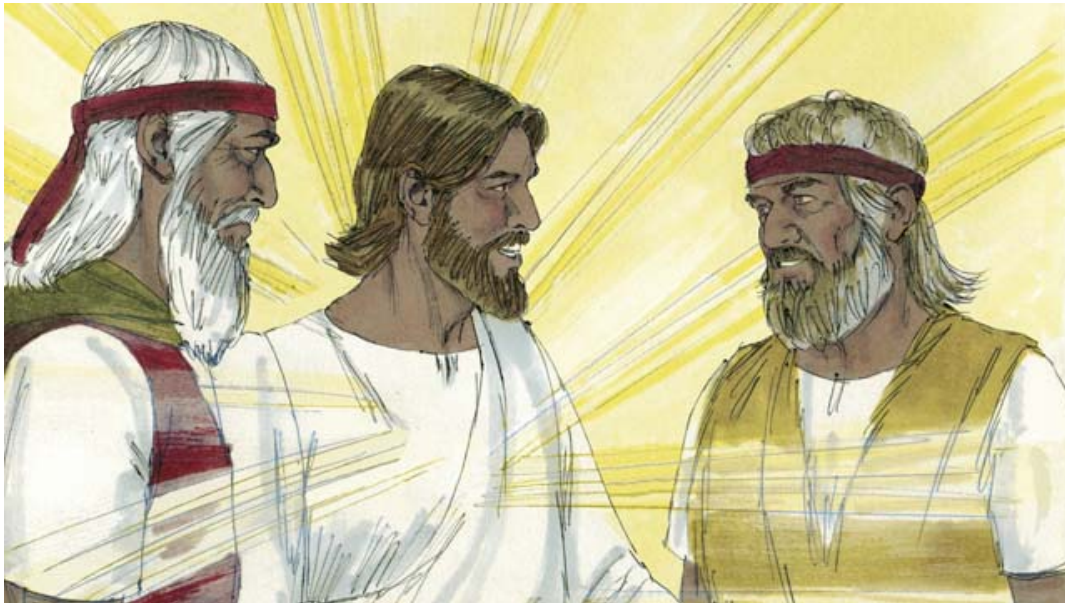
This is a different James than the one who wrote the Book of James in the Bible.

36:02



As Jesus was praying, his face became as bright as the sun. His clothes became as white as light, whiter than anyone on earth could make them.
(No study notes for this frame)

36:03



Then **Moses and the prophet Elijah** appeared. These men had lived on the earth hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death, because he would soon die in Jerusalem.

Moses and the prophet Elijah

Moses gave the law to Israel, and Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Israel. These two men represented the way God spoke to Israel in the Old Testament.

36:04



As Moses and Elijah were talking with Jesus, Peter said to Jesus, "It is good for us to be here. Let us make three **shelters**, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." But Peter **did not know what he was saying**.

shelters

These were the small, individual, temporary shelters the Jews made from tree branches during an annual Jewish holiday.

did not know what he was saying

Peter spoke without thinking clearly because he was so excited.

36:05



As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down and surrounded them. Then they heard **a voice coming from the cloud**. It said, **“This is my Son whom I love. I am pleased with him. Listen to him.”** The three disciples were terrified and fell on the ground.

a voice coming from the cloud

God spoke to them from the cloud.

This is my Son whom I love

This is the same thing that God had said about Jesus after John the Baptist baptized him in [24:08](#).

Listen to him

Moses and the prophets were important, but God told the disciples that Jesus was more important, and that they should honor what he said more than they honored Moses and the prophets.

36:06

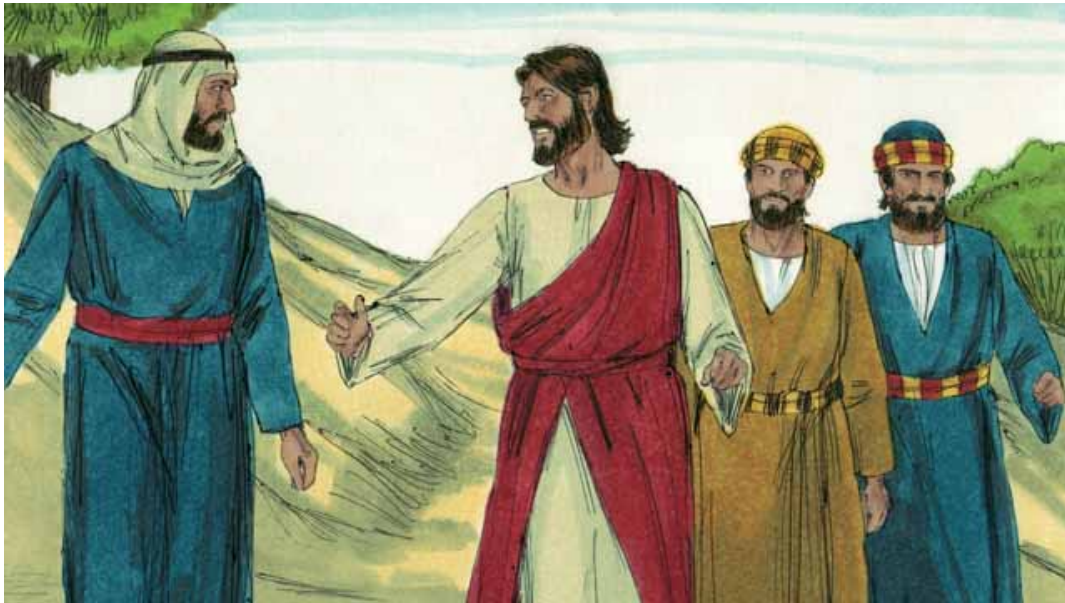


Then Jesus touched them and said, "Do not be afraid. Get up." When they looked around, **the only one still there was Jesus.**

the only one still there was Jesus

Moses and Elijah had gone away, leaving only Jesus with the disciples.

36:07



Jesus and the three disciples went back down the mountain. Then Jesus said to them, “**Do not tell anyone yet** about what happened here. I will soon die and then come back to life. After that, you may tell people.”

Do not tell anyone yet

Jesus knew that the people would not yet believe who he was, but later, when he came back to life, many people would believe.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Who did Jesus take with him when he went up the mountain to pray?

He took Peter, James, and John (See: [36:01](#)).

2. In what way did Jesus' face change as he was praying?

His face became as bright as the sun (See: [36:02](#)).

3. In what way did Jesus' clothes change as he was praying?

His clothes became as white as light, whiter than anyone on earth could make them (See: [36:02](#)).

4. Who appeared with Jesus on the mountain?

Moses and the prophet Elijah appeared with him (See: [36:03](#)).

5. What were Jesus, Moses, and Elijah talking about?

They were talking about Jesus' death, which would soon happen in Jerusalem (See: [36:03](#)).

6. What did Peter offer to do for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah?

Peter offered to build three shelters for them (See: [36:04](#)).

7. Who answered Peter?

God the Father answered as a voice from heaven (See: [36:05](#)).

8. What did God the Father tell Peter to do?

God said that Peter should listen to Jesus, because he was God's Son whom he loved, and God was pleased with him (See: [36:05](#)).

9. What did the disciples do when they heard God's voice?

The disciples fell down on the ground in fear (See: [36:05](#)).

10. What did the disciples see when Jesus told them to get up?

They no longer saw anyone there except Jesus (See: [36:06](#)).

11. When would Jesus allow the disciples to tell people what had happened on the mountain?

Jesus told the disciples that after he would die and come back to life, they could then tell people what had happened on the mountain (See: [36:07](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Jesus took only Peter, James, and John with him up the mountain, and not the other disciples?

Jesus allowed Peter, James, and John to see and hear more things than the other disciples. This may have been because they would become the highest leaders of the early church.

2. Why do you think the appearance of Jesus changed?

While Jesus was on earth, he appeared as a normal person. However, he was also God. On the mountain, he allowed the disciples to see a glimpse of his divine nature. Both his face and his clothes changed to the form they have in heaven.

3. Why is it significant that Moses and Elijah were the two men who were talking with Jesus?

Moses represents all the law of God, and Elijah represents all the Old Testament prophets who prophesied that the Messiah would come and die in order to save people. When they appeared with Jesus, that showed that Jesus was the Messiah.

4. Why was it not proper for Peter to make shelters for Jesus, Moses, and Elijah?

Peter wanted to make three shelters in order to honor Jesus, Moses, and Elijah as equals. But they were not equal. Jesus was the Messiah and the Son of God. He was greater than Moses and Elijah. Therefore, God the Father spoke from heaven and told Peter to listen only to Jesus.

5. Why do you think Jesus did not allow the disciples to tell anyone what had happened on the mountain right away?

The disciples did not yet understand what these things meant. They would not be able to explain them properly at that time. However, after Jesus would die and come back to life again, they would understand these things, and could explain to other people what these things meant.

Summary

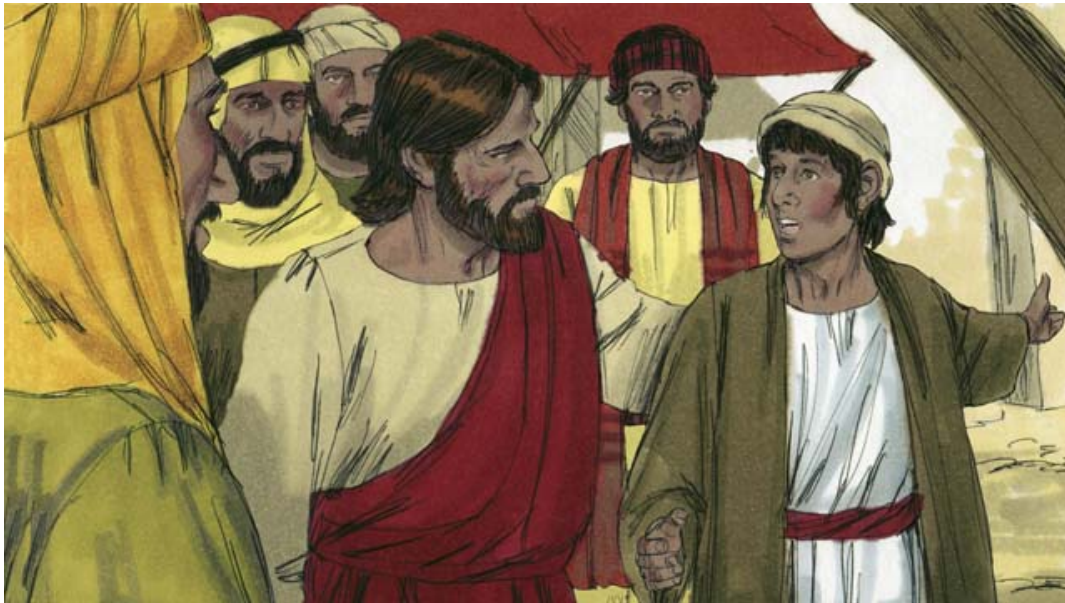
Jesus took only his closest disciples—Peter, James, and John—up the mountain with him. He then allowed them to see him briefly change to his divine appearance and talk with Moses and Elijah about his coming death. The disciples were not yet able to understand what these things meant. But after the death and resurrection of Jesus, they would understand that Jesus was the Messiah and the Son of God. They would then be able to explain to other people that God sent his Son Jesus as the Messiah to pay the penalty for the sins of other people.

37. Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead

Study Notes

A Bible story from: John 11:1-46

37:01



There was a man named Lazarus. He had two sisters named **Mary** and Martha. They were all close friends of Jesus. One day someone told Jesus that Lazarus was very sick. When Jesus heard this, he said, **“This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying.** Instead, it will cause people to honor God.”

Mary

Jesus’ mother was also named Mary. This was a different woman.

This sickness will not end with Lazarus dying

Jesus’ disciples probably thought this meant that Lazarus would not die. But Jesus knew that, although Lazarus would die from his sickness, he would become alive again.

37:02



Jesus loved his friends, **but he waited where he was for two days**. After those two days he said to his disciples, "Let's go back to **Judea**." "But Teacher," the disciples answered, "just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!" Jesus said, "Our friend Lazarus **has fallen asleep, and I must wake him**."

but he waited where he was for two days

Jesus stayed where he was for two days, even though they wanted him to go and heal Lazarus. He was waiting for Lazarus to die.

Judea

This refers to the southern section of Israel, which was settled by the tribe of Judah.

has fallen asleep, and I must wake him

When Jesus spoke about sleeping, he was talking about death. However, the disciples did not understand that yet.

37:03



Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if Lazarus is sleeping, then **he will get better.**" Then Jesus told them plainly, "Lazarus is dead. **I am glad** that I was not there, so that you may believe in me."

he will get better

The disciples thought there was no reason for them to go to Lazarus now, since he was getting well.

I am glad

This did not mean he was happy that Lazarus died, but rather that he was happy that God was going to show how great he is.

37:04



When Jesus arrived at Lazarus' hometown, Lazarus had already been dead for four days. **Martha** went out to meet Jesus and said, "Master, if only you had been here, **my brother would not have died**. But I believe God will give you whatever you ask from him."

Martha

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

my brother would not have died

Martha believed that Jesus could have prevented her brother from dying.

37:05



Jesus replied, "**I am the Resurrection and the Life.** Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me **will never die.** Do you believe this?" Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the Son of God."

I am the Resurrection and the Life

This is one of several very powerful **I am** statements in which Jesus says something about his essential nature. In this one, Jesus indicates that he is the provider or source of resurrection and life.

will never die

That means they will live forever, even if they die for a short time.

37:06



Then **Mary** arrived. She **fell at the feet of Jesus** and said, "Master, if only you had been here, **my brother would not have died.**" Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the tomb. Come and see." Then Jesus wept.

Mary

This was the same woman as in [37:01](#), not the mother of Jesus.

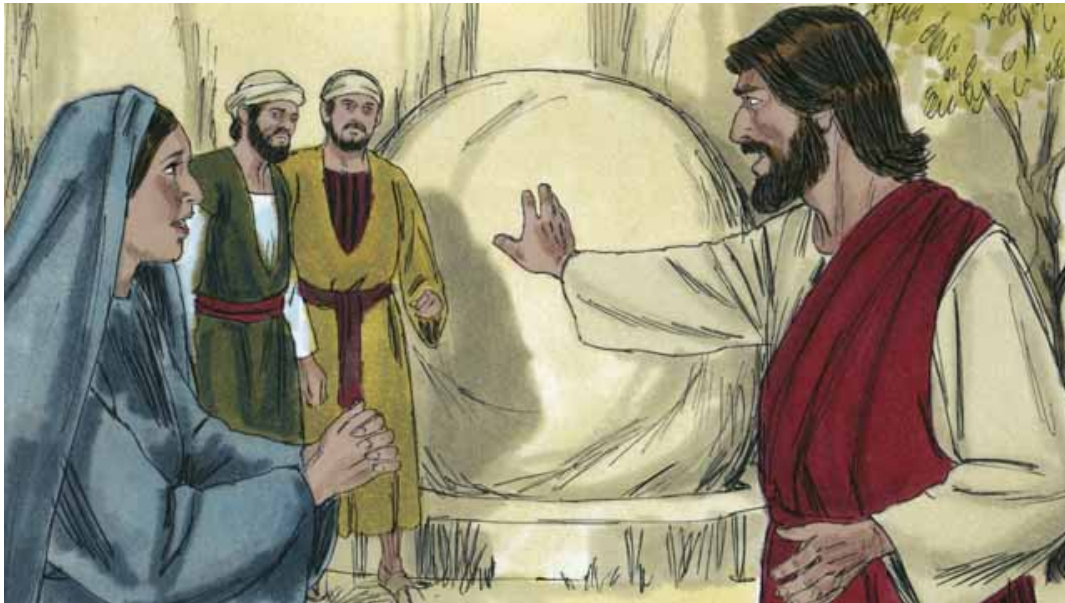
fell at the feet of Jesus

Mary knelt down at Jesus' feet as a sign of respect.

my brother would not have died

Like Martha in [37:04](#), Mary also believed that Jesus could have kept her brother from dying.

37:07



The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening. When Jesus arrived at the tomb, **he told them**, "Roll the stone away." But **Martha** said, "He has been dead for four days. There will be a bad smell."

he told them

He was probably not telling Mary and Martha to roll the large stone away. He was speaking to the men who were with them.

Martha

Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary (See: [37:01](#)).

37:08



Jesus answered, "**Did I not tell you** that you would **see God's power** if you believe in me?" So they **rolled the stone away**.

Did I not tell you

This could mean 'Remember that I told you.' Jesus is not asking this question in order to get an answer, so some languages should translate this as a command.

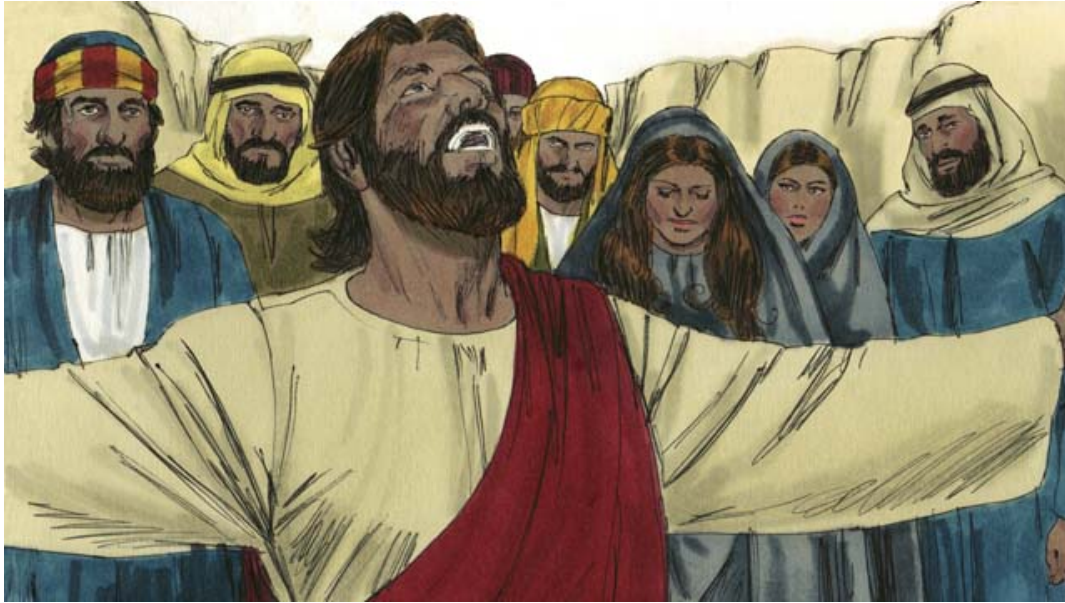
see God's power

This could mean 'see the power of God displayed' or 'see God show how powerful he is.'

rolled the stone away

Some languages should say: "rolled the stone away from the opening of the tomb."

37:09



Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me. I know you always listen to me, but I say this in order to help all these people standing here, so that they will believe you sent me." Then Jesus shouted, "Lazarus, come out!"

(No study notes for this frame)

37:10

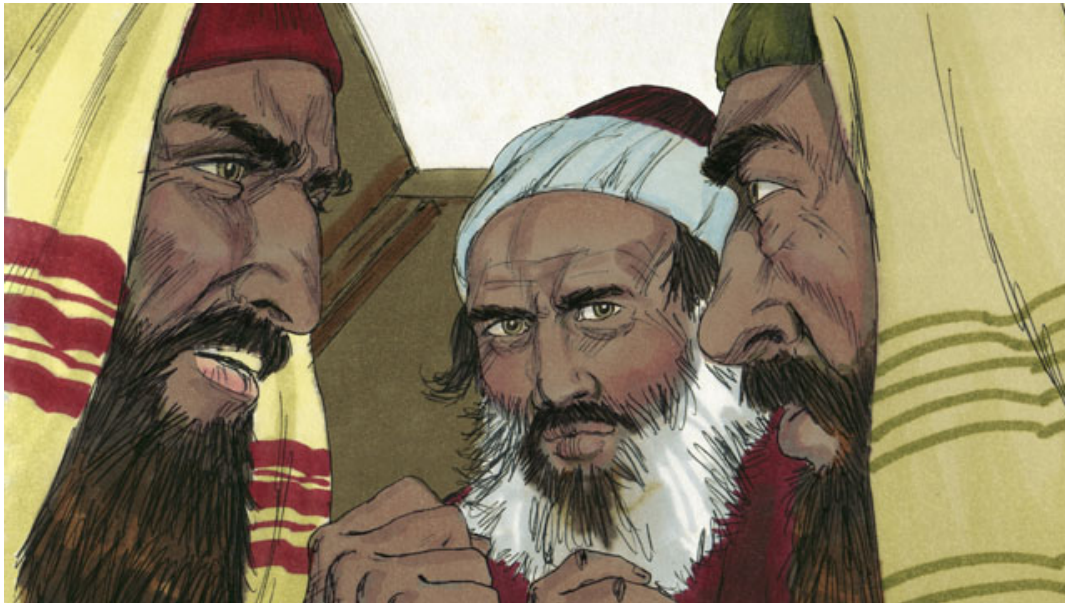


So Lazarus came out! He was still wrapped in **grave clothes**. Jesus told them, "Help him take off those grave clothes and release him!" Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.

grave clothes

This refers to the strips of cloth that the Jews wrapped around dead bodies before they buried them.

37:11



But the religious leaders of the Jews **envied** Jesus, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.

envied

The religious leaders were jealous that the people were listening to Jesus instead of listening to them.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Jesus say would be the result of Lazarus being sick?

He said that Lazarus' illness would cause people to honor God (See: [37:01](#)).

2. How long did Jesus wait before he went to see Lazarus?

Jesus waited two days in the place where he was (See: [37:02](#)).

3. What did Jesus mean when he said that Lazarus was sleeping?

When Jesus said Lazarus was sleeping, he was using a polite way to say that Lazarus was dead (See: [37:02](#), [37:03](#)).

4. How long had Lazarus been dead when Jesus finally arrived at his home?

Lazarus had already been dead for four days by that time (See: [37:04](#)).

5. What title did Jesus give to himself when he spoke to Martha?

Jesus said that he was the Resurrection and the Life (See: [37:05](#)).

6. Who did Martha say that Jesus was?

She said he was the Messiah, the Son of God (See: [37:05](#)).

7. Why was Martha afraid to open the tomb?

She was afraid that the body of Lazarus would smell bad because he had been dead for four days (See: [37:07](#)).

8. What did Jesus say to his Father was the reason that he was praying to his Father?

Jesus said he was praying to his Father so that the people standing around would believe that God had sent Jesus into the world (See: [37:08](#)).

9. What did Lazarus do when Jesus told him to come out of the tomb?

Lazarus became alive again and came out of the tomb, still wrapped in the grave clothes (See: [37:10](#)).

10. Why did the religious leaders of the Jews plan to kill Jesus and Lazarus?

They envied Jesus, because the people believed in him (See: [37:11](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Jesus spoke about Lazarus' death as if Lazarus were asleep?

Lazarus had died, but he would not remain dead. Jesus knew that he would make Lazarus alive again. Jesus perhaps said Lazarus was asleep in order to show that his death was temporary. In the same way, God speaks of all believers who die as being asleep. This encourages followers of Jesus when a fellow believer dies.

2. Why did Jesus wait for two days before he went to Lazarus?

Jesus did not want his friend Lazarus to suffer, or his sisters to grieve. But the most important thing to Jesus was to honor God. Therefore, Jesus allowed Lazarus, Martha, and Mary to suffer so that God would be honored when Jesus made Lazarus alive again. For followers of Jesus, suffering is temporary, and can bring glory to God.

3. Why were the disciples surprised that Jesus wanted to go to Lazarus in Judea?

The Jewish leaders in Judea wanted to kill Jesus. However, Jesus was not afraid to die. In fact, he came to earth in order to die for sinners. Therefore, he was willing to go to Judea even though he knew they wanted to kill him there.

4. In what way was the faith of Martha and Mary limited?

Martha and Mary both believed that Jesus was able to prevent Lazarus from dying. However, neither of them understood that Jesus could raise Lazarus to life even after he had died.

5. Why do you think the religious leaders did not believe in Jesus even after he raised Lazarus from the dead?

The religious leaders hated Jesus because people listened to Jesus instead of to them. They wanted power over people so badly that they would not even believe in him when he performed a miracle that only God can do. Their sin kept them from seeing that Jesus was God.

Summary

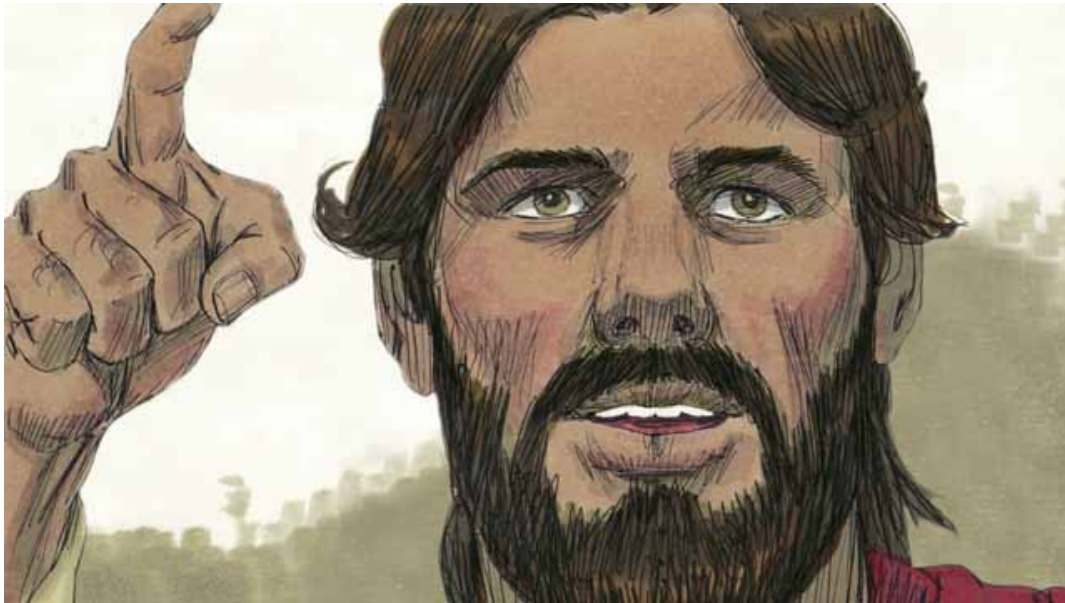
Jesus honored God with everything he did. He was not afraid of people who wanted to kill him. He was willing to allow Lazarus to die even though it made Martha, Mary, and Jesus himself very sad. The most important thing was to honor God. As a result, Martha, Mary, the disciples, and many others saw God work powerfully through Jesus to raise Lazarus to life again. This proved that Jesus was the Resurrection, the Life, the Messiah, and the Son of God. However, even these proofs did not stop the sinful religious leaders from hating Jesus and plotting to kill him.

38. Jesus Is Betrayed

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 26:14-56; Mark 14:10-50; Luke 22:1-53; John 18:1-11

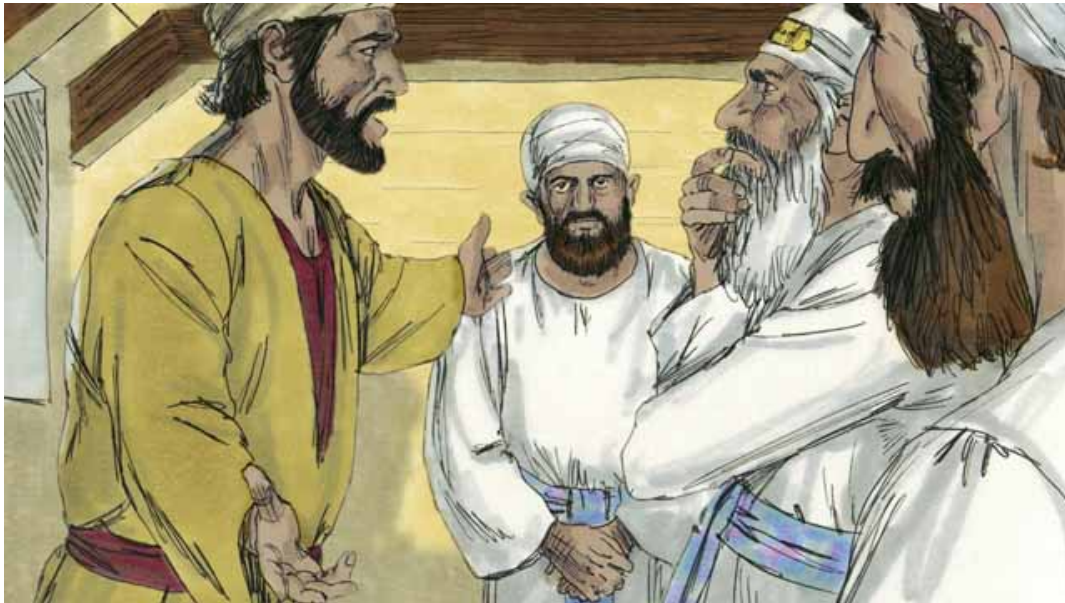
38:01



Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier. About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.

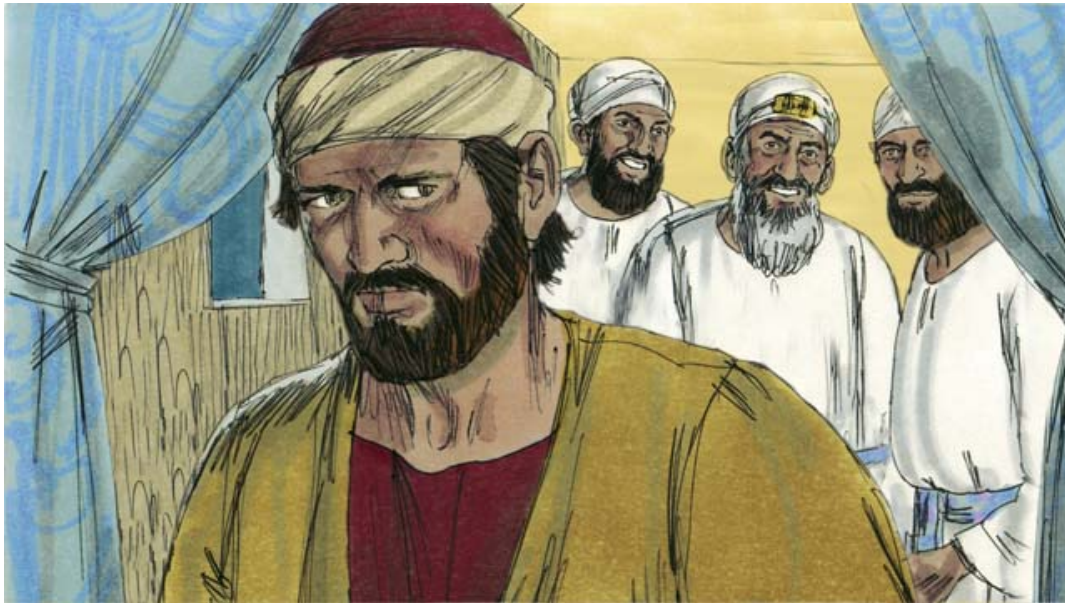
(No study notes for this frame)

38:02



One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. Judas was in charge of the apostles' moneybag, but he often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders. He offered to betray Jesus by identifying him to the authorities in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders did not accept that Jesus was the Messiah. He knew that they wanted to kill him.
(No study notes for this frame)

38:03



The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas **30 silver coins** to betray Jesus by handing him over to them. This happened just as the prophets said it would. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.

30 silver coins

Each of these coins were worth about four days' wages.

38:04



In Jerusalem, Jesus celebrated the Passover with his disciples. During the Passover meal, Jesus took some bread and **broke it**. He said, "Take and eat this. **This is my body, which I will give for you**. Do this to remember me." In this way, Jesus said that he would die for them, that he would sacrifice his body for them.

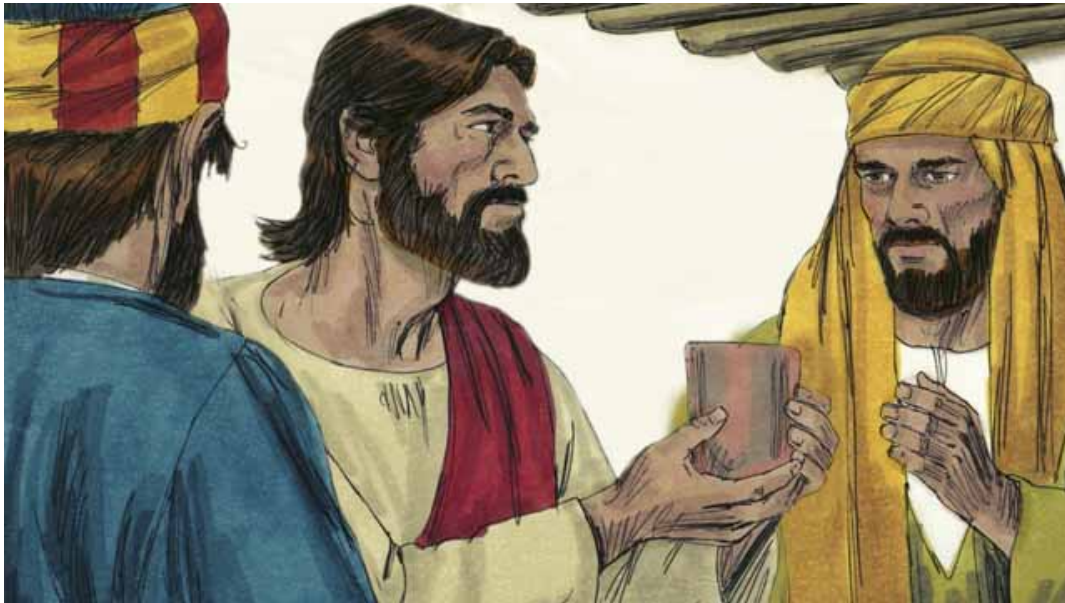
broke it

Jesus tore the flat loaf of bread into small pieces in order to share it among the disciples.

This is my body, which I will give for you

Jesus was referring to his death, which would happen soon.

38:05



Then Jesus picked up a cup of wine and said, "Drink this. It is **my blood of the New Covenant** that **I will pour out** so that God will forgive your sins. Do what I am doing now, to **remember me** every time you drink it."

my blood of the New Covenant

The shedding of Jesus' blood made the New Covenant possible.

I will pour out

Jesus would bleed as he was dying.

remember me

When his followers ate this ceremonial meal in the future, it would remind them of how Jesus died for them.

38:06



Then Jesus said to the disciples, "One of you will betray me." The disciples were shocked, and asked who would do such a thing. Jesus said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the betrayer." Then he gave the bread to Judas.

(No study notes for this frame)

38:07

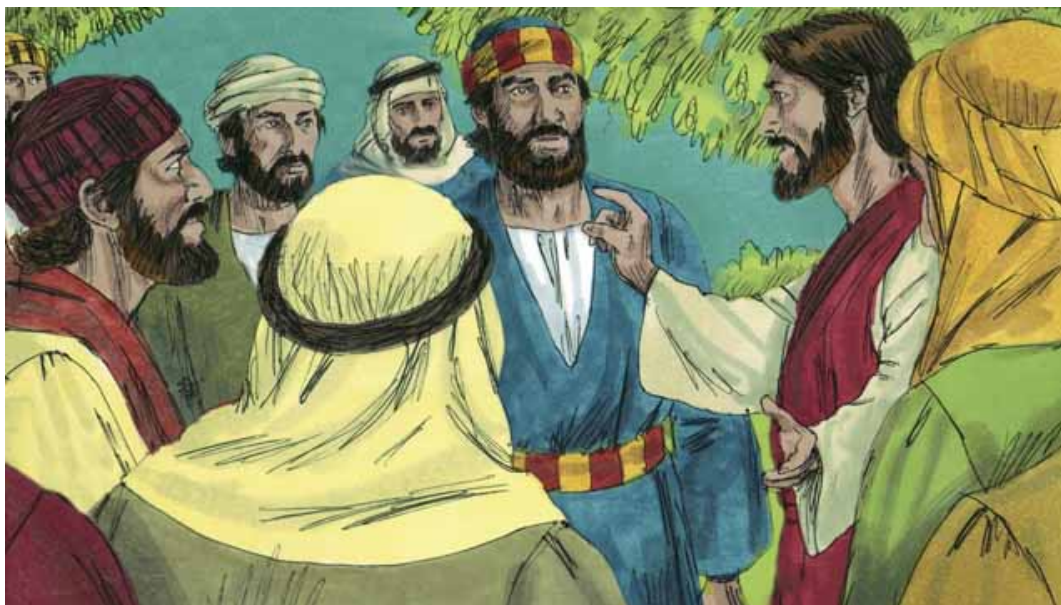


After Judas took the bread, **Satan entered into him**. Judas left and went to help the Jewish leaders arrest Jesus. It was nighttime.

Satan entered into him

At this time, Satan took control of Judas.

38:08



After the meal, Jesus and his disciples walked to the **Mount of Olives**. Jesus said, "You will all abandon me tonight. **It is written**, 'I will strike **the shepherd and all the sheep** will be scattered.'"

Mount of Olives

This is the name of a hill covered with olive trees, just outside the walls of the city of Jerusalem.

It is written

Jesus quoted a prophecy in the Old Testament that refers to Jesus' death and his followers' desertion.

the shepherd and all the sheep

Jesus is the shepherd in the prophecy, and his disciples who desert him are the sheep.

38:09



Peter replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants **to have all of you**, but I have prayed for you, Peter, **that your faith will not fail**. Even so, tonight, **before the rooster crows**, you will deny three times that you even know me."

to have all of you

Satan wanted to cause all of the disciples to be so afraid of being killed that they would abandon Jesus.

that your faith will not fail

Jesus prayed that Peter would not completely stop believing in Jesus.

before the rooster crows

Roosters normally crow at the first light of the new day.

38:10



Peter then said to Jesus, "Even if I must die, I will never deny you!" All the other disciples said the same thing.
(No study notes for this frame)

38:11



Then Jesus went with his disciples to **a place called Gethsemane**. Jesus told his disciples to pray that **they would not enter into temptation**. Then Jesus went to pray by himself.

a place called Gethsemane

Gethsemane was a garden at the foot of the Mount of Olives.

they would not enter into temptation

This could mean 'they would not be tempted' or 'Satan would not tempt them.'

38:12



Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to **drink this cup of suffering**. But if there is no other way for people’s sins to be forgiven, then **let your will be done**.” Jesus was very troubled and **his sweat was like drops of blood**. God sent an angel to strengthen him.

drink this cup of suffering

This is a figure of speech that means ‘Jesus would endure this suffering.’

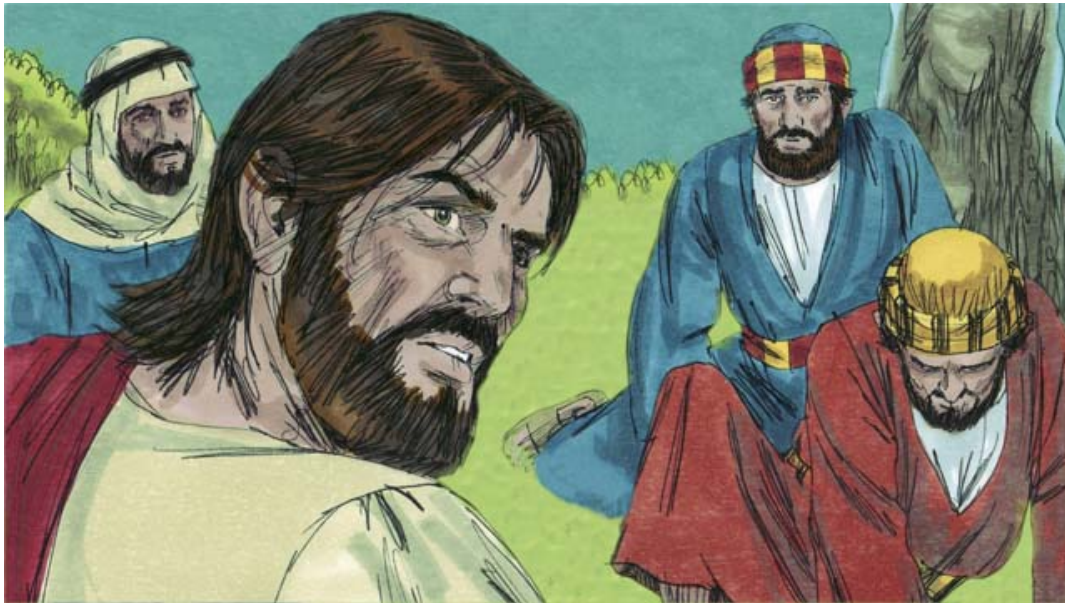
let your will be done

Jesus did not want to die, but he understood that he must die in order to make a way for God to forgive sinners as God wanted to do.

his sweat was like drops of blood

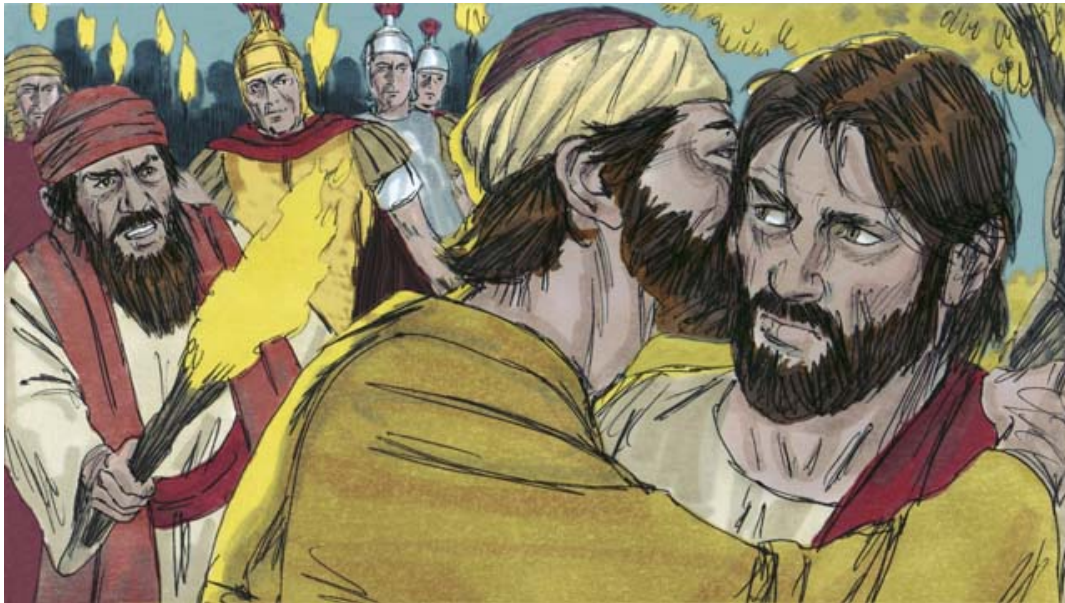
This may mean that Jesus’ grief was so intense that he started to bleed, and his blood mingled with his sweat.

38:13



After each time of prayer, Jesus came back to his disciples, but they were asleep. When he returned the third time, Jesus said, "Wake up! My betrayer is here."
(No study notes for this frame)

38:14



Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs. Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Teacher," and kissed him. He did this to show the Jewish leaders the man to arrest. Then Jesus said, "Judas, are you betraying me with a kiss?"
(No study notes for this frame)

38:15



As the soldiers were seizing Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of a servant of the high priest. But Jesus said, "Put the sword away! **I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me, but I must obey my Father.**" **Jesus healed the man's ear.** Then **all the disciples ran away.**

I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me, but I must obey my Father.

Jesus could have easily prevented the soldiers from arresting him. However, he allowed it because it was God's will that he die in the place of sinners.

Jesus healed the man's ear

Jesus was so gracious that he even healed the ear of the man who had come to arrest him.

all the disciples ran away

The disciples fled as Jesus had said they would in [38:08](#).

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What does the Passover celebrate?

It celebrates how God saved the Jews from slavery in Egypt (See: [38:01](#)).

2. What did Jesus tell the disciples would happen to him in Jerusalem after the Passover?

He told them that he would be killed there (See: [38:01](#)).

3. What did Judas offer to do for the Jewish leaders in exchange for money?

He offered to betray Jesus to them so they could kill Jesus (See: [38:02](#)).

4. What did Jesus say the bread he broke represented?

Jesus said the bread was his body, which he would give for the disciples (See: [38:04](#)).

5. What did Jesus say the cup of wine he drank represented?

Jesus said the cup of wine was the New Covenant in his blood, which he would pour out for the disciples (See: [38:05](#)).

6. As Jesus and the disciples walked to the Mount of Olives, what did Jesus say the disciples would all do that night?

Jesus said the disciples would all abandon him, like sheep scattering when their shepherd is struck (See: [38:08](#)).

7. What did Jesus say that Peter would do before the rooster crowed that night?

He said Peter would deny three times that he even knew Jesus (See: [38:09](#)).

8. What did Jesus ask his Father to do when he prayed in the garden?

Jesus asked his Father not to make him drink the cup of suffering. But he also asked his Father to do his will even if there was no other way except for Jesus to die (See: [38:12](#)).

9. What did the disciples do instead of watching with Jesus?

They fell asleep, because they were very tired (See: [38:13](#)).

10. How did Judas betray Jesus to the crowd?

He pretended to honor Jesus by greeting him with a kiss (See: [38:14](#)).

11. What did Jesus do for the servant of the high priest?

Jesus healed the servant after Peter cut off his ear with a sword (See: [38:15](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did the disciples not suspect that Judas would betray Jesus?

Judas appeared to be just like the other disciples. In fact, they trusted him so much that they put him in charge of their shared money bag. Judas fooled all of the disciples. Jesus alone knew that he would betray Jesus.

What new meaning did Jesus reveal about the Passover meal?

2.

Jesus said the bread and the cup of wine at the Passover meal would remind the disciples that Jesus gave his body and shed his blood in order to save them.

3. Why do you think the disciples did not believe that they would abandon Jesus?

The disciples thought they were brave enough to stand with Jesus. They were offended when he warned them that they would flee. Therefore, they fell asleep instead of watching and praying as Jesus had asked them. As a result, they were not able to stand with him when Judas and the crowd came for Jesus.

4. What does Jesus prayer to his Father in the garden teach us about doing God's will?

Jesus did not want to suffer and die, and asked his Father to spare him. However, Jesus was also willing to suffer in order to do his Father's will. He knew that there was no other way for sinners to be saved if he did not die for them. Therefore, he was willing to be arrested and killed.

5. Why did the Jewish leaders need Judas to betray Jesus?

Jesus taught publicly every day, but the Jewish leaders were afraid to arrest him in front of the crowds who came to listen to him. They needed Judas to tell them when Jesus would be in a secluded place so they could arrest him in secret.

6. Why do you think Peter struck the servant of the high priest with his sword?

Peter did not understand that Jesus must die for sinners. He had not listened each time Jesus told him this would happen. Therefore, he wrongly tried to save Jesus by force. But Jesus rebuked Peter and even healed the servant that Peter struck. He did not want his servants to prevent his arrest.

Summary

Jesus knew that the Passover meal represented the way Jesus would suffer and die for sinners. He explained this to his disciples, but they did not understand him or believe that he would die. None of the disciples prayed or prepared for the time when Jesus would be betrayed. Even worse, his own disciple, Judas, betrayed him. Then the other disciples ran away. However, this did not surprise Jesus. He knew they would leave him and that he would die. That was the reason for which he came into the world.

39. Jesus Is Put on Trial

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 26:57-27:26; Mark 14:53-15:15; Luke 22:54-23:25; John 18:12-19:16

39:01



It was now the middle of the night. The soldiers led Jesus to **the house of the high priest** because he wanted to question Jesus. Peter was following far behind them. When the soldiers took Jesus into the house, Peter stayed outside and warmed himself by a fire.

the house of the high priest

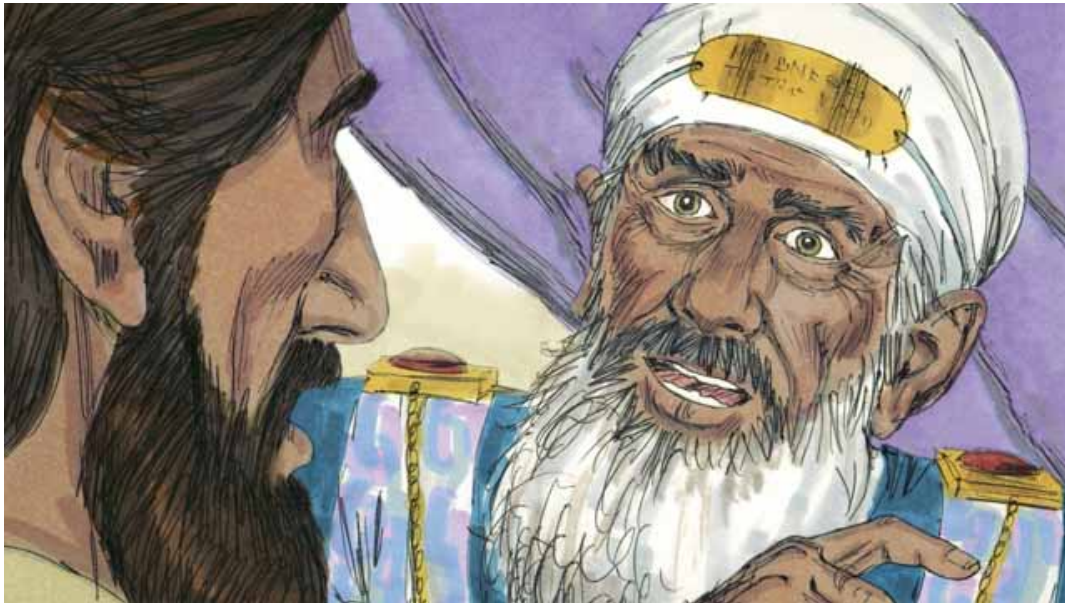
The soldiers took Jesus there because the high priest was the one who ordered them to arrest Jesus.

39:02



Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him. However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was guilty of anything. Jesus did not say anything.
(No study notes for this frame)

39:03

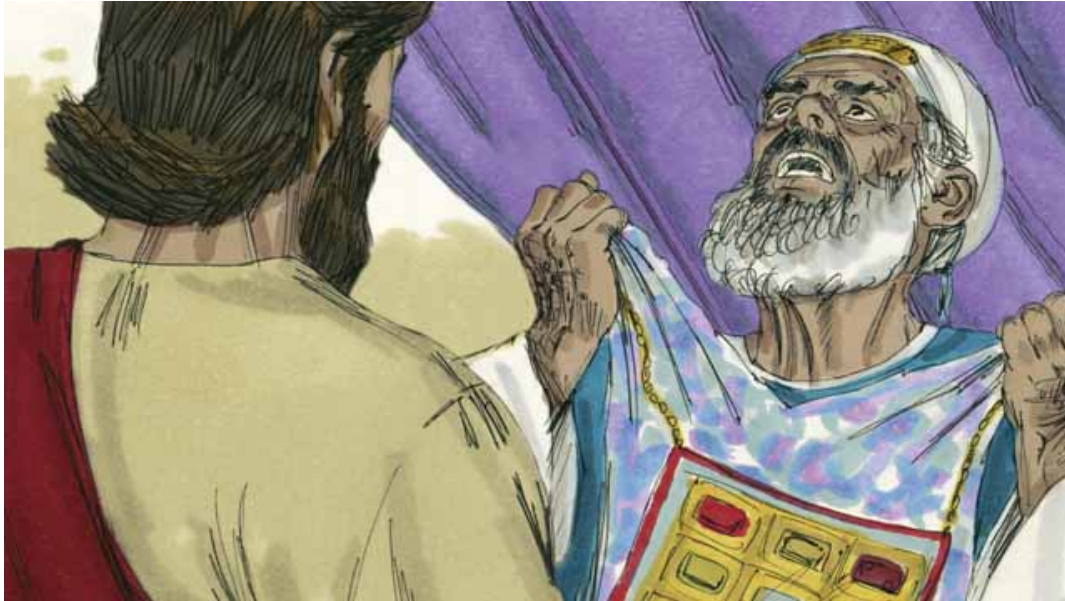


Finally, the high priest looked directly at Jesus and said, "Tell us, **are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?**"

are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?

The religious leaders could not find any reason to condemn Jesus. Therefore, they asked him to tell them if he was the Son of God. They did not believe he was God's Son. If he said that he was indeed the Messiah, they planned to condemn him for falsely stating that he was God.

39:04



Jesus said, “**I am**, and you will see me **seated with God** and coming from heaven.” The high priest **tore his clothes because he was angry** at what Jesus said. He shouted to the other leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses to tell us what this man has done! You yourselves have heard him say that he is the Son of God. **What is your decision about him?**”

I am

I am is also the name of God (See: [09:14](#)). By saying simply “I am,” Jesus was also saying that he is God.

seated with God

Because God is the ruler over all, people talk about him as sitting on a throne in heaven. By saying that he would be seated with God, Jesus claimed that he had authority to rule with the Father.

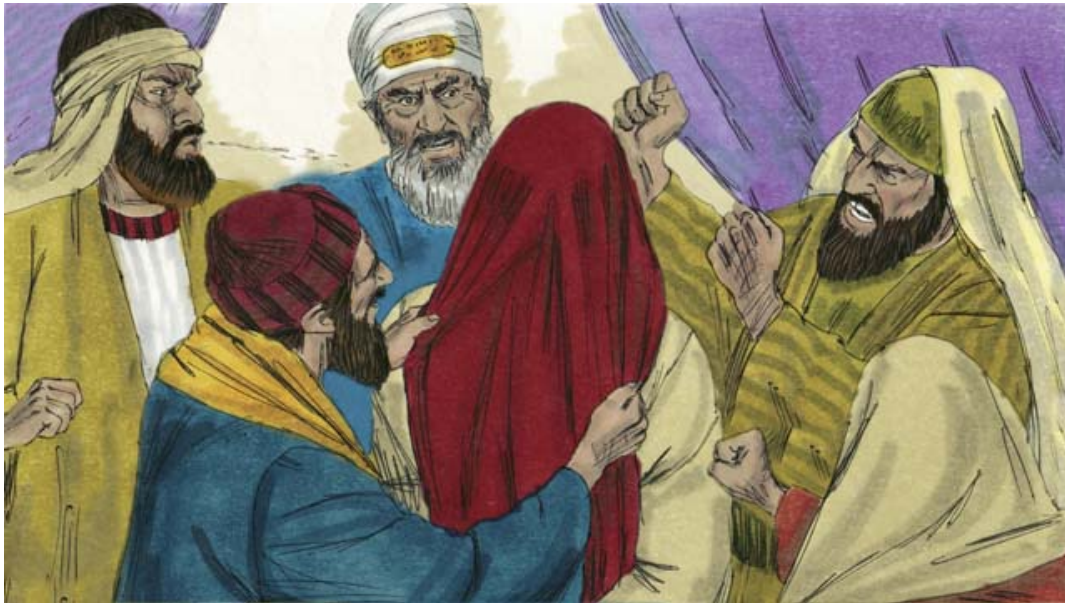
tore his clothes because he was angry

The Jews would tear their clothes to show grief or anger.

What is your decision about him?

The chief priest wanted the religious leaders to condemn Jesus for claiming to be equal with God.

39:05



The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "**He deserves to die!**" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and mocked him.

He deserves to die!

The Jewish law said that any person who claimed to be God must be killed. Because the Jews did not believe that Jesus was God, they condemned him to die.

39:06



As for Peter, he was waiting outside the house. A servant girl saw him. She said to him, "You also were with Jesus!" Peter denied it. Later, another girl said the same thing, and Peter denied it again. Finally, some people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because **you both are from Galilee.**"

you both are from Galilee

The people could tell from the way Jesus and Peter talked that they both came from the region of Galilee.

39:07



Then Peter said, "May God curse me if I know this man!" Immediately after Peter swore like this, **a rooster crowed**. Jesus turned around and looked at Peter.

a rooster crowed

Crowing is the loud sound that a rooster makes. Jesus had told him in [38:09](#) that Peter would deny Jesus before the rooster crowed.

39:08



Peter went away and cried bitterly. At the same time, Judas, the one who had betrayed Jesus, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. **Judas became full of sorrow** and went away and killed himself.

Judas became full of sorrow

Although Judas was sorry for what he had done, he did not ask God to forgive him. Instead, he killed himself.

39:09



Now Pilate was the governor of Judea. **He worked for Rome.** The Jewish leaders brought Jesus to him. They wanted Pilate to **condemn Jesus and kill him.** Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

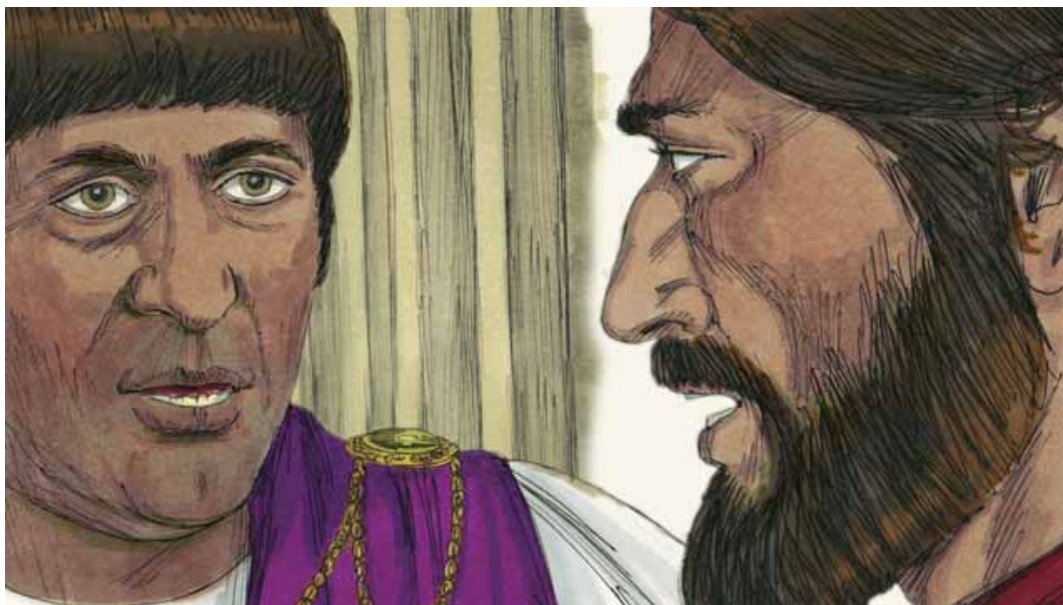
He worked for Rome

The Roman government had appointed Pilate to govern the region of Judea in Israel.

condemn Jesus and kill him

As governor, Pilate had the authority to condemn Jesus to death and to give approval for his crucifixion, or he could set him free. The Jewish religious leaders did not have the authority to have someone killed.

39:10



Jesus answered, "You have said the truth. But **my kingdom is not here on earth**. If it were, **my servants would fight for me**. I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth **listens to me**." Pilate asked, "**What is truth?**"

my kingdom is not here on earth

Jesus' kingdom is not like earthly kingdoms.

my servants would fight for me

An earthly king would ask his disciples to fight to protect him. But Jesus was not that kind of king.

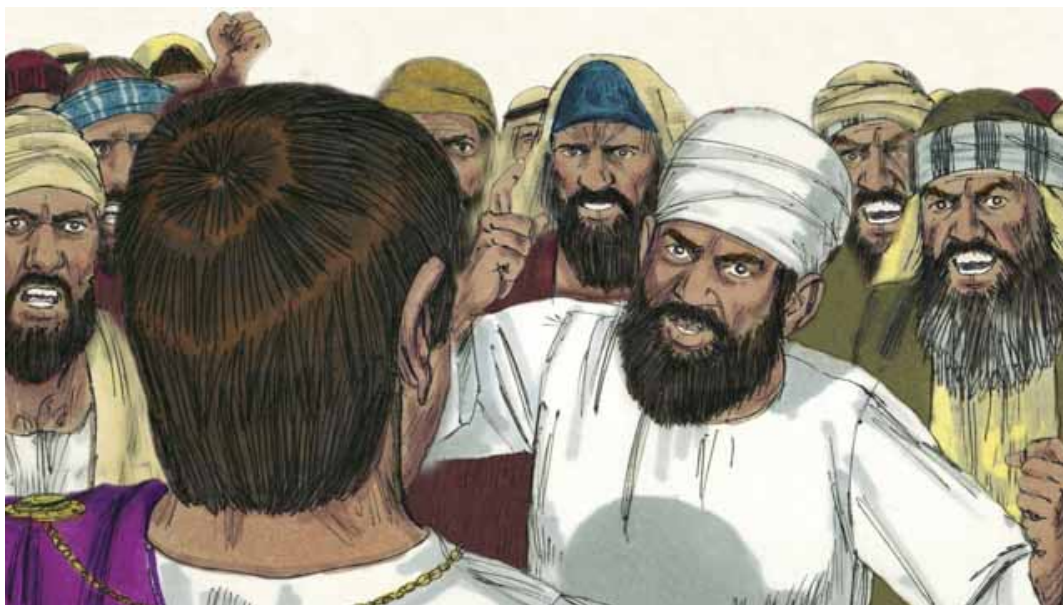
listens to me

This includes not just hearing Jesus' words, but also doing what he says.

What is truth?

Pilate did not believe that anyone could know what is true.

39:11



After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I cannot find any reason that this man deserves to die." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify him!**" Pilate replied, "He is not guilty of doing anything wrong." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "**He is not guilty!**"

Crucify him!

The Romans executed the worst criminals by nailing them to a cross and letting them hang on it until they died of exhaustion or asphyxiation.

He is not guilty!

Pilate correctly judged that Jesus was completely innocent. But the people would not accept his judgment.

39:12



Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so **he agreed to have** his soldiers crucify Jesus. The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put **a royal robe** and **a crown made of thorns** on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, **the King of the Jews!**"

he agreed to have

Pilate did not want to kill Jesus because he believed that Jesus was innocent. But he was forced to tell his soldiers to crucify Jesus because of his fear of the crowd.

a royal robe

This robe had a bright color, so it looked like the kind of robe that a king would wear.

a crown made of thorns

They tied thorn branches into a circle to look like a crown. A crown is an ornament that a king wears on his head to show his authority. But the crown that they put on Jesus' head had sharp, dangerous thorns on it.

the King of the Jews

The soldiers said this to mock Jesus. They did not believe that he was the King of the Jews.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Where did the soldiers first take Jesus after they arrested him?

They took him to the house of the high priest (See: [39:01](#)).

2. What did the Jewish leaders do to try and prove that Jesus was guilty?

They brought many false witnesses who lied about Jesus. However, the witnesses did not agree with each other, so they could not prove that Jesus was guilty of anything (See: [39:02](#)).

3. What question did the high priest ask Jesus, and how did Jesus answer?

The high priest asked if Jesus was the Messiah, and the Son of the living God. Jesus told the high priest that this was who he was (See: [39:03](#), [39:04](#)).

4. How did the Jewish leaders react when Jesus said he was the Messiah and the Son of God?

They all became angry and shouted that Jesus deserved to die. They blindfolded him, spit on him, hit him, and mocked him (See: [39:05](#)).

5. What did Peter say when people outside the high priest's house said he had been with Jesus?

Peter swore and said he did not know Jesus (See: [39:07](#)).

6. What did Judas do to himself after Jesus was arrested?

Judas went away and killed himself (See: [39:08](#)).

7. What question did Pilate ask Jesus?

Pilate asked Jesus if he was the king of the Jews (See: [39:09](#)).

8. Why did Jesus say his servants would not fight to defend him?

Jesus' kingdom was not on earth, so his servants did not fight on earth to save him (See: [39:10](#)).

9. What did Pilate decide about whether Jesus was guilty?

Pilate decided that Jesus was not guilty of anything, and told this to the crowd three times (See: [39:11](#)).

10. Why did Pilate tell his soldiers to crucify Jesus?

Pilate was afraid the crowd would riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus in order to satisfy the crowd. Therefore, they whipped Jesus and prepared to kill him (See: [39:12](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What was the only charge the high priest was able to bring against Jesus?

Jesus had not done anything wrong, so the high priest could not find true witnesses against him. Finally, he accused Jesus of pretending to be the Messiah and the Son of God. Jesus really was God's Son, so he was not pretending. He was innocent, but the high priest would not believe him. Therefore, the whole group of religious leaders condemned Jesus.

2. How is it encouraging to followers of Jesus that Peter denied Jesus?

Peter was one of Jesus' closest disciples. He truly believed in Jesus, and became a leader in the church. However, even Peter denied Jesus when the people accused him. No believer is perfect. Jesus does not expect us to always do the right thing. Just as Jesus loved Peter in spite of his failure, followers of Jesus know he will forgive them when they repent of their sin.

3. Why do you think God allowed Jesus to be falsely accused and condemned?

God knows that our fallen nature causes us to sin. His Holy Spirit enables people to do his will. By dying, Jesus took the place of sinners, accepting God's judgment of sin on himself, even though he was without sin. Paying the penalty for our sin, he made it possible for God to forgive sinners. So God allowed the Jewish leaders and the Romans to convict Jesus even though they knew he was innocent. Evil actions do not stop God's plan or his will from happening.

Summary

When Jesus was arrested and tried, everyone who should have defended him turned against him instead. The religious leaders rejected the Messiah that God sent to them. Peter denied that he knew Jesus. And Pilate ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus even though he knew that Jesus was innocent. But God used all of these evil things to accomplish his plan. He wanted Jesus to die in order to make a way for God to forgive sinners. And Jesus was willing to die in order to accomplish God's plan.

40. Jesus Is Crucified

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 27:27-61; Mark 15:16-47; Luke 23:26-56; John 19:17-42

40:01



After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away **to crucify him**. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.

to crucify him

The soldiers crucified criminals by nailing them to a large cross and keeping them there until they died.

40:02



The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called '**the Skull**' and nailed his hands and feet to the cross. But Jesus said, "Father, **forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing.**" They also put **a sign on the cross above his head.** It said, "King of the Jews." This is what Pilate had told them to write.

the Skull

This is a small escarpment near Jerusalem with a rocky, white face which looks somewhat like a skull.

forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing

Jesus knew that the soldiers thought Jesus was only a criminal who deserved to die. They did not understand that he was the Son of God.

a sign on the cross above his head

The Romans often put a sign on a cross to state the crime that the person had committed.

40:03



Then the soldiers **gambled for Jesus' clothing**. When they did this, **they fulfilled a prophecy that said**, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."

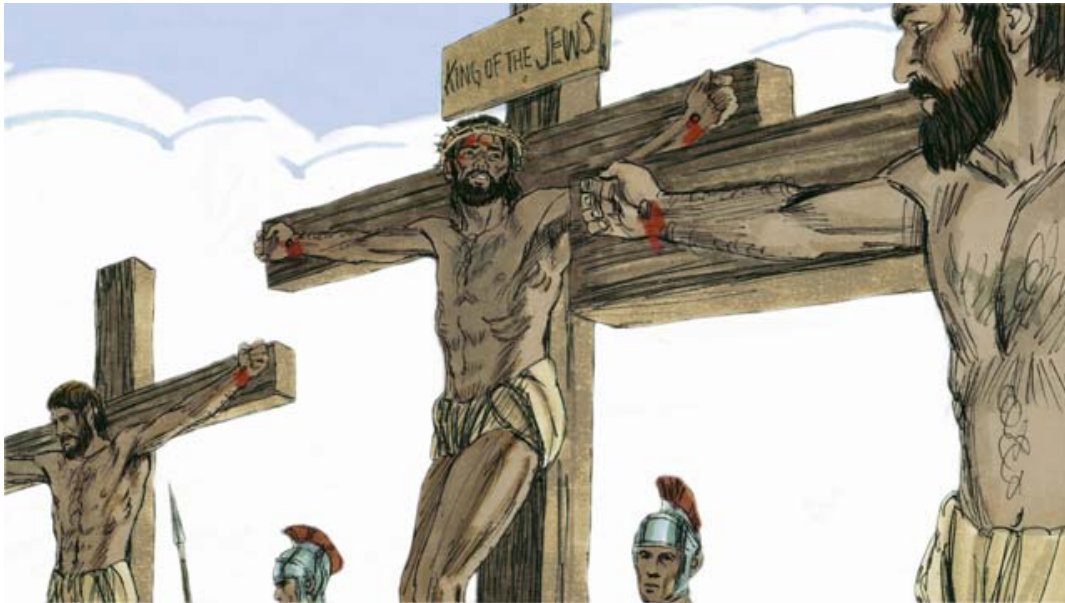
gambled for Jesus' clothing

The soldiers played a game of chance to win Jesus' clothes.

they fulfilled a prophecy that said

King David wrote these words in Psalm 22 hundreds of years before this event.

40:04



There were also **two robbers** whom the soldiers crucified at the same time, putting them on either side of Jesus. One of the robbers mocked Jesus, but the other said to him, "Do you not fear that God will punish you? We are guilty of doing many bad things, but this man is innocent." Then he said to Jesus, "Please remember me when you become king in your kingdom." Jesus answered him, "Today you will be with me in **Paradise.**"

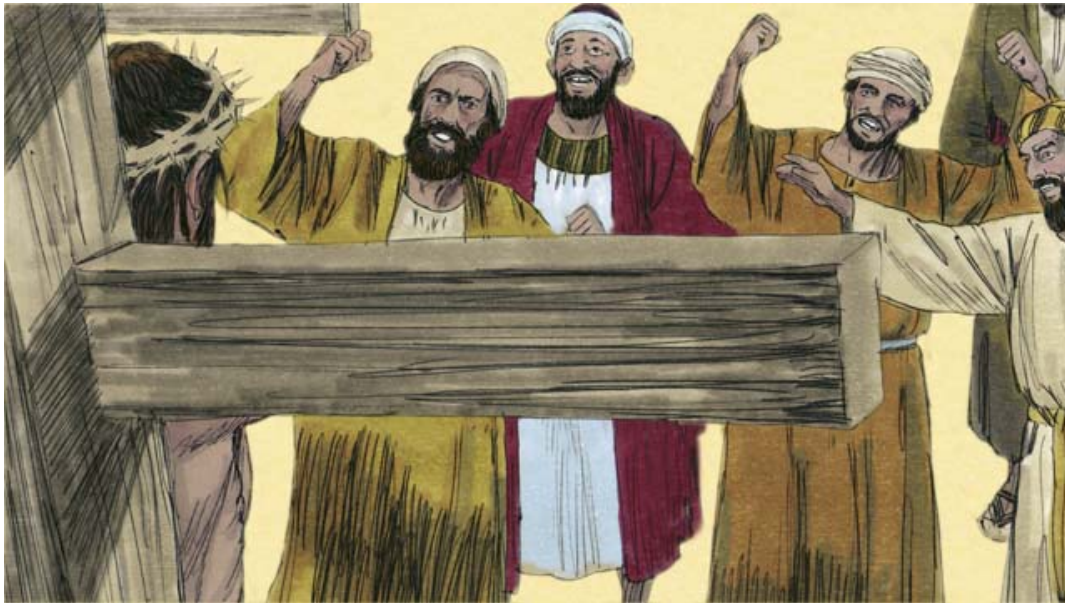
two robbers

This refers to criminals who used force or violence to steal things.

Paradise

This is another name for 'heaven.'

40:05



The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, **come down from the cross and save yourself!** Then we will believe you."

come down from the cross and save yourself!

These people did not understand that Jesus was able to come down from the cross and to save himself (See: [38:15](#)). However, it was God's plan for him to die so that he could save other people (See: [38:12](#)).

40:06

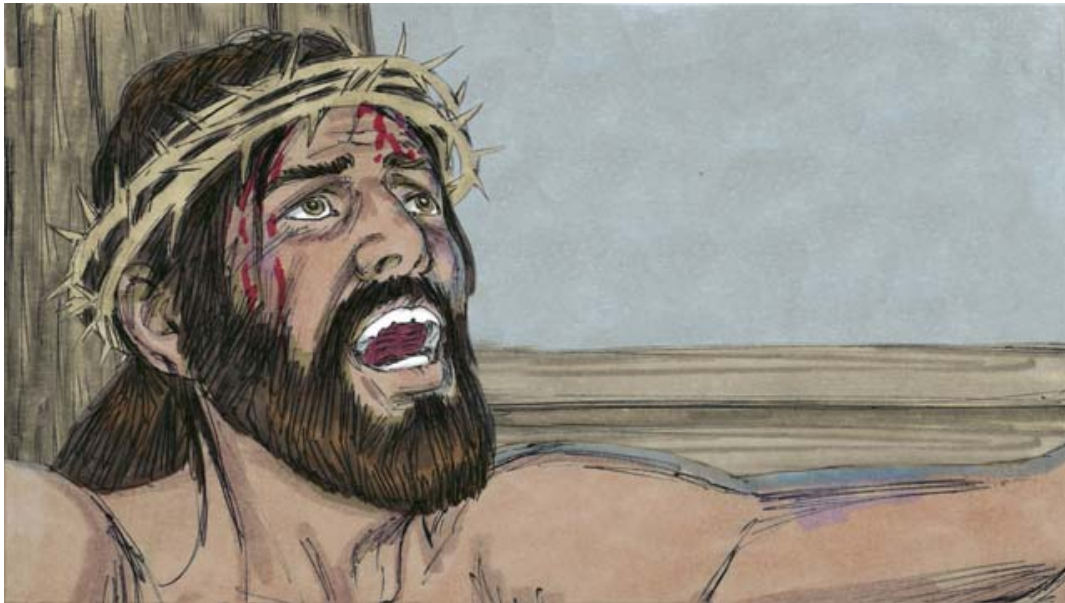


Then the sky over **the whole region became completely dark**, even though it was the middle of the day. It became dark at noon and stayed dark for three hours.

the whole region became completely dark

God caused this darkness. Natural events such as an eclipse only last few minutes. This darkness lasted three hours.

40:07



Then Jesus cried out, "**It is finished!** Father, I am giving my spirit into your hands." Then he bowed his head and **gave up his spirit**. When he died, there was an earthquake. In the Temple, **the large curtain** that separated the people from the presence of God was torn in two **from the top to the bottom**.

It is finished!

This means that Jesus has completed his work to save people who had sinned against God.

gave up his spirit

Jesus released his spirit back to God, and he died.

the large curtain

This was a large, strong fabric hung in the Temple. It was like a wall separating one room from another.

from the top to the bottom

The curtain was torn from the top to indicate that God was opening it from above, rather than men opening it from below.

40:08



Through his death, Jesus **opened the way for people to come to God**. When a soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that had happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was innocent. **He was the Son of God.**"

opened the way for people to come to God

The tearing of the curtain showed that the barrier between God and people had been removed.

He was the Son of God

The soldier realized that Jesus did not die like an ordinary man, and that God had done the miraculous things that happened when he died.

40:09



Then two Jewish leaders named **Joseph** and Nicodemus came and **asked Pilate for Jesus' body**. They believed that Jesus was the Messiah. They wrapped his body in cloth, took it to a tomb cut out of rock and placed it inside. Then they rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the opening.

Joseph

This was not Mary's husband. It was another man named Joseph.

asked Pilate for Jesus' body

The two men asked Pilate to permit them to take Jesus' body down from the cross in order to bury it.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did the soldiers force Jesus to carry?

They forced him to carry the cross on which he would die (See: [40:02](#)).

2. What did Jesus ask his Father to do for the soldiers who crucified him?

He asked his Father to forgive them, for they did not understand what they were doing (See: [40:02](#)).

3. What did the sign above Jesus' head say?

The sign said **King of the Jews** (See: [40:02](#)).

4. What did Jesus promise to the robber who asked Jesus to remember him?

Jesus promised him that he would be with Jesus that very day in Paradise (See: [40:04](#)).

5. What did the Jewish leaders and people in the crowd tell Jesus to do so that they might believe in him?

They told Jesus to come down from the cross and to save himself (See: [40:05](#)).

6. What happened to the sky as Jesus was on the cross?

The sky became completely dark for three hours in the middle of the day (See: [40:06](#)).

7. What did Jesus cry out to his Father as he died?

He said that it was finished, and gave his spirit into his Father's hands (See: [40:07](#)).

8. What happened to the curtain in the Temple when Jesus died?

The curtain was torn in two from the top to the bottom (See: [40:07](#)).

9. What did the Roman soldier say about Jesus when he died?

The soldier said the Jesus was certainly innocent, and that he was the Son of God (See: [40:08](#)).

10. Who buried Jesus?

Two Jewish leaders named Joseph and Nicodemus buried Jesus (See: [40:09](#)).

11. How did Joseph close the tomb?

He rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the entrance (See: [40:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think Jesus said the soldiers did not know what they were doing?

The soldiers were Romans who did not know very much about the Jewish religion. They probably thought Jesus was an ordinary criminal, and they treated him as one.

2. They soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. Why does that help us believe Jesus was the Messiah?

This action was one of many things that the scriptures, written hundreds of years before, said they would do to the Messiah. All these prophecies were fulfilled in Jesus.

3. Jesus told the robber who repented that he would be with Jesus in Paradise that day. What does that tell us about the way to enter into heaven?

The robber did not perform a single good deed. Instead, he simply confessed that he was a sinner, and asked Jesus to remember him in the kingdom. As a result, Jesus promised that he would be in Paradise (that is, heaven) that same day. The way to enter into heaven is to believe in Jesus.

4. Why do you think Jesus did not come down from the cross and save himself when the people asked him to?

The people who told Jesus to come down from the cross did not want to believe in him. They were only mocking him. They did not realize that he had the power to come down from the cross. But he came to earth to die for sinners. That was the will of his Father. He had to stay on the cross and give up his own life in order to make it possible for God to forgive other people who believed in Jesus.

5. What was finished when Jesus cried out?

When Jesus cried out, "It is finished!" he wanted to say that he had finished paying the penalty for the sins of everyone in the world. It was now possible for God to forgive those who repented and trusted in Jesus. People no longer needed to die for their own sins.

6. Why was the curtain of the Temple torn from top to bottom?

The curtain of the Temple prevented people from seeing or entering into the most holy place in the Temple where God was. God in heaven above tore the curtain from the top to the bottom when Jesus died. He did this to show that Jesus had opened a way for man to approach God through the sacrifice of Jesus.

7. Why did the soldier say that Jesus was innocent, and the Son of God?

The Roman soldier had probably executed hundreds of criminals. He recognized that Jesus did not act like a criminal. Instead, he was a good man who asked his Father to forgive the soldiers, and who spoke kindly to the robber who repented. Furthermore, the miraculous signs that happened when Jesus died convinced the soldier that Jesus was not just a man—he was the Son of God.

Summary

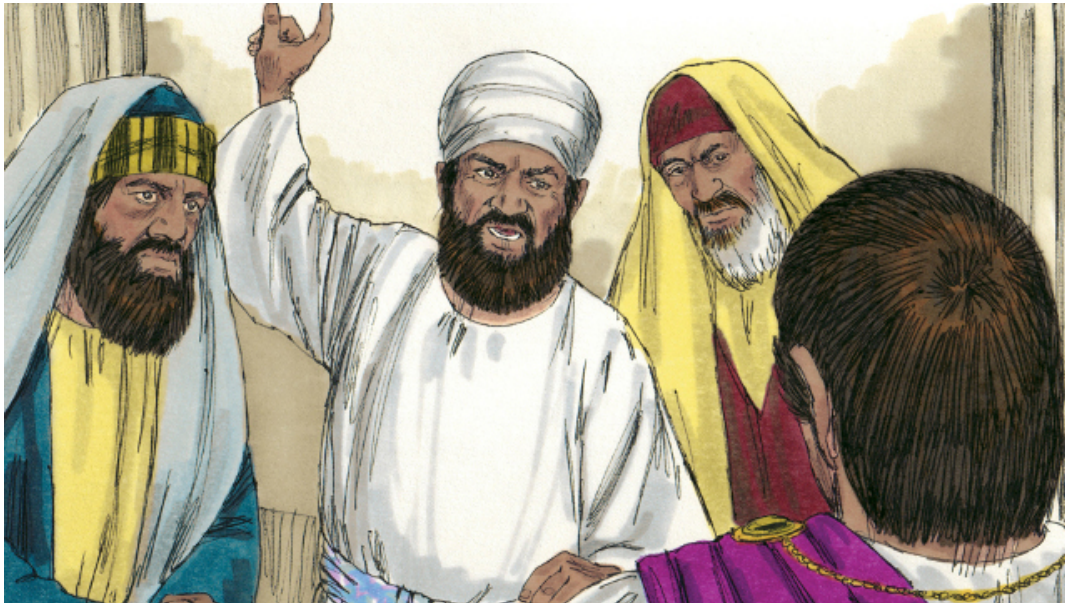
Jesus suffered greatly as he died. The soldiers mocked and mistreated him. The religious leaders and the crowd mocked him. Even one of the robbers on a cross beside him mocked him. Despite this, Jesus remained on the cross and suffered in order to make a way for God to forgive sinners. He was willing to die in order to obey his Father and finish the task that he came to do. One of the robbers understood this, and went to heaven with Jesus. One of the soldiers also saw that Jesus was truly the Son of God. And two of the religious leaders believed in Jesus and honored him by burying his body. God was honored even through the death of his Son.

41. God Raises Jesus from the Dead

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 27:62-28:15; Mark 16:1-11; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-18

41:01



After the soldiers crucified Jesus, the Jewish leaders said to Pilate, **“That liar, Jesus, said he would rise from the dead after three days. Someone must guard the tomb to make sure that his disciples do not steal the body. If they do, they will say he has risen from the dead.”**

That liar, Jesus, said

The Jewish leaders refused to believe that Jesus told the truth about being the Son of God.

rise from the dead

The Jewish leaders were well aware that Jesus promised to become alive again.

41:02

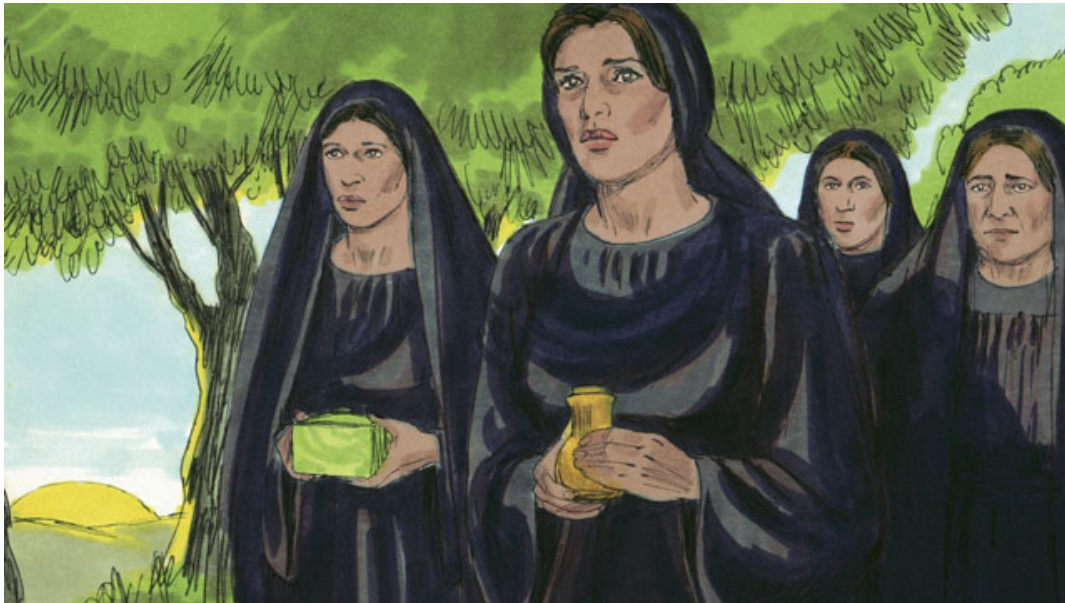


Pilate said, "Take some soldiers and guard the tomb as well as you can." So they placed **a seal on the stone** at the entrance of the tomb. They also put soldiers there to make sure no one could steal the body.

a seal on the stone

They put a soft material like clay or wax between the stone and the tomb and marked it with an official seal. If anyone moved the stone, the material would break and show that someone had entered the tomb.

41:03



The day after Jesus died was a Sabbath day. **No one could work on the Sabbath day**, so no friends of Jesus went to his tomb. But on the day after the Sabbath, very early in the morning, several women got ready to go to Jesus' tomb. They wanted to put more **spices** on his body.

No one could work on the Sabbath day

The Sabbath day rules did not permit a Jew to walk very far or to do any other kind of work.

spices

This refers to sweet-smelling spices that were placed on a dead body to cover the bad smell.

41:04



Before the women arrived, there was a great earthquake at the tomb. An angel came from heaven. He rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. This angel was shining as brightly as lightning. The soldiers at the tomb saw him. They were so terrified that they **fell to the ground like dead men**.

fell to the ground like dead men

They were not dead, but they did not move, just like dead men do not move. They probably had fainted from fright.

41:05



When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, “**Do not be afraid**. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Do not be afraid

The women were frightened because the angel shone like lightning.

41:06



Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and **he will go to Galilee ahead of you.**'"

he will go to Galilee ahead of you

Jesus intended to meet his disciples in Galilee.

41:07



The women were amazed and very joyful. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.
(No study notes for this frame)

41:08



As the women were on their way to tell the disciples the good news, Jesus appeared to them. They bowed down at his feet. Then Jesus said, "**Do not be afraid.** Go and tell my disciples to go to Galilee. They will see me there."

Do not be afraid

The women perhaps were afraid because they thought that Jesus was a ghost.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What were the Jewish leaders afraid the disciples would do with the body of Jesus?

They were afraid the disciples would steal Jesus' body and say he had risen from the dead (See: [41:01](#)).

2. How did Pilate make sure the disciples could not steal Jesus' body?

Pilate let them place a seal on the entrance of the tomb, and also stationed some soldiers there to guard it. (See: [41:02](#)).

3. When did the women come to the tomb?

The women came to the tomb after the Sabbath day was over (See: [41:03](#)).

4. What did the women plan to do at the tomb?

The women wanted to put more spices on Jesus' body (See: [41:03](#)).

5. Who rolled the stone away from the tomb?

An angel from heaven rolled the stone away from the tomb (See: [41:04](#)).

6. What did the soldiers do when they saw the angel?

The soldiers were so afraid that they fell to the ground like dead men (See: [41:04](#)).

7. What did the angel tell the women had happened to Jesus?

The angel told them that Jesus was not there, but that he had risen from the dead (See: [41:05](#)).

8. What did the angel tell the women to say to the disciples?

He told them to tell the disciples that Jesus had risen from the dead, and would go ahead of them to Galilee (See: [41:06](#)).

9. What did the women do when Jesus appeared to them as they were on their way?

The woman fell down and worshiped Jesus (See: [41:08](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Who was it that remembered Jesus' promise to rise from the dead in three days?

It is surprising that the disciples did not remember the Jesus said he would rise from the dead in three days. Instead, it was the unbelieving Jewish leaders who remembered what he said. They did not believe him, but they did remember his words. The disciples should have remembered.

2. Were the soldiers able to prevent the tomb from opening?

The Roman soldiers were the best soldiers of that time. However, they could not stand against the single angel that God sent to open the tomb. The strongest military force could not stop God from doing what he planned to do. When the angel appeared, they fell down like dead men.

3. How did the angel treat the women who came to the tomb?

The angel knew that the women had come to honor Jesus by putting spices on his body. Therefore, the angel spoke kindly to them and told them not to be afraid. He showed them the empty tomb, and told them that Jesus would meet them in Galilee.

4. Why do you think Jesus met the women, when he told them the same thing as the angel?

Jesus did not need to appear to the women. The angel had already told them that he was alive and would meet the disciples in Galilee. But Jesus also knew that the women had come to honor him. Perhaps he appears to them for that reason, so he could honor them for coming to serve him. The women were therefore the first people to see Jesus after he became alive again.

Summary

Jesus had told the disciples and other people that he would become alive again after three days. Surprisingly, the disciples did not remember this, nor come to the tomb to see if he would rise again. Only the women came, and even they did not expect Jesus to be alive. The only people who seemed to remember that he promised to rise again were the unbelieving religious leaders. They remembered what Jesus said, and tried to stop people from believing that he would rise from the dead. They posted soldiers to make sure his body remained in the tomb. But they could not stop the plan of God. An angel struck down the soldiers, and Jesus rose with power.

42. Jesus Returns to Heaven

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:12-20; Luke 24:13-53; John 20:19-23; Acts 1:1-11

42:01



On the day that God raised Jesus from the dead, two of his disciples were going to a nearby town. As they walked, they talked about what had happened to Jesus. They had hoped that he was the Messiah, but then he was killed. Now **the women said he was alive again**. They did not know what to believe.

the women said he was alive again

The women told the disciples that Jesus was alive in [41:08](#).

42:02



Jesus approached them and started walking with them, but they did not recognize him. He asked what they were talking about. They told him about **all the things that had happened** to Jesus during the previous few days. They thought they were talking to a foreigner who did not know what had happened in Jerusalem.

all the things that had happened

This refers to the teaching and miracles of Jesus, his death, and the reports of his resurrection.

42:03



Then Jesus explained to them what God's word said about the Messiah. Long ago, prophets had said that evil men would make the Messiah suffer and die. But the prophets also said he would rise again **on the third day**.

on the third day

This refers to the third day after his death.

42:04



When they arrived at the town where the two men wanted to stay, it was almost evening. They invited Jesus to stay with them, so he went into a house with them. They sat down to eat their evening meal. Jesus picked up a loaf of bread, thanked God for it, and then broke it. Suddenly, they recognized that he was Jesus. But at that moment, he disappeared from their sight.

(No study notes for this frame)

42:05



The two men said to each other, "That was Jesus! That is why we were so excited when he explained God's word to us!" Immediately they left and went back to Jerusalem. When they arrived, they told the disciples, "Jesus is alive! We have seen him!"

(No study notes for this frame)

42:06



As the disciples were talking, Jesus suddenly appeared in the room with them. He said, "**Peace to you!**" The disciples thought he was **a ghost**, but Jesus said, "Why are you afraid? Why do you not think it is really I, Jesus? Look at my hands and feet. Ghosts do not have bodies like I do." To show that he was not a ghost, he asked for something to eat. They gave him a piece of fish, and he ate it.

Peace to you

This was a normal greeting among the Jews. However, Jesus may have said this here because the disciples thought he was a ghost and were frightened when he appeared.

a ghost

This refers to the spirit of a dead person.

42:07



Jesus said, "Everything about me that God's word says will happen, I have told you that it must happen." Then **Jesus made them understand God's word better**. He said, "Long ago, prophets wrote that I, the Messiah, would suffer, die, and then rise from the dead on the third day."

Jesus made them understand God's word better

Jesus did something that enabled them to better understand the meaning of the scriptures.

42:08

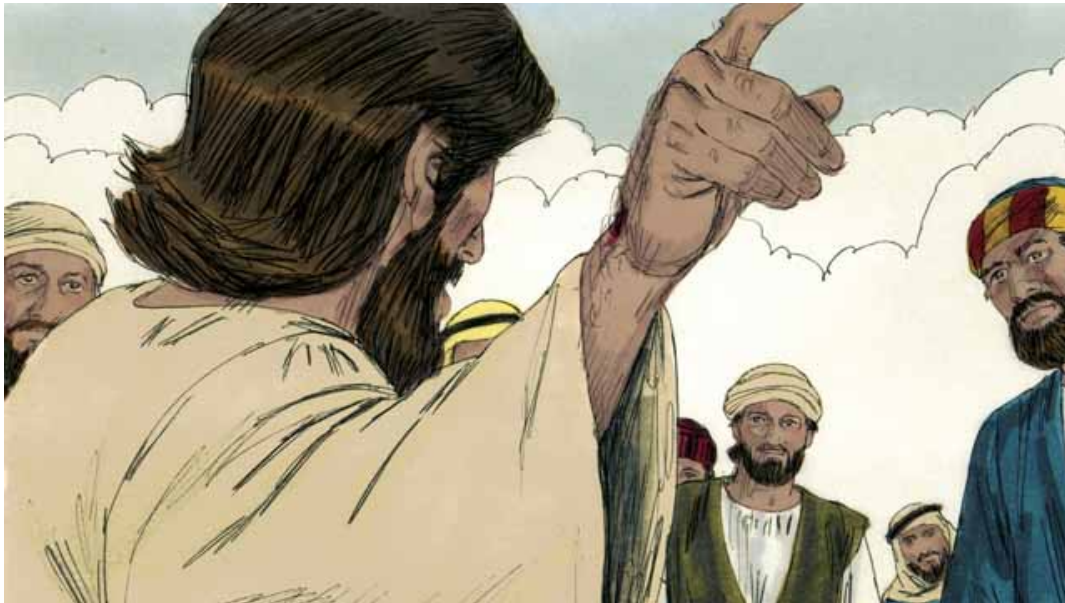


“The prophets also wrote that my disciples will proclaim God’s message. They will tell everyone to repent. If they repent, God will forgive their sins. **My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem.** Then they will go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of everything I have said and done, and of everything that happened to me.”

My disciples will proclaim this message starting in Jerusalem

The disciples would speak first in Jerusalem about Jesus rising from the dead, and then they would speak about it in other places.

42:09



During the next 40 days, Jesus appeared to his disciples many times. Once, he even appeared to more than 500 people at the same time! In many ways, he proved to his disciples that he was alive, and he taught them about the kingdom of God.

(No study notes for this frame)

42:10



Jesus said to his disciples, "God has given me the right to rule over everyone in heaven and on earth. So I am telling you now: go and **make disciples in all people groups**. In order to do this, you must baptize them **in the name of** the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. You must also teach them to obey everything I have commanded you. Remember, I will always be with you."

make disciples in all people groups

The disciples would help people from every people group to also become disciples of Jesus.

in the name of

This phrase means both 'by the authority of' and 'under the authority of.'

42:11



Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power. He will do this by sending the Holy Spirit upon you." Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down in heaven **at the right hand of God** to rule over all things.

at the right hand of God

This was the position of the highest authority.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What were the two disciples talking about as they went to a nearby town?

They were talking about what had happened to Jesus. The women had said Jesus was alive, so they did not know what to believe (See: [42:01](#)).

2. Who did the disciples think Jesus was?

They thought he was a foreigner who did not know what had happened in Jerusalem (See: [42:02](#)).

3. What did Jesus explain to the two disciples?

Jesus explained what God's word said about the Messiah—how he would suffer and die, and then rise again on the third day (See: [42:03](#)).

4. When did the two disciples recognize Jesus?

They recognized him when he broke the bread with them (See: [42:04](#)).

5. How did Jesus convince the disciples in Jerusalem that he was not a ghost?

He showed them his hands and feet, and then ate a piece of fish before them (See: [42:05](#)).

6. What is the message that the prophets said Jesus' disciples would proclaim?

They would tell everyone to repent so God will forgive their sins. They would tell this to people everywhere, starting in Jerusalem (See: [42:08](#)).

7. How many people saw Jesus at one time after he rose from the dead?

More than 500 people saw him at the same time (See: [42:09](#)).

8. What did Jesus command his disciples to do?

He told them to make disciples in all people groups, and to baptize them and to teach them to obey everything that he had commanded them (See: [42:10](#)).

9. Where did Jesus go 40 days after he rose from the dead?

Jesus went up to heaven and sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things (See: [42:11](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why do you think the two disciples on the road did not believe that Jesus had risen from the dead?

They had thought Jesus was the Messiah, so it was very difficult and discouraging for them when he died. Perhaps they did not want to believe the report from the women so that they would not be disappointed again if Jesus was not really alive.

2. Why do you think the two disciples did not recognize Jesus?

It seems as if Jesus prevented the two disciples from recognizing him. Perhaps he wanted them to believe the things the prophets had written about him in God's word before he revealed himself to them. From the time Jesus went back to heaven, people have not been able to see him, and must believe in him because of what God's word says about him.

3. Why did the disciples in Jerusalem not believe Jesus was alive when he first appeared to them?

Jesus had told the disciples that he would become alive again after three days. The woman had also seen him alive at the tomb and told the disciples. And the two disciples who saw Jesus on the road told them that Jesus was alive. Even so, when Jesus appeared among them in the room, they thought he was a ghost. It is amazing that they did not believe he was alive even with so much proof. They only understood clearly after Jesus explained to them the things written about him in God's word.

4. What must people do in order for God to forgive them?

People must repent in order for God to forgive them. That is, they must change their minds about themselves and confess that they are sinners, and change their minds about God and confess that Jesus died to pay for their sins.

5. To whom are Jesus' disciples to speak his message?

We are to proclaim God's message about Jesus to all people groups everywhere.

6. How long are Jesus' disciples to proclaim his message?

We are to continue to proclaim his message until there are disciples among all people groups who obey everything that Jesus commanded us.

7. How does Jesus help his disciples to proclaim his message?

Jesus sent the Holy Spirit to give power to his disciples so they can proclaim his message to everyone everywhere.

8. What is Jesus doing as his disciples proclaim his message?

Jesus is in heaven ruling over all things at the right hand of God. This encourages his disciples, as they know that he will enable them to do what he has commanded us. He will cause disciples to believe in him in every people group.

Summary

The disciples did not understand that the Messiah had to die for the sins of people. Therefore, they were so discouraged when Jesus died that it was difficult for them to believe that he was alive again—even when there was so much proof that he was alive. However, Jesus appeared alive to many of the disciples over a period of 40 days in order to prove to them from the word of God that he was the Messiah and had risen from the dead. He then sent the Holy Spirit to give them power so they could tell people everywhere to repent, believe in him, and obey all that he commanded us. Meanwhile, he is sitting at the right hand of God and ruling over everything.

43. The Church Begins

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Acts 1:12-14; 2

43:01

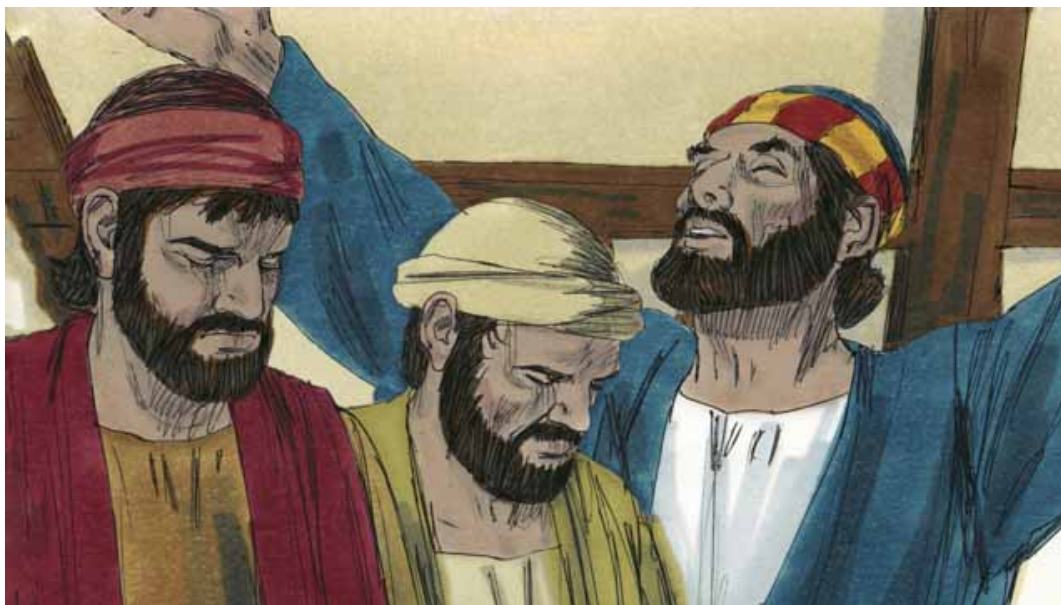


After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples **stayed in Jerusalem** as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.

stayed in Jerusalem

Jesus had told them to stay in Jerusalem until the Holy Spirit came upon them (See: [42:11](#)).

43:02



Every year, 50 days after the Passover, the Jews celebrated an important day called Pentecost. Pentecost was a time when the Jews **celebrated the wheat harvest**. Jews came from all over the world to Jerusalem to celebrate Pentecost together. **This year** the time for Pentecost came about a week after Jesus had gone back to heaven.

celebrated the wheat harvest

The Jews would thank God for the wheat harvest by bringing offerings and celebrate by having special meals. This happened in May; other crops were harvested at other times of the year.

This year

This refers to the year that Jesus died.

43:03



While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they had gathered was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers. They were all **filled with the Holy Spirit** and they praised God in other languages. They did not know these languages, but these were languages that the Holy Spirit enabled them to speak.

filled with the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit entered into them and began to give them power to speak in other languages.

43:04



When the people in Jerusalem heard **this noise**, they came together in a crowd to see what was happening. They heard the believers proclaiming the great things God had done. They were astonished because they could understand even though they were from many different countries and spoke many different languages. The disciples were from Israel and spoke Aramaic, Hebrew, or Greek, but the people were each hearing what God had done **in their own native language**.

this noise

This refers to the sound like a rushing wind that happened when the Holy Spirit filled the believers.

in their own native language

The people in the crowd were from different regions, and spoke different languages. They each heard the disciples speak to them in their own language.

43:05



Some of these people said that the disciples were drunk. But Peter stood up and said to them, "Listen to me! These people are not drunk! Instead, what you see is what the prophet **Joel** said would happen: God said, 'In **the last days**, I will **pour out my Spirit**.'"

Joel

Joel was a prophet in Israel who lived hundreds of years before this happened.

the last days

This refers to the final days before the end of the world.

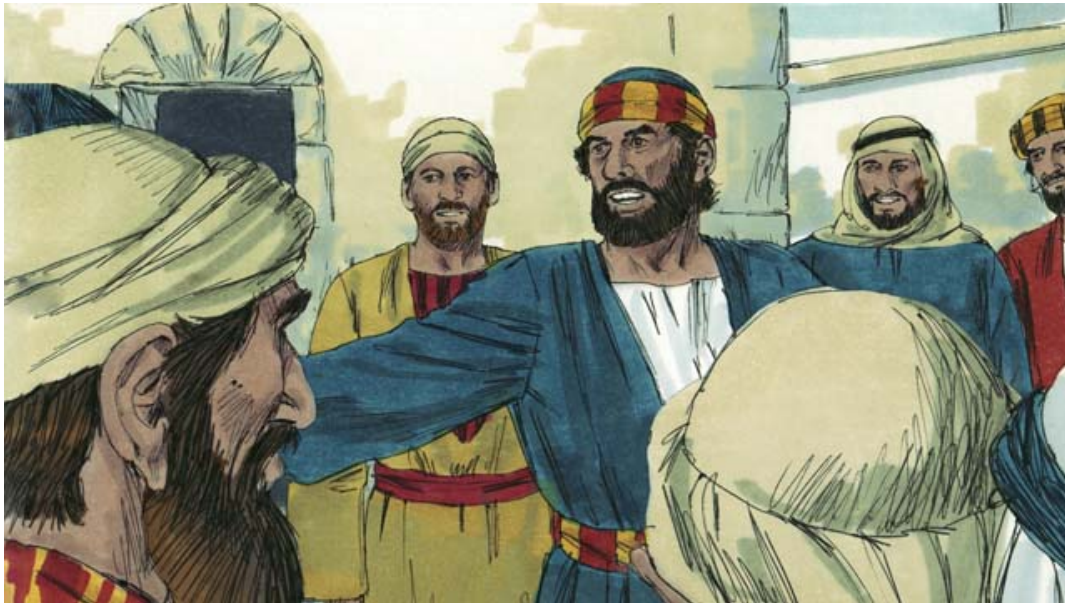
pour out my Spirit

This means that God will give his Spirit generously to people.

my Spirit

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

43:06



“Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many wonderful things to show who he was. He did many amazing things by God’s power. You know this because you saw these things. But **you crucified him!**”

you crucified him!

The Jews did not actually nail Jesus to the cross. However, the Jewish leaders caused him to be condemned and many of the people in the crowd had shouted for him to be crucified (See: [39:11](#)).

43:07



"Jesus died, but God raised him from the dead. This made come true what a prophet wrote: '**You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.**' We are witnesses that God raised Jesus to life again."

You will not let your

You and **your** refer to God the Father.

rot in the grave

This refers to the fact that Jesus did not remain in the tomb very long. It is another way of saying that he did not stay dead, but rather, came back to life again.

43:08



“God the Father has now honored Jesus by making him sit **at his right hand**. And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit to us just **as he promised he would do**. **The Holy Spirit is causing** the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

at his right hand

This is the place of highest honor.

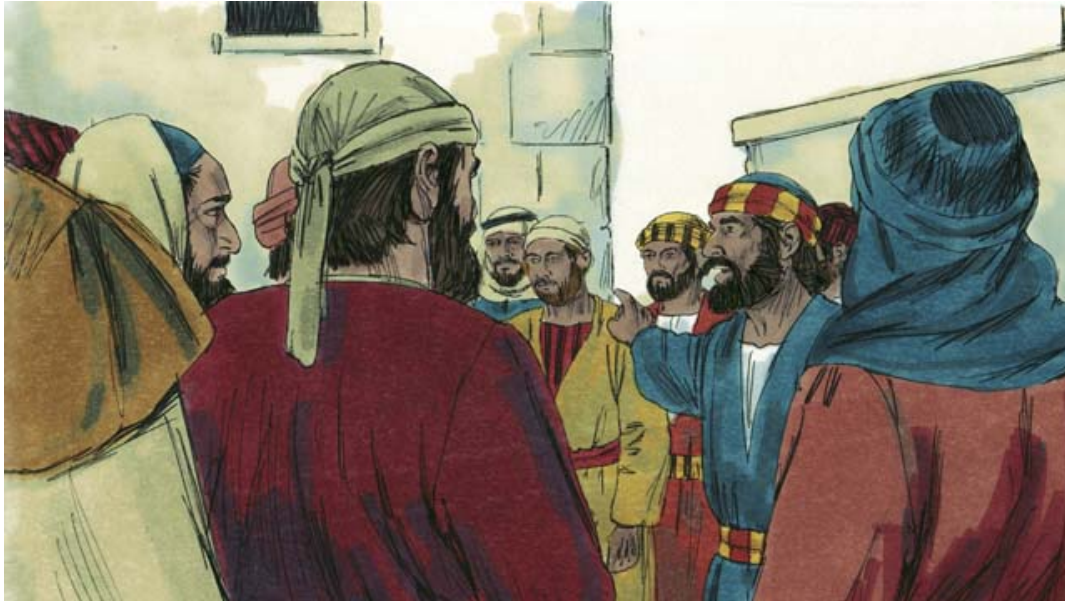
as he promised he would do

Jesus promised to send the Holy Spirit to the disciples in [42:11](#).

The Holy Spirit is causing

The Holy Spirit was the one who enabled the believers to speak the languages of all the people.

43:09

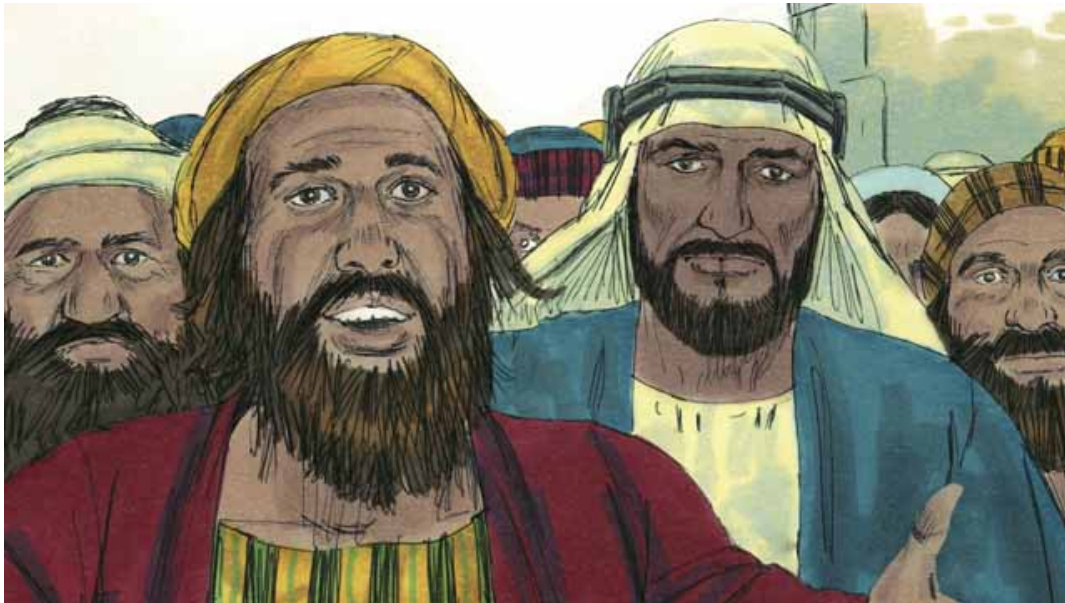


"You crucified this man, Jesus. But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **the Lord of everything** and the Messiah!"

the Lord of everything

By saying this about Jesus, Peter was saying that Jesus is God.

43:10



The people listening to Peter were deeply moved by the things that he said. So they asked Peter and the disciples, “**Brothers**, what should we do?”

Brothers

This was a normal way for a Jew to address fellow Jews.

43:11



Peter answered them, "All of you need God to forgive your sins. So **repent** and be baptized every one of you **in the name of Jesus Christ**. Then God will also give you the Holy Spirit as a gift."

repent

To repent is to change one's way of thinking about God.

in the name of

This phrase means both 'by the authority of' and 'under the authority of.'

Christ

This is the same meaning as "Messiah."

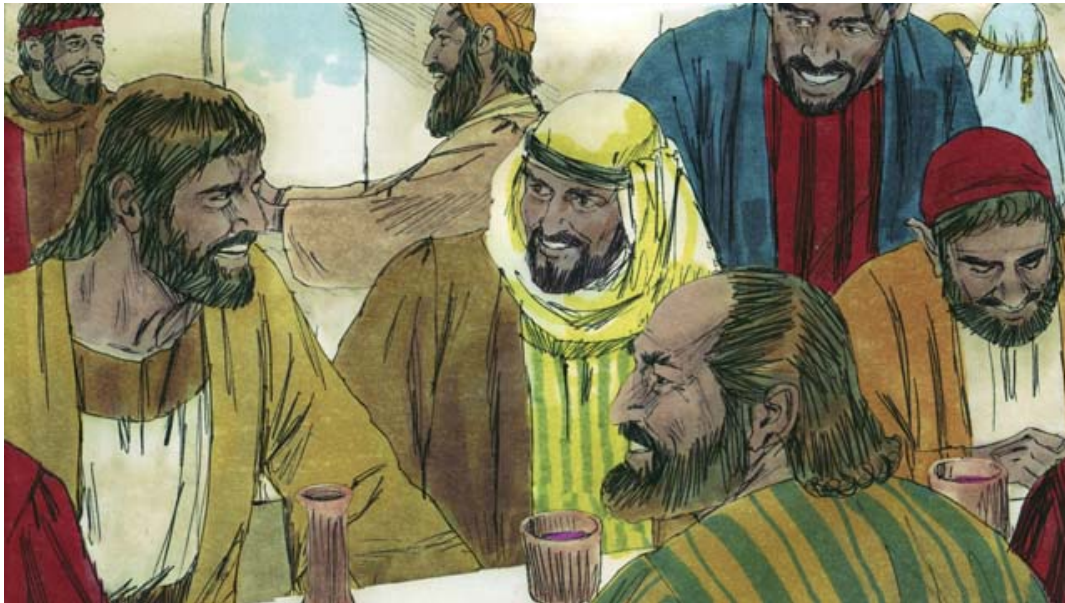
43:12



About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.

(No study notes for this frame)

43:13



The believers continually listened as the apostles taught them. They often met together and ate together, and they often prayed with each other. They praised God together and they shared everything they had with each other. Everyone in the city thought well of them. Every day, more people became believers.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why did the believers constantly gather together in Jerusalem?

They continually gathered together to pray (See: [43:01](#)).

2. What happened to the believers as they were gathered together during Pentecost?

As the believers were gathered together, the house was filled with the sound of a strong wind and something like flames of fire appeared over their heads. They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other languages (See: [43:03](#)).

3. What astonished the crowd when they came to see the believers?

They heard the believers speaking in the native language of each person in the crowd (See: [43:04](#)).

4. How did Peter reply when the crowd said the believers were drunk?

Peter told the crowd that they were not drunk, but that this was the Spirit of God poured out on the believers as the prophet Joel had said long ago (See: [43:05](#)).

5. According to Peter, how did God the Father honor Jesus?

God the Father honored Jesus by making him sit at his right hand, and by making him both Lord over everything and the Messiah (See: [43:06](#), [43:07](#)).

6. When the people asked Peter what they should do, how did he reply?

Peter told them to repent so that God would forgive them and to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ (See: [43:11](#)).

7. How many people believed what Peter preached and became disciples of Jesus that day?

About 3,000 people believed Peter and became disciples of Jesus (See: [43:12](#)).

8. What did the new believers do together in Jerusalem?

They continued to listen to the teaching of the apostles. They also met, ate, and prayed together. And they continually praised God together and shared everything they had with each other (See: [43:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What was the main thing the believers continually did when they gathered together?

Prayer was very important to the believers. They continually gathered together to pray to God as a group, in addition to praying individually. Perhaps that is why God did such powerful works among them.

2. How did the gift of speaking in other languages help the believers proclaim the message of Jesus?

The people in Jerusalem knew the believers could not speak the native languages of everyone in the crowd. When they heard and saw them do this, they knew it was a miracle. Therefore, they were ready to listen to Peter as he preached to them. They could also speak to any person from any language group about Jesus, and that person would understand completely what they said.

3. What did Peter tell the crowd about Jesus?

Peter told them that they had crucified Jesus, but that God had raised him from the dead just as the prophets had said he would. Peter and the believers were eyewitnesses of this. Peter also said that God had honored Jesus by making him sit at his right hand in heaven, and that it was Jesus who was sending the Holy Spirit.

4. How did people respond to Peter's message?

God caused the people to be deeply moved so that they asked Peter what they should do. God will not always cause people to respond in this way, but on that occasion, 3,000 people believed the message and repented.

5. How did the people of Jerusalem react when they saw that the believers continually met together to pray, praise God, and share with each other?

When everyone in Jerusalem saw how the believers treated each other and praised God, they thought well of them, and many more people became believers.

Summary

After Jesus went up to heaven, the believers continually met to pray together. Soon God sent the Holy Spirit to do a mighty work in them. He enabled them to speak in the native language of every person to whom they spoke. People were amazed at this. They listened to Peter as he told them that Jesus, whom they had crucified, had become Lord and Messiah and had sent the Holy Spirit to do this. When they heard this, 3,000 immediately believed in Jesus and were baptized. As they continued to meet together, other people saw how they praised God and helped each other. As a result, the church continued to grow.

44. Peter and John Heal a Beggar

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Acts 3-4:22

44:01



One day Peter and John went to **the Temple**. A crippled man was sitting at the gate, begging for money.

the Temple

This refers to the Jewish Temple in Jerusalem.

44:02



Peter looked at the lame man and said, "I do not have any money to give you. But I will give you what I do have. **In the name of Jesus**, get up and walk!"

In the name of Jesus

This expression here means 'by the authority of Jesus.'

44:03



Immediately, God healed the lame man. He began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. The people in **the courtyard of the Temple** were amazed.

the courtyard of the Temple

Only priests could enter the Temple, but ordinary Jews were allowed to come into this area that surrounded the Temple.

44:04



A crowd of people quickly came to see the man who was healed. Peter said to them, "This man is well, but do not be amazed at this. We did not heal him with our own power or because we honor God. Rather, it is Jesus who healed this man with his power, because we believe in Jesus."
(No study notes for this frame)

44:05



“You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the one who gives life to everybody. But God raised him from the dead. You did not understand what you were doing, but when you did those things, what the prophets said came true. They said that the Messiah would suffer and die. God made it happen in this way. So now, repent and **turn to God**, so that he will wash away your sins.”

You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus

The Jews did this in [39:11](#).

turn to God

Peter is telling the Jews they must begin to obey God.

44:06



When the leaders of the Temple heard Peter and John, **they were very upset**. So they arrested them and put them into prison. But many people believed what Peter said. **The number of men** who believed in Jesus grew to about 5,000.

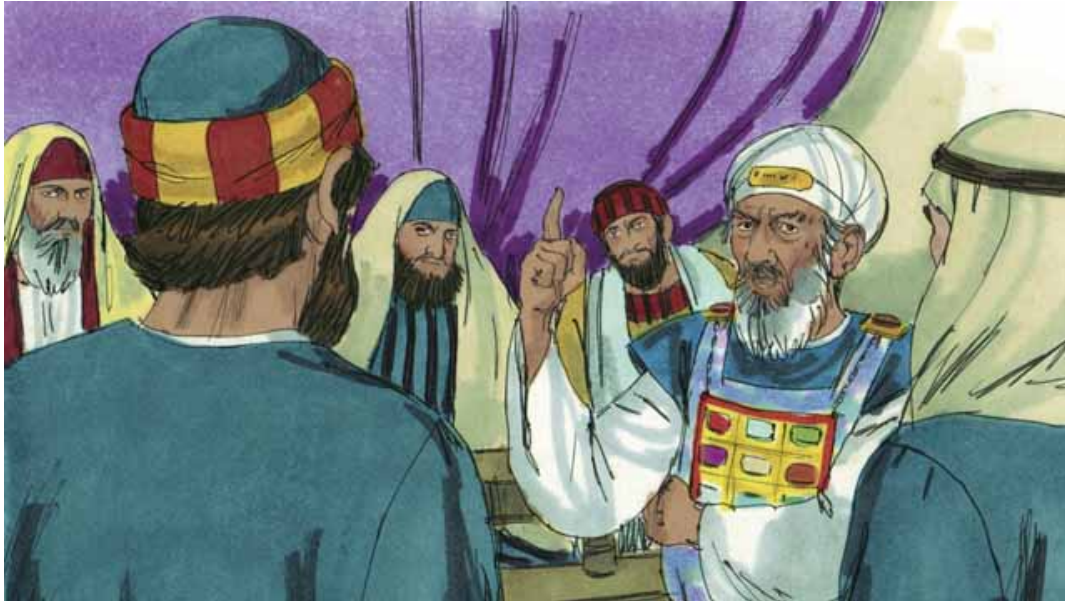
they were very upset

The leaders had Jesus killed because they were jealous that people listened to him. They were upset now that people were still talking about him.

The number of men

This was in addition to the women and children who believed.

44:07



The next day the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They also brought the man who had been crippled. They asked Peter and John, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"

(No study notes for this frame)

44:08



Peter answered them, "This man standing before you has been healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You **rejected him, but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus!**"

rejected him

That is, they refused to believe that Jesus was the Messiah.

but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus

Jesus is the only one who has the power to save people.

to be saved

This means God will not condemn them for their sins.

44:09



The leaders were shocked that Peter and John spoke so boldly. They saw that these men were **ordinary men who were uneducated**. But then they remembered that these men **had been with Jesus**. So they said to them, "We will punish you very much if you give any more messages to the people about this man Jesus." After saying many things like this, they let Peter and John go.

ordinary

That means Peter and John were simple fishermen.

who were uneducated

That means they did not have a formal or religious education.

had been with Jesus

The disciples had spent time with Jesus and he had taught them.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Why was the crippled man sitting at the gate of the Temple?

He was begging for money from the people who were coming to the Temple (See: [44:01](#)).

2. What did Peter give the crippled man instead of money?

Peter told him to get up and walk in the name of Jesus (See: [44:02](#)).

3. According to Peter, whose power healed the crippled man?

Peter said the man was not healed by the power of Peter and John, but by the power of Jesus (See: [44:04](#)).

4. What did Peter tell the people to do?

He told them to repent and turn to God so that God would wash away their sins (See: [44:05](#)).

5. How many believers were there in Jerusalem after this message by Peter?

The number of believers grew to about 5,000 (See: [44:06](#)).

6. What did the Jewish leaders do to Peter and John after they healed the man?

The leaders arrested them and brought them before the high priest and the other leaders (See: [44:07](#)).

7. According to Peter, what was the only way to be saved?

Peter said there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus Christ (See: [44:08](#)).

8. Why were the leaders shocked that Peter and John spoke so boldly?

Peter and John were ordinary, uneducated men. They should not have been able to speak so powerfully (See: [44:09](#)).

9. What did the leaders tell Peter and John before they let them go?

The leaders threatened to punish them if they continued to speak to the people about Jesus (See: [44:09](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What did the crippled man have to do in order to be healed?

It appears that the crippled man did not have to do anything to be healed. We do not even know if he believed in Jesus before he was healed. Instead, Peter believed that Jesus would heal the man, and God healed him.

2. How did the healing of the crippled man happen?

The crippled man was immediately and completely healed. One minute, he could not stand, and the next minute, he was able to walk and jump around. The change was so obvious to everyone that the people who saw it were amazed and responded to Peter's message.

3. Who gave the power to heal the crippled man?

Peter was very careful to tell the people that the power to heal the man did not come from Peter and John. Instead, Jesus healed the man because Peter and John believed in Jesus. Peter and John were very humble about the way God used them.

4. Why did Peter tell the crowd that they killed Jesus?

People cannot be saved if they do not repent. Therefore, Peter clearly explained how they had sinned by rejecting Jesus. Although they did not personally kill Jesus, they wanted Pilate to kill him, and so they were guilty of his death. They needed to confess that sin before God would save them, so Peter was not afraid to confront them.

5. Is there any other way to be saved other than through Jesus?

Peter very clearly told the religious leaders that there is no other way to be saved except through Jesus. The works of the leaders would not save them. No other god could save them. Jesus is the only way.

6. What did the leaders decide was the reason that Peter and John spoke so boldly?

The leaders realized that they spoke so boldly because they had been with Jesus. It did not matter that they were not educated, and that they did not have important positions among their people. They followed Jesus and learned from him. Therefore, they were able to speak boldly and accurately for him.

Summary

Jesus has gone up to heaven, but he continued to give power to his disciples so they could do his work on earth. Jesus powerfully healed the crippled man through Peter so that many saw and believed Peter's message. Jesus also enabled Peter and John to speak boldly to the Jewish leaders and to not be afraid of their threats. Instead, with great power, they continued to proclaim the message of Jesus to everyone. As a result, the church in Jerusalem continued to grow.

45. Stephen and Philip

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Acts 6-8

45:01



One of the leaders among the first **followers of Jesus** was a man named Stephen. Everyone respected him. The Holy Spirit gave him much power and wisdom. Stephen did many miracles. Many people believed him when he taught them to trust in Jesus.

followers of Jesus

This title refers to people who believe in Jesus Christ.

45:02



One day when Stephen was teaching about Jesus, some Jews who did not believe in Jesus came and began to argue with him. They became very angry, so they went to the religious leaders and told lies about him. They said, "We heard Stephen speak evil things about **Moses** and God!" So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the high priest and the other leaders of the Jews. More false witnesses came and lied to them about Stephen.

Moses

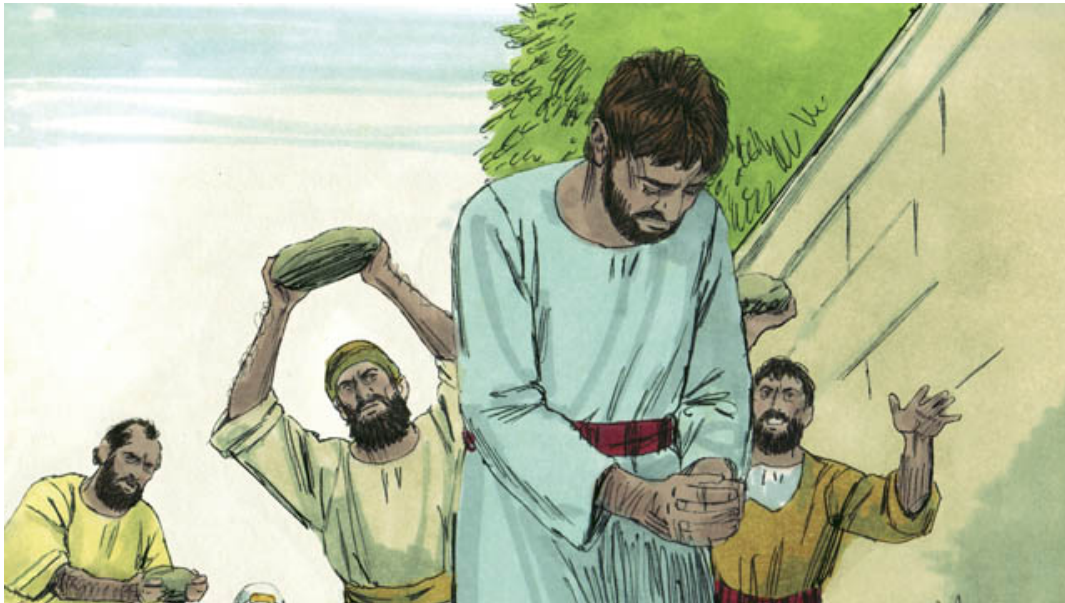
God used Moses to free the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt (See: [12:12](#)). God then gave his laws and commandments to Moses to give to the Israelites (See: [13:07](#)).

45:03



The high priest asked Stephen, "Are these men telling the truth about you?" Stephen began to say many things in order to answer the high priest. He said that God had done many wonderful things for the people of Israel from the time when Abraham lived to the time of Jesus. But the people had always disobeyed God. Stephen said, "You people are stubborn and rebellious against God. You always reject the Holy Spirit, just as our ancestors always rejected God and always killed his prophets. But you did something worse than they did! You killed the Messiah!"
(No study notes for this frame)

45:04



When the religious leaders heard this, they were so angry that they **covered their ears** and yelled loudly. **They dragged Stephen out of the city** and **threw stones at him in order to kill him**.

covered their ears

They did this to show that they did not want to hear what Stephen said.

They dragged Stephen out of the city

They did this as a sign that they did not think Stephen was worthy to live among them.

threw stones at him in order to kill him

This was the method that the Jews used to kill people who they believed had offended God.

45:05



As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "**Jesus, receive my spirit.**" He fell to his knees and cried out again, "**Master, do not hold this sin against them.**" Then he died.

Jesus, receive my spirit

Stephen prayed to Jesus, believing that when he died, his spirit would go to heaven, where Jesus is.

do not hold this sin against them

Stephen asked God to forgive the Jews for killing him.

45:06



That day **many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus**, so the believers fled to other places. **But in spite of opposition**, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.

many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus

The Jews were not satisfied to kill only Stephen. They also began to attack all of the other followers of Jesus who believed in him the same way Stephen did.

But in spite of opposition

The Jewish leaders thought they could stop the spread of Jesus' teaching by persecuting his followers. Instead, this caused them to scatter and spread the message even more widely.

45:07



There was a believer in Jesus named Philip. He fled from Jerusalem, as did most other believers. He went to the region of **Samaria** where he preached to people about Jesus. Many people believed him and were saved. One day, an angel came from God to Philip and told him to go into the wilderness, and to walk down a certain road. Philip went there. As he was walking on the road, he saw a man riding in his **chariot**. This man was an important official from the land of **Ethiopia**. The Holy Spirit told Philip to go and talk with this man.

Samaria

This region was located on the north side of Judea. The Jews hated the Samaritans, and rarely went there.

chariot

A chariot was a type of cart with two wheels that was pulled by horses. A chariot had space for a few people to ride in it. It was used by soldiers and important officials.

Ethiopia

Ethiopia is a country in Eastern Africa.

45:08



So Philip went to the chariot. He heard **the Ethiopian** reading God's word. He was reading what **the prophet Isaiah** had written. The man read, "They led him like a lamb to be killed, and **as a lamb is silent**, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. They took his life away from him."

the Ethiopian

This refers to a person from the country of Ethiopia.

the prophet Isaiah

Isaiah lived many hundreds of years before Jesus.

as a lamb is silent

Lambs are so afraid that they are often silent when someone kills them.

45:09

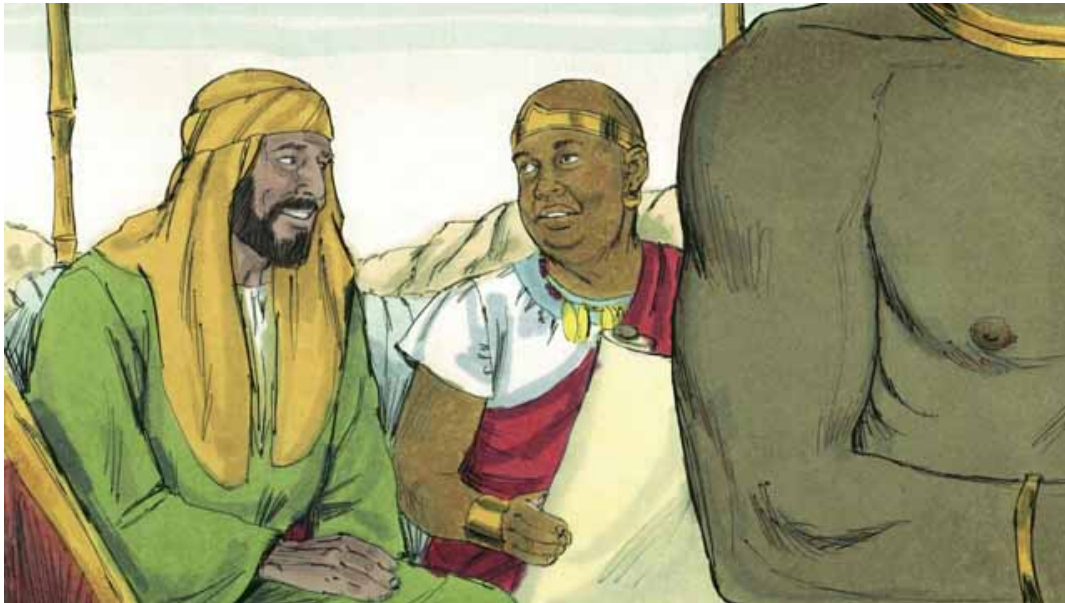


Philip asked the Ethiopian, "Do you understand what you are reading?" The Ethiopian replied, "No. I cannot understand it unless someone explains it to me. Please come and sit next to me. **Was Isaiah writing about himself or someone else?**"

Was Isaiah writing about himself or someone else?

The Ethiopian was not able to understand the prophesy of Isaiah. He needed Philip to help him know whom Isaiah was writing about. This is why the Holy Spirit sent Philip to the Ethiopian.

45:10



Philip got into the chariot and sat down. Then he told the Ethiopian man that Isaiah had written about Jesus. Philip also spoke about many other parts of God's word. In this way, he told the man the good news about Jesus.
(No study notes for this frame)

45:11



As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to **some water**. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! **May I be baptized?**” And he told the driver to stop the chariot.

some water

This refers to a larger body of water such as a pond, lake, or stream.

May I be baptized?

Perhaps Philip told the Ethiopian that the disciples of Jesus were baptized, or perhaps when the Ethiopian was in Jerusalem, he heard that John the Baptist and Jesus baptized their disciples. He now decided that he wanted Philip to baptize him.

45:12



So they went down into the water, and Philip baptized the Ethiopian. After they came up out of the water, the Holy Spirit suddenly **carried Philip away** to another place. There Philip continued to tell people about Jesus.

carried Philip away

The Holy Spirit suddenly took Philip to a different place in a miraculous way.

45:13



The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home. He was happy that he now knew Jesus.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What lie did the unbelieving Jews tell about Stephen?

They lied and said he was speaking evil things about Moses and God (See: [45:02](#)).

2. What evil things did Stephen say the people of Israel had done?

In the past, the people of Israel had always disobeyed God, rejected the Holy Spirit, and killed God's prophets. But Stephen said that they had now done something even worse—they had killed the Messiah (See: [45:03](#)).

3. What did the religious leaders do to Stephen when they heard what he said about them?

They dragged Stephen out of the city and threw stones at him to kill him (See: [45:04](#)).

4. What did Stephen ask God to do for the religious leaders?

Stephen asked God not to hold it against them that they were stoning him (See: [45:05](#)).

5. What did the believers do when the persecution forced them to leave Jerusalem?

They fled to other places and continued to preach about Jesus everywhere they went (See: [45:06](#)).

6. Who did the Holy Spirit tell Philip to go and meet on the road?

He told Philip to meet an important official from Ethiopia, who was riding in his chariot (See: [45:07](#)).

7. What was the official reading when Philip approached him?

He was reading what the prophet Isaiah wrote about a man who was silent as a lamb when he was killed (See: [45:08](#)).

8. Who did Philip say Isaiah had written about?

Philip said Isaiah had written about Jesus (See: [45:10](#)).

9. What did the Ethiopian ask to do when they came to some water?

The Ethiopian asked Philip if he could be baptized (See: [45:11](#)).

10. What happened to Philip after he baptized the Ethiopian?

The Holy Spirit took Philip away to another place where he continued to tell people about Jesus (See: [45:12](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. How did Stephen respond when he was arrested and brought before the high priest and other leaders?

Even though people had lied about Stephen, he boldly proclaimed the message about Jesus. He was not afraid to tell the leaders that they had sinned and disobeyed God.

2. What was Stephen's attitude toward the Jews who killed him?

Stephen did not condemn the people who killed him. Instead, he was gracious to them and asked God not to punish them for killing him. He loved his enemies even as he was dying.

3. Did the persecution of the believers stop the message about Jesus?

God used the persecution of the believers to spread the message about Jesus even further than Jerusalem. Before the persecution, the believers only preached in Jerusalem. But after the persecution started, they scattered everywhere and preached the message wherever they went.

4. What was Philip doing when the Holy Spirit told him to go to the wilderness to meet the Ethiopian?

Philip was preaching in Samaria, and many people were believing in Jesus as a result. However, the Holy Spirit sent Philip away from Samaria to meet only the Ethiopian. It seems that it was so important that the Ethiopian believed that God took Philip away from speaking to many other people. Philip obeyed God and went.

5. When Philip approached the Ethiopian, how was it exactly the right time for the Ethiopian to hear about Jesus?

The Ethiopian was reading about the Messiah in the book of the prophet Isaiah, but did not know that Isaiah was writing about Jesus. The Holy Spirit brought Philip to the Ethiopian at exactly the right time when he was willing to listen to God's message. Because Philip came to him then, the Ethiopian quickly believed and was baptized.

6. Who suggested that the Ethiopian be baptized?

The Ethiopian himself knew that he should honor Jesus by being baptized in his name. Therefore, he asked Philip to baptize him. Philip did that, and the Ethiopian continued on to his home, happy to know Jesus.

Summary

At first, the Jews approved of the followers of Jesus because of the miracles they did and the way they lived. But they soon turned against the believers. They accused Stephen of saying evil things about Moses and God, and then killed him. After that, they persecuted the believers and forced them to leave Jerusalem and scatter to other places. But God used the persecution to cause the believers to proclaim the message about Jesus to everyone everywhere. Many people believed in Jesus at the preaching Philip and others. But God also sought out individual people, such as the Ethiopian official, who needed to hear about Jesus. Even during the persecution, God was at work to powerfully grow his church.

46. Saul Becomes a Follower of Jesus

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Acts 8:1-3; 9:1-31; 11:19-26; 13-14

46:01



There was a man named **Saul** who did not believe in Jesus. When he was a young man, he **guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen**. Later he persecuted the believers. He went from house to house in Jerusalem to arrest both men and women and to put them in prison. Then the high priest gave Saul permission to go to the city of **Damascus**. He told Saul to arrest followers of Jesus there and to bring them back to Jerusalem.

Saul

This was not the same man as King Saul in the Old Testament. Saul would later change his name to Paul (See: [47:01](#)).

guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen

See [45:06](#).

Damascus

Damascus is now the capital of the country of Syria. During Saul's time, it was a city belonging to the Roman Empire. Most of the people there were not Jewish, but there were some Jews and also some followers of Jesus living there.

46:02



So Saul began to travel to Damascus. Just before he reached the city, a bright light in the sky shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why are you persecuting me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!"
(No study notes for this frame)

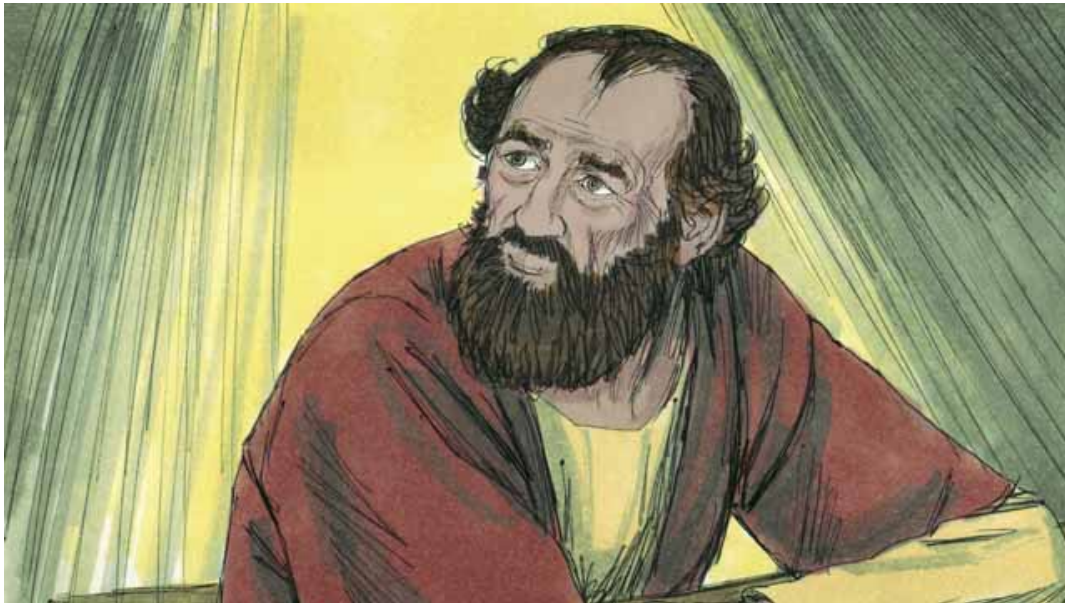
46:03



When Saul got up, he could not see. His friends had to lead him into Damascus. Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days.

(No study notes for this frame)

46:04



There was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias. God said to him, "Go to the house where Saul is staying. Place your hands on him so that he can see again." **But Ananias said**, "Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers." God answered him, "Go! I have chosen him **to declare my name** to the Jews and to people from other people groups. He will suffer many things **for my name.**"

But Ananias said

Ananias did not want to go to Saul because he was afraid Saul would arrest him.

to declare my name

This could mean 'to teach about me' or 'to make me known.'

for my name

Saul would suffer because he would be associated with Jesus and serve Jesus.

46:05



So Ananias went to Saul, **placed his hands on him**, and said, "Jesus, who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can see again, and so the Holy Spirit will fill you." Immediately Saul was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him. Then Saul ate some food and became strong again.

placed his hands on him

This was a symbol that Ananias accepted Saul and gave God's message to him.

46:06



Right away Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus. He said, "Jesus is the Son of God!" The Jews were amazed because Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! Saul **argued with the Jews**. He showed that Jesus was the Messiah.

argued with the Jews

Saul spoke persuasively with the Jews to convince them to believe in Jesus.

46:07



After many days, the Jews made a plan to kill Saul. They sent people to watch for him at **the city gates** in order to kill him. But Saul heard about the plan, and his friends helped him escape. One night they **lowered him over the city wall in a basket**. After Saul escaped from Damascus, he continued to preach about Jesus.

the city gates

The gates were the only normal way into or out of the walled cities.

lowered him over the city wall in a basket

The other believers helped Saul get into a large basket and lowered the basket with him in it over the city wall so he could leave the city without going through the gates where the Jews waited to kill him.

46:08



Saul went to Jerusalem to meet with the apostles, but they were afraid of him. Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles. He told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus. After that the apostles **accepted Saul**.

accepted Saul

Barnabas convinced the apostles that Saul also was a believer in Jesus.

46:09



Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to **the city of Antioch** and preached about Jesus. Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, people who were not Jews became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and **to strengthen the church**. It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called '**Christians**.'

the city of Antioch

This was an ancient city located in what is now the southernmost tip of the modern country of Turkey, near its border with Syria and close to the Mediterranean Sea. It was about 450 miles northwest of Jerusalem.

to strengthen the church

Barnabas and Saul helped the church to grow strong spiritually by teaching them about God and about Jesus.

Christians

They were called Christians because they believe in Jesus Christ.

46:10



One day, the followers of Jesus at Antioch were fasting and praying. The Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.” So the church in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and **placed their hands on them**. Then they sent them out to preach the good news about Jesus in many other places. Barnabas and Saul taught people in different people groups, and many people believed in Jesus.

placed their hands on them

This was a symbol that they were sending Barnabas and Saul out to work for God on behalf of all the followers of Jesus.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What did Saul do to the believers in Jerusalem?

He persecuted them by going from house to house to arrest both men and women and put them in prison (See: [46:01](#)).

2. Why did Saul go to the city of Damascus?

The high priest gave Saul permission to go to Damascus to arrest the followers of Jesus there and bring them back to Jerusalem (See: [46:01](#)).

3. What happened to Saul as he was traveling to Damascus?

A bright light shone around him and he heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why are you persecuting me?" (See: [46:03](#)).

4. Who did God send to Saul so that he could see again?

God sent a disciple in Damascus named Ananias to Saul to make him see again (See: [46:04](#)).

5. Who did Saul tell the Jews in Damascus that Jesus was?

Saul told them that Jesus was the Son of God and the Messiah (See: [46:05](#)).

6. How did Saul escape from the Jews in Damascus when they wanted to kill him?

Saul's friends lowered him over the city wall in a basket at night so he could escape (See: [46:07](#)).

7. What happened when Saul tried to meet with the apostles in Jerusalem?

The apostles were afraid of Saul until Barnabas took him to them and explained how Saul had boldly preached about Jesus in Damascus (See: [46:08](#)).

8. How were the believers in Antioch different from the believers in Jerusalem?

The believers in Antioch were not Jews (See: [46:09](#)).

9. Who did the Holy Spirit tell the followers of Jesus in Antioch to set apart to do God's work in other places?

The Holy Spirit told them to set apart Barnabas and Saul to do God's work, so they sent them out (See: [46:10](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. What was Saul's attitude about the believers before the Lord appeared to him?

Saul hated the believers and tried to destroy them. He guarded the robes of the people who killed Stephen. Later, he arrested believers throughout Jerusalem, and planned to do the same thing in Damascus. He was perhaps the least likely person we would expect God to save and use for his glory.

2. Why do you think Jesus told Saul that he was persecuting Jesus?

Jesus was already in heaven when Saul began to persecute the believers. But the believers represented Jesus on earth, so when Saul persecuted them, it was as if he was persecuting Jesus himself. Jesus cares about what happens to the believers.

What did God tell Ananias that he had chosen Saul to do?

3.

God told Ananias that he had chosen Saul to declare his name to the Jews and to people from other people groups, and to suffer in God's name. Even though Saul had hated the believers and persecuted them, God had a plan to use Saul to spread the good news about Jesus throughout the world of that day.

4. What happened in Damascus when Saul preached about Jesus?

Saul argued boldly with the Jews to prove that Jesus was the Son of God. However, it is not clear if many people believed. Perhaps arguing about Jesus is not the best way to convince people to repent of their sin. After a time, the Jews tried to kill Saul, and he had to escape at night.

5. Who went to Antioch to teach the new believers there?

The two people who went to teach the believers at Antioch were Barnabas and Saul. Saul was the one who God said he would send to people of other nations, such as the people at Antioch. And Barnabas was the one who spoke for Saul and convinced the apostles in Jerusalem to accept him. Both men were uniquely prepared to teach people who were not Jews.

6. How did the Holy Spirit send out Barnabas and Saul?

The Holy Spirit spoke to the believers in the church at Antioch in order to send out Barnabas and Saul. The church then prayed for them, placed their hands on them, and supported them as they went out to preach among the other people groups. God did not send them out alone. Instead, he worked through the church so the believers were deeply involved in the work of Barnabas and Saul.

Summary

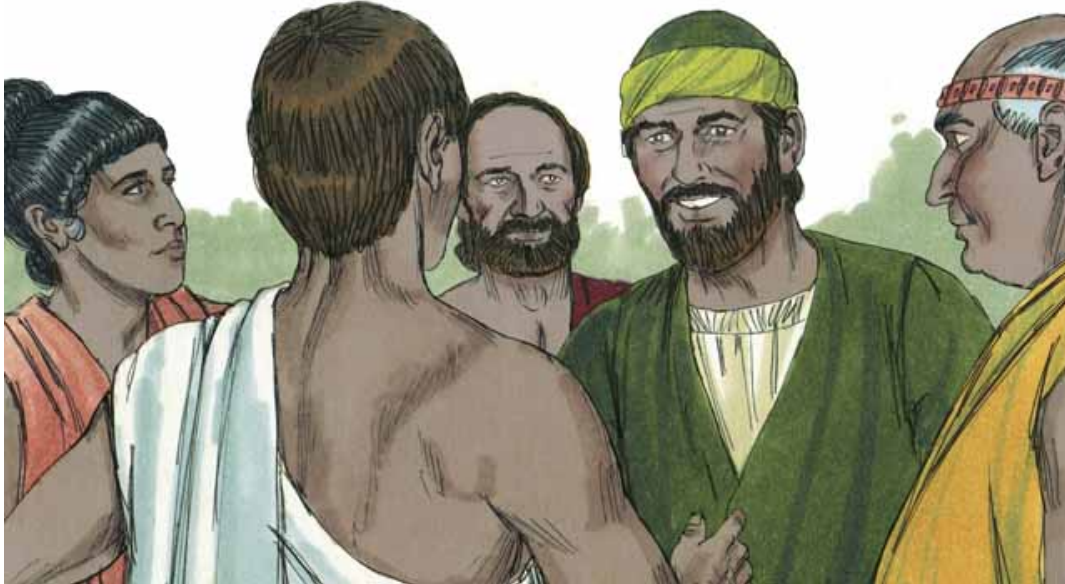
As the Jews continued to persecute the believers, God did an amazing thing. He chose to set apart Saul, one of the worst persecutors of the church, and cause him to preach boldly about Jesus! He appeared to Saul on the road in blazing light, rebuked him, and made Saul blind. As a result, Saul believed in Jesus and began to boldly proclaim his name. When the Jews drove him out of Damascus, he went to Jerusalem and continued to preach there. Later, he went with Barnabas to Antioch and taught the first believers who were not Jews. And finally, God told the church at Antioch to send out Barnabas and Saul to preach to other people groups everywhere. God continued to spread the message of Jesus.

47. Paul and Silas in Philippi

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Acts 16:11-40

47:01



As Saul traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, 'Paul.' One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus. They went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray. There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.

Philippi

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece.

47:02

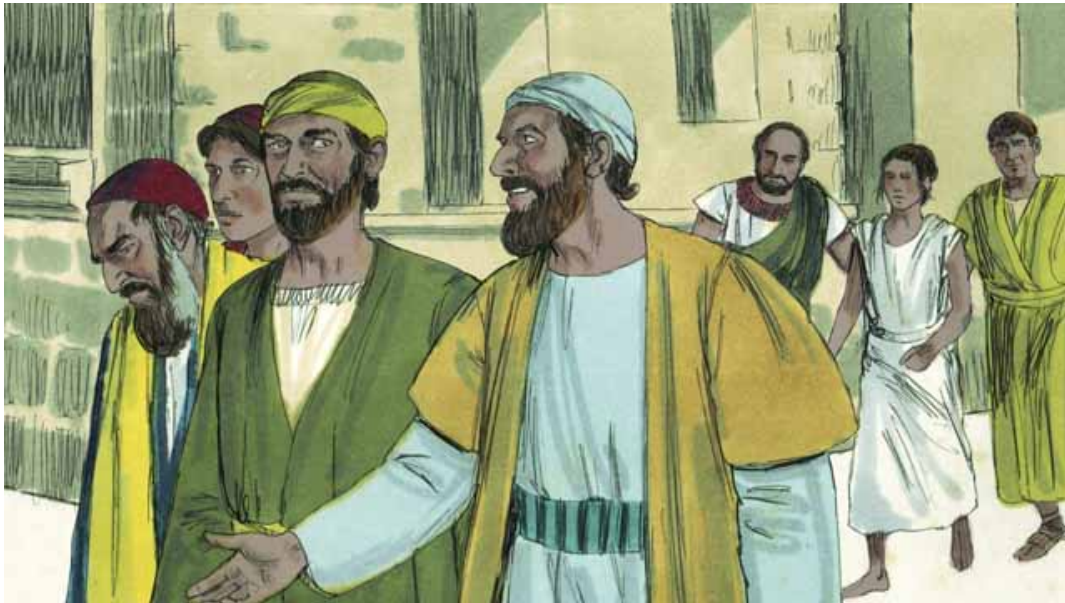


God enabled Lydia to believe the message about Jesus. Paul and Silas baptized her and her family. **She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house**, so they stayed there.

She invited Paul and Silas to stay at her house

This was the normal custom of the day for people to provide hospitality to visitors in their homes. There were no immoral motives in this arrangement.

47:03

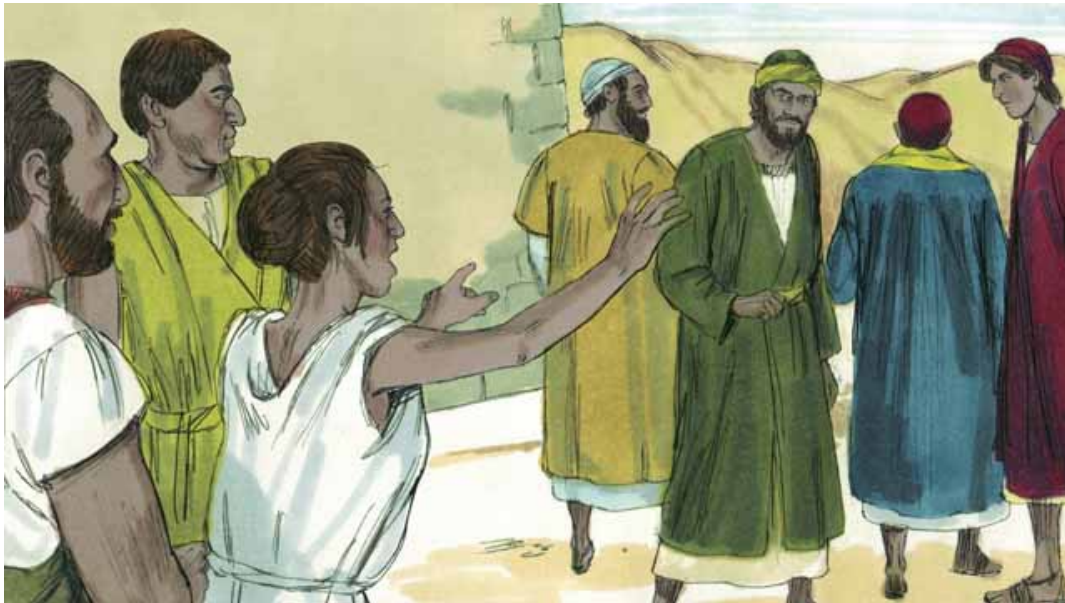


Paul and Silas often met with people at the place where Jews prayed. Every day as they walked there, a slave girl possessed by a demon followed them. By means of this demon, she predicted the future for people, so she made a lot of money for her masters **as a fortuneteller**.

as a fortuneteller

The masters of the slave girl charged people money for her to tell them what would happen to them in the future.

47:04



The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. They are telling you the way to be saved!" She did this so often that **Paul became annoyed**.

Paul became annoyed

Paul and Silas were indeed telling people how to be saved. But the demon who controlled the girl was the one who was actually saying these things. Paul did not want to accept praise from a demon.

47:05



Finally, one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the demon that was in her, "**In the name of Jesus**, come out of her." Right away the demon left her.

In the name of Jesus

Because of Jesus' authority, Paul could command the demon to leave.

47:06



The men who owned the slave girl became very angry! They realized that, **without the demon**, the slave girl could not tell people the future. This meant that people would no longer pay her owners to have her tell their future.

without the demon

The owners of the slave girl knew that a demon gave her the power to tell what would happen in the future. They only thought of their own profit, and were not happy that the girl was now freed from the demon that had controlled her.

47:07

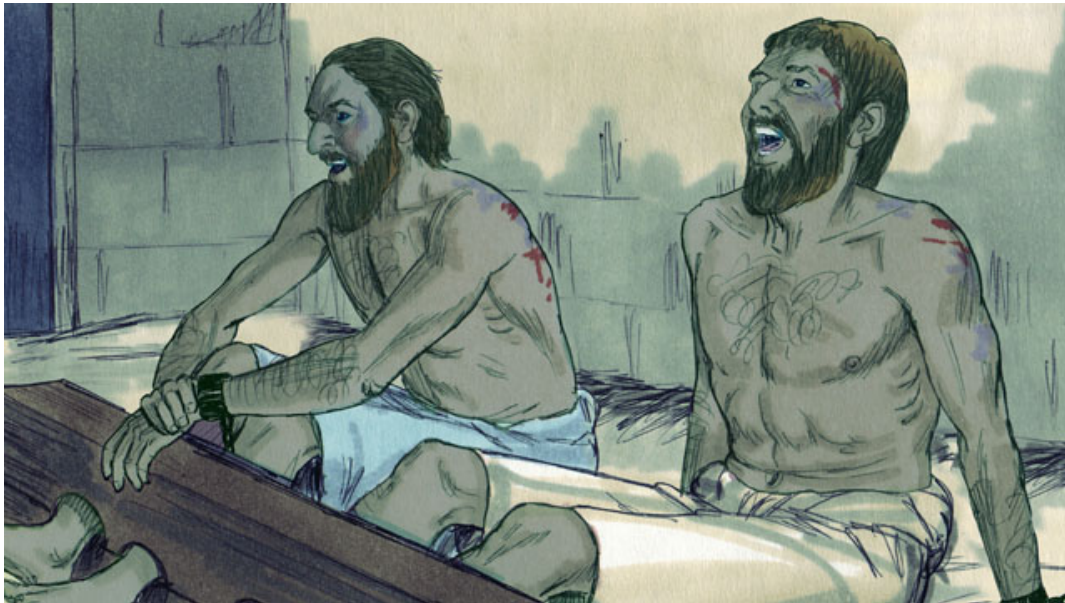


So the owners of the slave girl took **Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities**, who beat Paul and Silas, and then threw them into jail.

Paul and Silas to the Roman authorities

Paul and Silas had done nothing wrong, but they were strangers in Philippi. The Roman authorities believed the false accusations of the owners of the slave girl and punished Paul and Silas.

47:08



They put Paul and Silas in the part of the prison where there were the most guards. They even attached their feet to large pieces of wood. But in the middle of the night, Paul and Silas were **singing songs of praise to God**.

singing songs of praise to God

Paul and Silas were able to trust God even though the authorities beat them and put them in prison. Therefore, they were singing and praising God.

47:09



Suddenly, there was a violent earthquake! All the prison doors opened wide, and **the chains of all the prisoners fell off.**

the chains of all the prisoners fell off

God caused this to happen. A natural earthquake would not release a person from the chains on their hands and feet.

47:10



Then **the jailer** woke up. He saw that the prison doors were open. He thought that all the prisoners had escaped. He was afraid the Roman authorities would kill him for allowing them to go, so **he got ready to kill himself!** But Paul saw him and shouted, "Stop! Do not hurt yourself. We are all here."

the jailer

This could mean 'the official in charge of the jail.'

he got ready to kill himself!

The jailer was so afraid, thinking that the prisoners had escaped, that he intended to kill himself rather than be punished for his failure to guard them.

47:11



The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, **“What must I do to be saved?”** Paul answered, **“Believe in Jesus, the Master,** and you and your family will be saved.” Then the jailer took Paul and Silas into his home and washed their wounds. Paul preached the good news about Jesus to everyone in his house.

What must I do to be saved?

The jailer knew that it was God who caused the earthquake and released the prisoners. He wanted to know how he could be saved from being punished by that powerful God.

Believe in Jesus, the Master

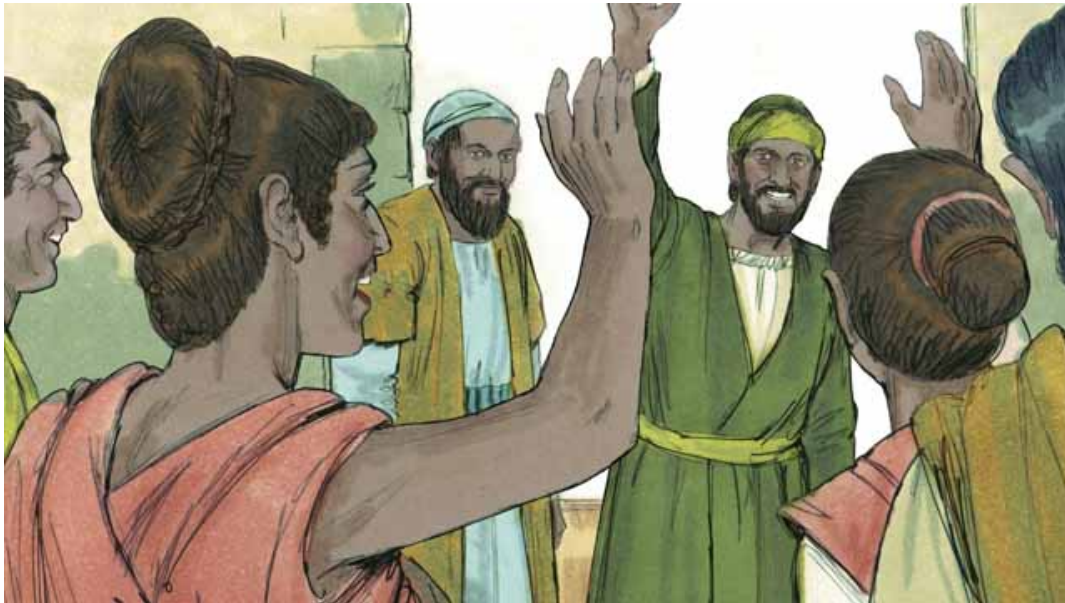
This was addressed to both the jailer and his family, who all then believed and were baptized.

47:12



The jailer and his whole family believed in Jesus, so Paul and Silas baptized them. Then the jailer gave Paul and Silas a meal, and they rejoiced together.
(No study notes for this frame)

47:13



The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and Silas visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city. **The good news about Jesus kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.**

The good news about Jesus kept spreading

People in more and more places were hearing the good news about Jesus.

the Church kept growing

More and more people were becoming part of the Church by believing in Jesus.

47:14



Paul and other leaders of the believers traveled to many cities. They preached and taught people the good news about Jesus. They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches. Some of these letters became books of the Bible.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. Who was Paul?

Paul was Saul using his Roman name as he traveled through the Roman Empire (See: [47:01](#)).

2. Where did Paul and Silas meet Lydia?

Paul and Silas met Lydia in Philippi when they went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray (See: [47:02](#)).

3. What did the demon enable the slave girl to do for her masters?

The demon enabled her to predict the future for people. They paid her masters a lot of money for that (See: [47:03](#)).

4. Why was Paul annoyed with the slave girl?

The demon caused her to keep telling people that Paul and Silas were servants of the Most High God (See: [47:04](#)).

5. What did the owners of the slave girl do when Paul forced the demon to leave her?

They became very angry with Paul and Silas, for they realized the girl could no longer tell the future, and people would no longer pay them. So they took Paul and Silas to the authorities, who beat them and put them into jail (See: [47:06](#), [47:07](#)).

6. What happened when the earthquake shook the jail during the night?

All the prison doors opened wide, and the chains of all the prisoners fell off. As a result, the jailer thought the prisoners had escaped, and planned to kill himself (See: [47:09](#), [47:10](#)).

7. What did the jailer ask Paul and Silas when they stopped him from killing himself?

The jailer asked them what he must do in order to be saved (See: [47:11](#)).

8. Why did Paul and Silas baptize the jailer and his whole family?

Paul and Silas baptized them because they all believed in Jesus (See: [47:12](#)).

9. What did Paul do after he and Silas were released from jail in Philippi?

Paul traveled to many cities to preach the good news about Jesus. He also wrote many letters to teach and encourage the believers in the churches. Some of his letters became books of the Bible (See: [47:13](#), [47:14](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why did Paul and Silas go to the river in Philippi?

When Paul and Silas arrived in Philippi, they looked for a place where people would be willing to hear about Jesus. They went to the river because that was the place where people went to pray to God.

2. Why did Lydia need to believe in Jesus if she already loved and worshiped God?

Lydia perhaps followed the Jewish religion. She knew about God, but she did not know about Jesus. When Paul and Silas told her about Jesus, she believed in him and was baptized. It is not enough for a person to believe in God. They must also believe in Jesus, whom God sent, in order to be saved from their sins.

3. Why was Paul so annoyed by the demon that was speaking the truth about Paul and Silas?

Demons are evil, and the enemies of God. Therefore, Paul was not willing to have them speak about God—even if what they said at that time was true. There can be no friendship between demons and the servants of God.

4. What were Paul and Silas doing in the middle of the night while they were in jail?

Even though the authorities beat Paul and Silas and threw them into jail, they were singing songs of praise to God. They trusted God completely, and were able to praise him in the most difficult situations.

5. Why did Paul stop the jailer from killing himself?

Paul had mercy on the jailer. Because he thought the prisoners had escaped, the jailer was so afraid that he planned to kill himself. But Paul and Silas remained in the prison instead of escaping so that they could tell the jailer about Jesus. As a result, the jailer and his whole family believed.

6. To whom did Paul write the letters that became books of the Bible?

Paul wrote all of his letters to the believers in the churches of that time. However, the Holy Spirit guided Paul so that some of his books are also written to us today to encourage and teach us. Therefore, each book of the Bible has both an ancient and a modern audience.

Summary

Paul never forgot that God saved him from persecuting the believers and enabled him to proclaim the message about Jesus to people in many different people groups. Because God was so gracious to him, Paul was willing to go anywhere for God, and to praise him even when he was suffering. As a result, God used Paul powerfully to preach to people in many cities throughout the world. In addition, Paul wrote many letters to believers in different cities to teach and encourage them. Many of these letters became books of the Bible and continue to teach and encourage us today. Therefore, Paul's ministry extended to places he never visited, and continues long after his death, even to today.

48. Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 1-3, 6, 14, 22; Exodus 12, 20; 2 Samuel 7; Hebrews 3:1-6, 4:14-5:10, 7:1-8:13, 9:11-10:18; Revelation 21

48:01



When **God created the world**, everything was **perfect**. **There was no sin**. **Adam and Eve** loved each other, and they loved God. There was no sickness or death. This was the way God wanted the world to be.

God created the world

See [01:01](#).

perfect

Everything was exactly as it should have been in order to accomplish all that God intended for it.

Adam and Eve

See [01:14](#).

There was no sin

See [02:01](#).

48:02



Satan spoke to Eve in **the garden** through the snake because he wanted to **deceive her**. Then she and Adam sinned against God. **Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies**.

Satan

Satan is a spirit being that God created. He rebelled against God and became God's enemy.

the garden

This refers to the garden created by God where he placed the first man and woman [01:10](#).

deceive her

Satan lied to Eve by leading her to doubt what God had said. By doing this, he tricked her into disobeying God (See: [02:04](#)).

Because they sinned, everyone on earth dies

See [01:11](#).

48:03



Because Adam and Eve sinned, something even worse happened. They became enemies of God. As a result, every person since then has sinned. Every person is an enemy of God from birth. There was no peace between people and God. But God wanted to make peace.
(No study notes for this frame)

48:04



God promised that one of Eve's descendants would **crush Satan's head**, and Satan would **bite his heel**. In other words, Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again. The Messiah would take away Satan's power forever. Many years later, God showed that the Messiah is Jesus.

crush Satan's head

God made this promise in [02:09](#). This (crushing the head) represents a person stepping on the head of a snake. The head is completely crushed, and the snake is dead and therefore harmless.

bite his heel

This represents a snake on the ground biting a person's foot. In this case, Satan would cause the Messiah to suffer, but would not destroy him (See: [02:09](#)).

48:05



God told Noah to build a boat to save his family from the flood he was going to send. This is how God saved the people who believed in him. In the same way, everyone deserves death from God because they have sinned. But God sent Jesus to save everyone who believes in him.

God told Noah to build a boat

See [03:02](#).

48:06



For hundreds of years, **priests kept on offering sacrifices** to God. This showed people that they committed sin and that they deserved God's punishment. But those sacrifices could not forgive their sins. Jesus did what the priests could not do. **He gave himself** to be the only sacrifice that could take away everyone's sin. He accepted onto himself the punishment that we should have received for our sins. For this reason, Jesus is the Great High Priest.

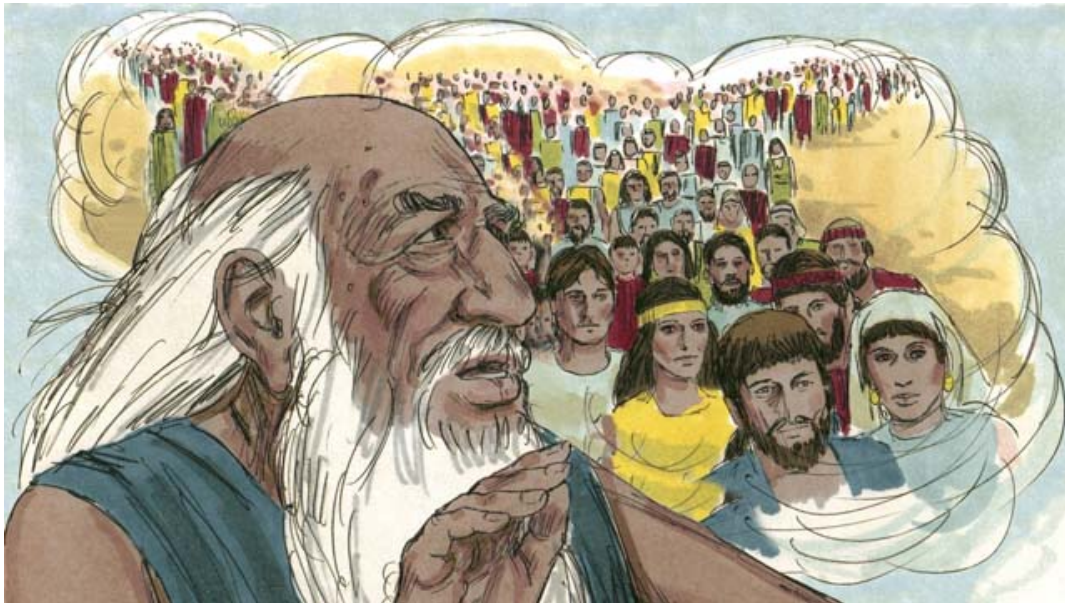
priests kept on offering sacrifices

See [13:09](#).

He gave himself

That is, Jesus allowed himself to be killed.

48:07



God had told Abraham, "**I will bless all the people groups on the earth** through you." Jesus was a descendant of this Abraham. God blesses all the people groups through Abraham, because God saves from sin everyone who believes in Jesus. When these people believe in Jesus, God considers them to be descendants of Abraham.

I will bless all the people groups on the earth

See [04:04](#).

48:08



God told Abraham to **sacrifice his own son, Isaac**, to him. But then God gave a ram for the sacrifice instead of Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God gave Jesus to be a sacrifice to die in our place. That is why we call Jesus **the Lamb of God**.

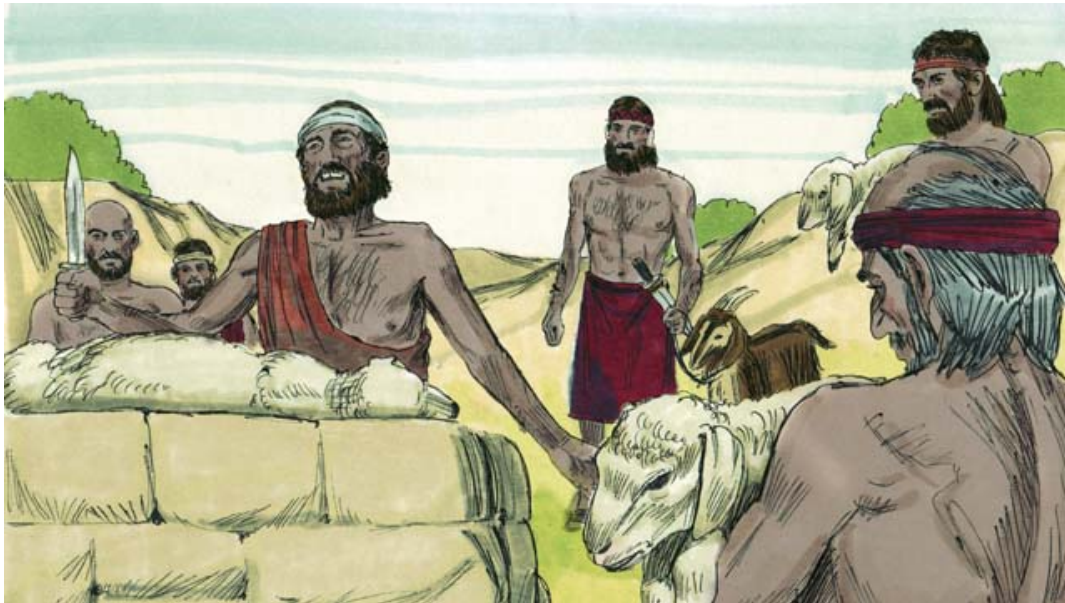
sacrifice his own son, Isaac

See [05:06](#).

the Lamb of God

See [24:06](#).

48:09



When God **sent the last plague on Egypt**, he told each Israelite family to **kill a lamb**. The lamb must not have any flaws. Then they had to spread its blood on the tops and sides of their door frames. When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. When this happened, God called this **the Passover**.

sent the last plague on Egypt

This was the tenth plague when God caused the firstborn sons of the Egyptians to die (See: [11:07](#)).

kill a lamb

See [11:02](#).

the Passover

The Passover is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt (See: [12:14](#)).

48:10



Jesus is like a Passover Lamb. He never sinned, so there was nothing wrong with him. He was killed at the time of the Passover festival. When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood of Jesus** pays for that person's sin. It is as if God passed over that person, because he does not punish him.

blood of Jesus

This refers to the sacrifice of himself that Jesus made when he died for sinners.

48:11



God made **a covenant** with the Israelites because they were the people he had chosen to belong to himself. But God has now made a New Covenant that is for everyone. If anyone in any people group accepts this New Covenant, he joins God's people. He does this because he believes in Jesus.

a covenant

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

48:12

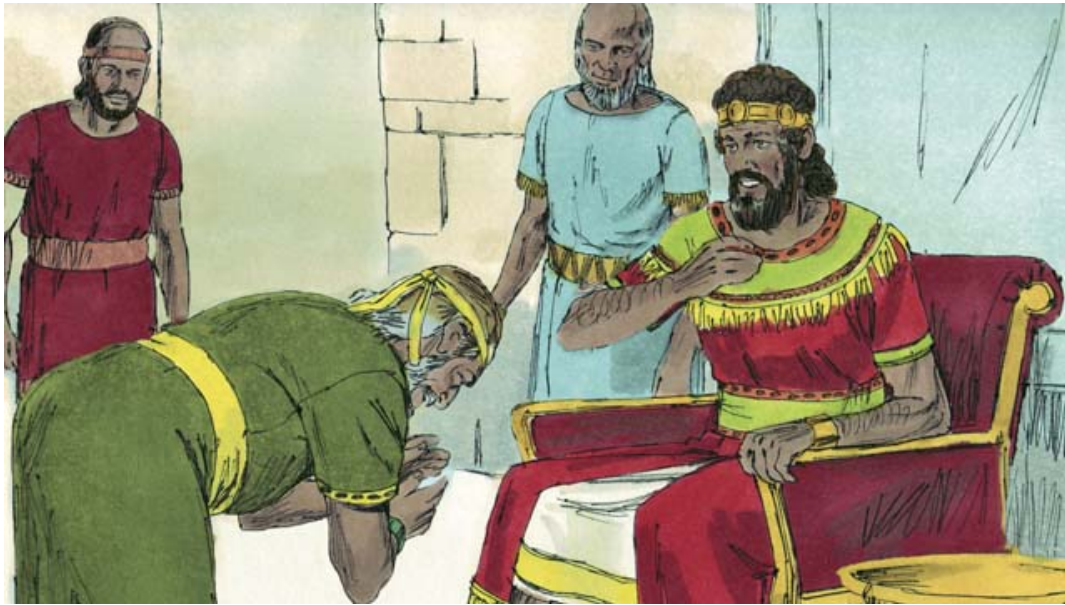


Moses was a prophet who proclaimed the word of God with great power. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is God, so all the things he did and said were the actions and words of God. That is why the Scriptures **call Jesus the Word of God**.

call Jesus the Word of God

Jesus reveals God's character. The other prophets preached the message God gave them, but Jesus revealed God in his preaching and his actions.

48:13



God promised King David that one of his descendants would rule as king over God's people forever. Jesus is the Son of God and the Messiah, so he is the descendant of David who can rule forever.

God promised King David

See [17:07](#).

48:14



David was a king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace forever.
(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. What was the world like when God rested from its creation?

Everything was perfect, and there was no sin, sickness, or death. Adam and Eve loved each other and they loved God (See: [48:01](#)).

2. Why do people die?

Everyone dies because Adam and Eve sinned against God (See: [48:02](#)).

3. What did God promise that the Messiah would do to Satan?

God promised that the Messiah would take away Satan's power forever (See: [48:04](#)).

4. What did the sacrifices that the priest offered to God accomplish?

These sacrifices showed people that they had sinned, and that they deserved God's punishment (See: [48:06](#)).

5. Who did God say he would bless through Abraham?

God said he would bless all the people groups on earth through Abraham (See: [48:07](#)).

6. Why do we call Jesus the "Lamb of God?"

God gave Abraham a lamb to sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. In the same way, Jesus died in our place as a sacrifice for our sins. That is why he is called the "Lamb of God" (See: [48:08](#)).

7. How is Jesus like the Passover lamb?

Just as God spared the Jews who put the blood of the lamb on their doors, he will not punish the person for whom Jesus shed his blood (See: [48:09](#), [48:10](#)).

8. Why is Jesus a greater prophet than Moses?

Everything Jesus did and said were the actions and words of God (See: [48:12](#)).

9. Why is Jesus able to rule forever?

Jesus is the descendant of King David and also the Messiah. Therefore, he will rule forever (See: [48:13](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why is there evil, suffering, and death in the world?

People do evil things, suffer, and die because Adam and Eve sinned against God. They became sinners because of that, and so did all of their descendants. As a result, every person in the world is a sinner.

2. Why is there no peace between God and people?

When Adam and Eve sinned, they and their descendants became enemies of God. Therefore, there is no peace between God and people.

3. Why did God require sacrifices if they cannot save people from their sins?

God required sacrifices in order to show them that only Jesus, the perfect high priest, could offer a sacrifice that would take away their sins. Any other sacrifice does not save us, but only shows us that we need to believe in Jesus.

4. Who does God want to save from their sins?

God wants to save people from every people group from their sins. Therefore, we must proclaim the message about Jesus to every people group so they can believe in Jesus and be saved.

5. How does the Lamb of God keep God from punishing those who believe in him?

Jesus was perfect, and never sinned. Therefore, when he shed his blood, he died to pay the penalty for our sins, and not for his own. We can be confident, then, that God will not punish us, since Jesus has already paid for our sins.

6. How does a person accept the New Covenant?

The New Covenant that God made with us means that anyone who believes in Jesus belongs to God. It is no longer necessary to obey the Law (that is, the Old Covenant) in order to be saved. Jesus already completely fulfilled the Law. We only need to believe in him in order to be saved.

7. How is Jesus a greater king than King David?

King David ruled over Israel. But Jesus will rule over the entire universe. Therefore, he is a greater king than his ancestor, King David.

Summary

The world was perfect when God created it. But Adam and Eve sinned against God. As a result, they and their ancestors became sinners and enemies of God. But God chose to make a way for there to be peace between God and people. He sent his Son, Jesus, as a great high priest to sacrifice himself as the Lamb of God to pay for our sins. No other sacrifice could do that. Everyone who believes in Jesus belongs to God, and God will not punish them. God wants people from every people group to believe in Jesus and be part of his kingdom when he will rule over the entire universe with justice and peace.

49. God's New Covenant

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Genesis 3; Matthew 13-14; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 2; 10:25-37; 15; John 3:16; Romans 3:21-26, 5:1-11; 2 Corinthians 5:17-21; Colossians 1:13-14; 1 John 1:5-10

49:01



An angel told Mary, a young woman, that she would give birth to God's Son. She was still a virgin, but **the Holy Spirit came to her and made her become pregnant**. She gave birth to a son and named him Jesus. Therefore, Jesus is both God and human.

the Holy Spirit came to her and made her become pregnant

Scholars cannot explain how the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant. However, the Holy Spirit does not have a physical body, so we know that the Holy Spirit did not have sexual relations with Mary (See: [22:05](#)).

49:02



Jesus did many miracles that show that he is God. **He walked on water** and stopped storms. He healed many sick people and **drove demons out** of many others. **He raised dead people to life**, and he turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food **to feed over 5,000 people**.

He walked on water

See [31:03](#).

drove demons out

See [26:09](#).

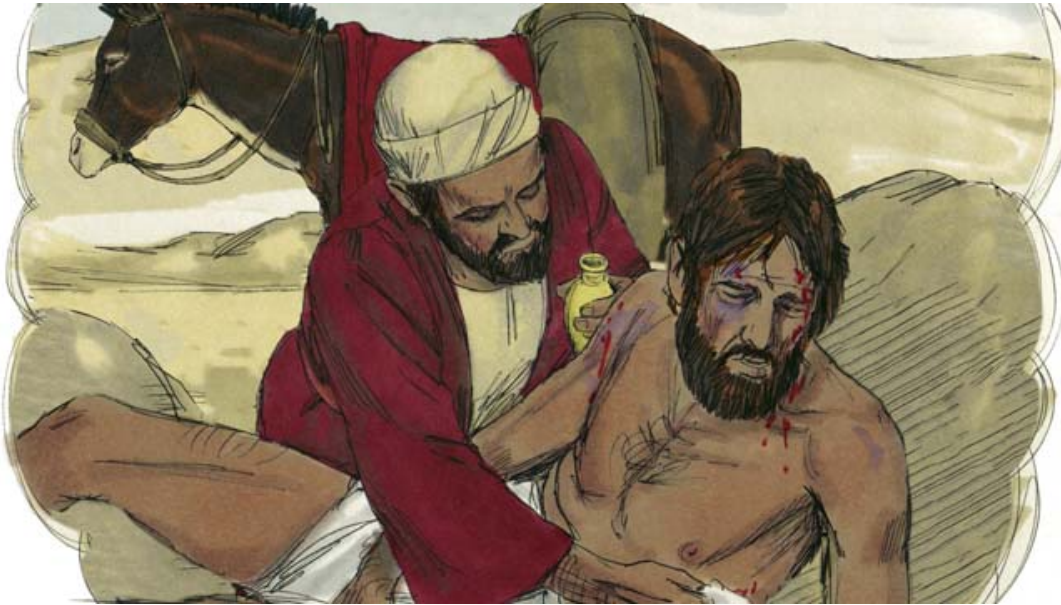
He raised dead people to life

See [37:10](#).

to feed over 5,000 people

See [30:08](#).

49:03



Jesus was also **a great teacher**. Everything he taught, he taught correctly. People should do what he told them to do because he is the Son of God. For example, he taught that you need to love other people **the same way** you love yourself.

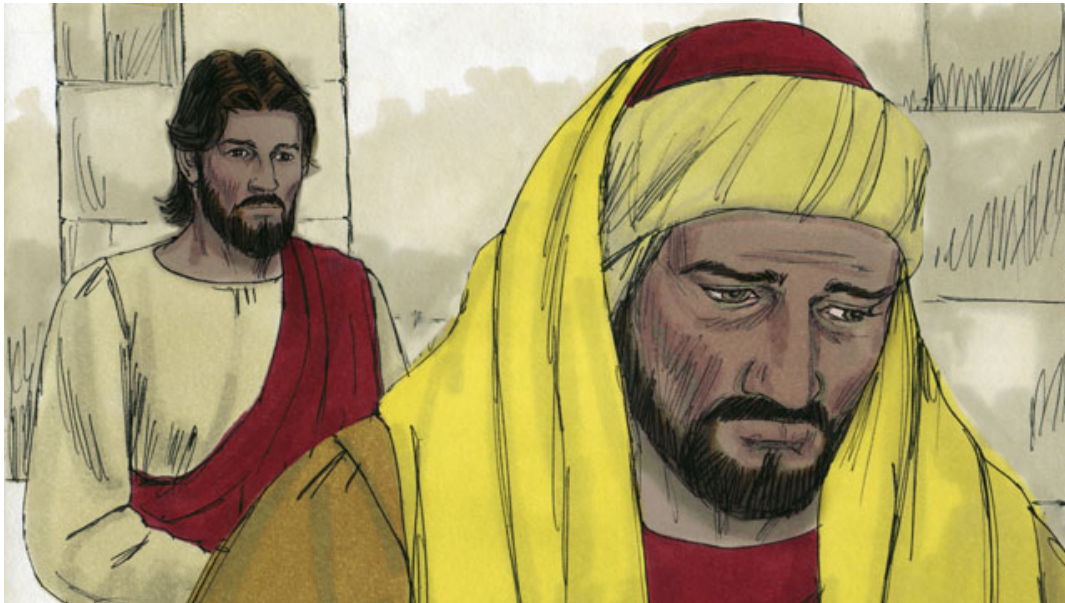
a great teacher

This could mean 'a very important teacher' or 'an excellent teacher.'

the same way

This could mean 'as much as' or 'the same amount that' or 'to the same degree that.'

49:04



He also taught that you need to **love God more than you love anything else**, including your possessions.

love God more than you love anything else

See [28:04](#).

49:05



Jesus said that it is **better to be in God's kingdom** than to have anything else in the world. God must save you from your sins in order for you to enter his kingdom.

better to be in God's kingdom

See [34:04](#).

49:06



Jesus said that some people will accept him. God will save these people. However, other people will not accept him. He also said that some people are like **good soil**. Because they accept the good news about Jesus, God saves them. However, other people are like the **hard soil on a path**. God's Word is like seed that falls on the path, but nothing grows there. These people reject the message about Jesus. They refuse to enter into his kingdom.

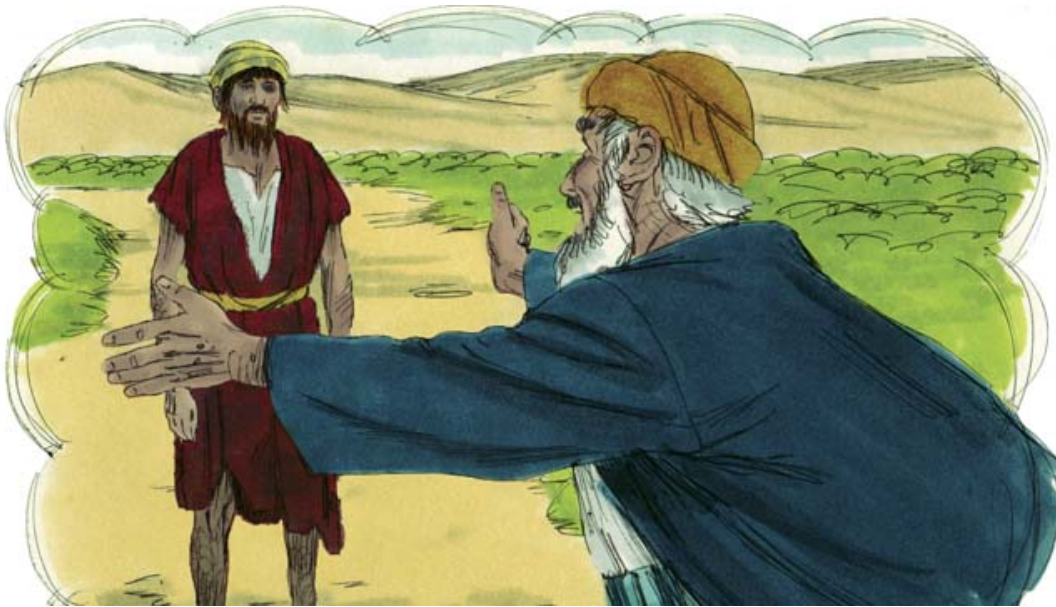
good soil

See [33:09](#).

hard soil on a path

See [33:06](#).

49:07



Jesus taught that God loves sinners very much. He wants to forgive them and to make them his children.
(No study notes for this frame)

49:08

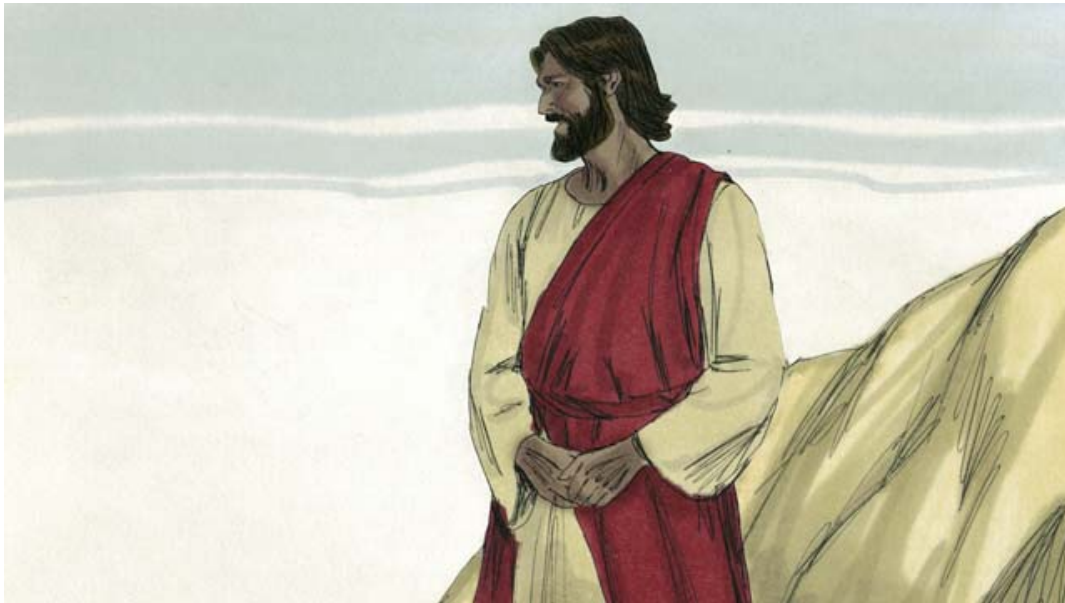


Jesus also told us that God hates sin. Because **Adam and Eve sinned**, all of their descendants also sin. Every person in the world sins and is far from God. Everyone is an enemy of God.

Adam and Eve sinned

See [02:05](#).

49:09



But God loved everyone in the world in this way: he **gave his only Son** so that God will not punish those who believe in Jesus. Instead, believers will live with him forever.

gave his only Son

That is, he offered his only Son to the world as a sacrifice for sins.

49:10



You deserve to die because you have sinned. It would be right for God to punish you, but **Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place**. God punished Jesus by **killing him on a cross**.

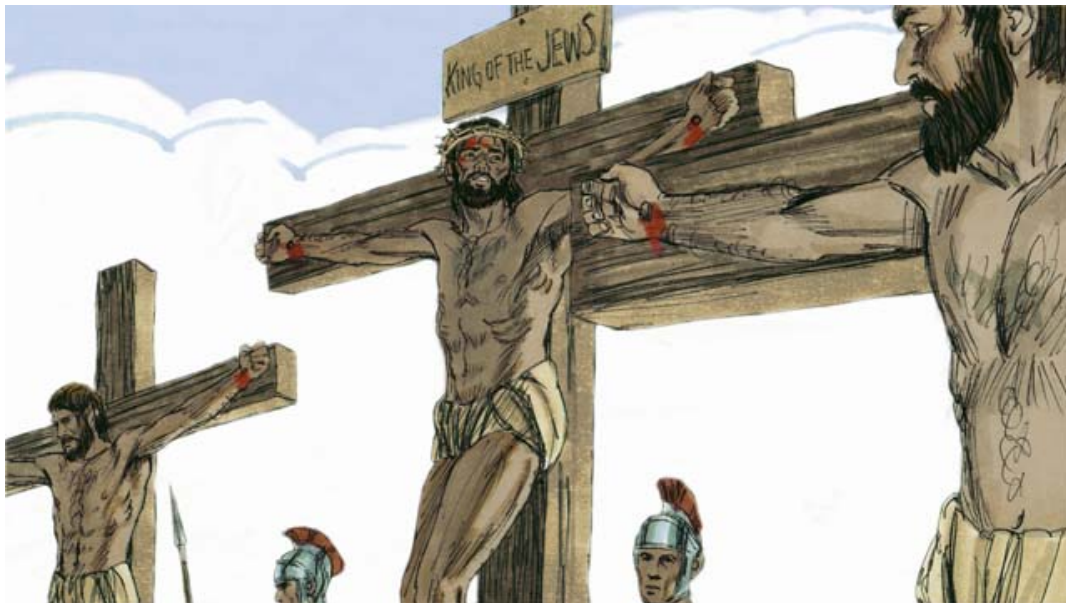
Jesus took the punishment for sin in our place

Jesus willingly took the place of sinners and received the punishment that they deserved.

killing him on a cross

See [42:02](#).

49:11



Jesus never sinned. He accepted the punishment for sin, including the worst possible death. In this way, he was the perfect sacrifice to **take away** your sins and the sins of every person in the world. Jesus sacrificed himself to God, so God will forgive any sin, even terrible sins, of the people who believe in Jesus.

take away

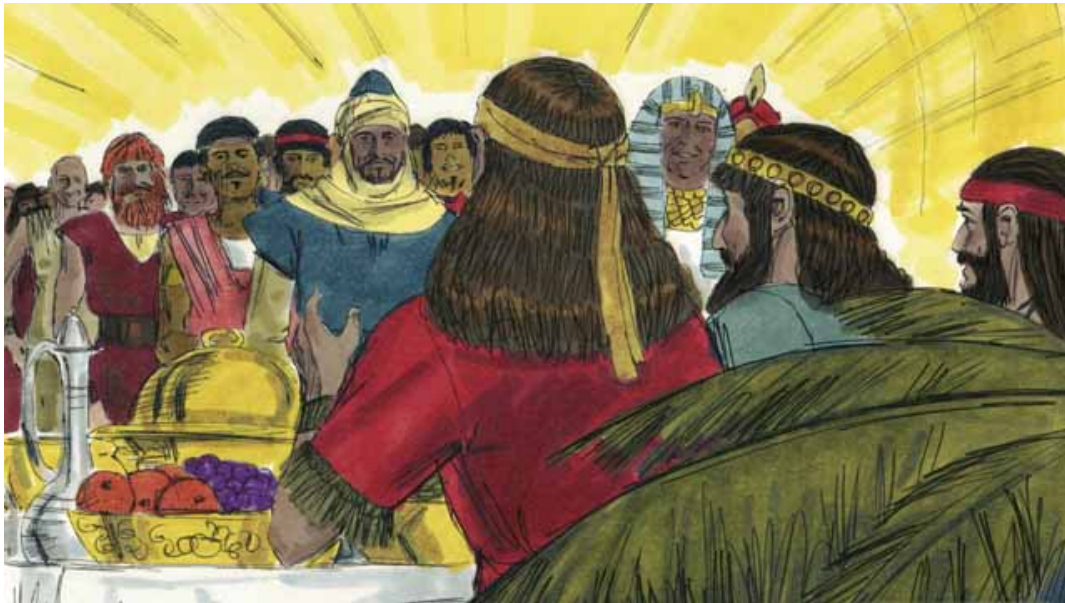
The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

49:12



Even if you do many very good things, this will not make God save you. There is nothing you can do on your own to become friends with him. Instead, you should believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again. If you believe this, God will forgive you for having sinned.
(No study notes for this frame)

49:13



God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and accepts him as their Master. But he will not save those who do not believe in him. It does not matter if you are rich or poor, man or woman, old or young, or where you live. God loves you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can be a friend to you.
(No study notes for this frame)

49:14



Jesus is calling you **to believe in him** and **to be baptized**. Do you believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the only Son of God? Do you believe that you are a sinner and that you deserve God's punishment for your sin? Do you believe that Jesus died on the cross to take away your sins?

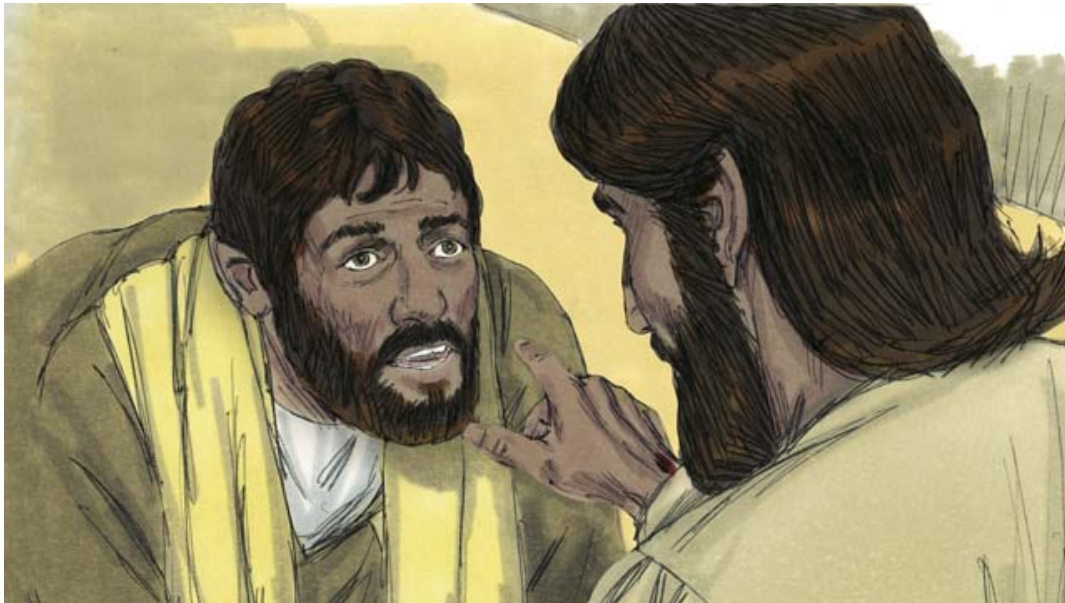
to believe in him

That means to believe that he is God and to trust in him to save you.

to be baptized

Jesus wants people to be baptized in order to show others that they have believed in him.

49:15



If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus! Satan no longer rules you in his **kingdom of darkness**. God is now ruling over you in his **kingdom of light**. **God has enabled you to no longer sin as you used to do.** He has given you a new, right way of living.

kingdom of darkness

Darkness is used here to refer to sin and everything that is evil.

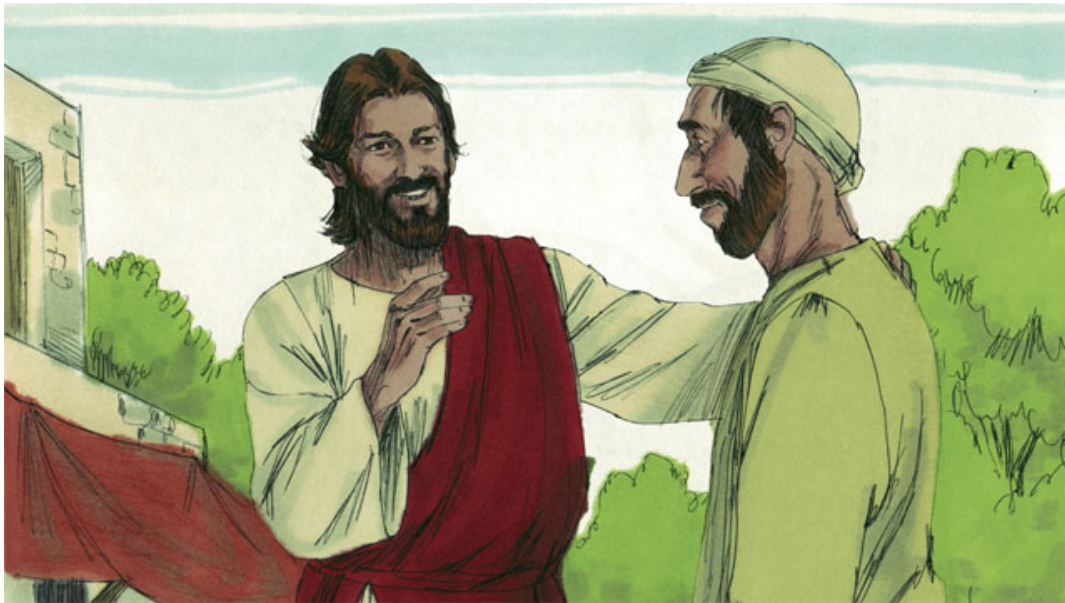
kingdom of light

Light here refers to God's holiness and goodness. The Bible often compares evil to darkness, and goodness to light.

God has enabled you to no longer sin as you used to do.

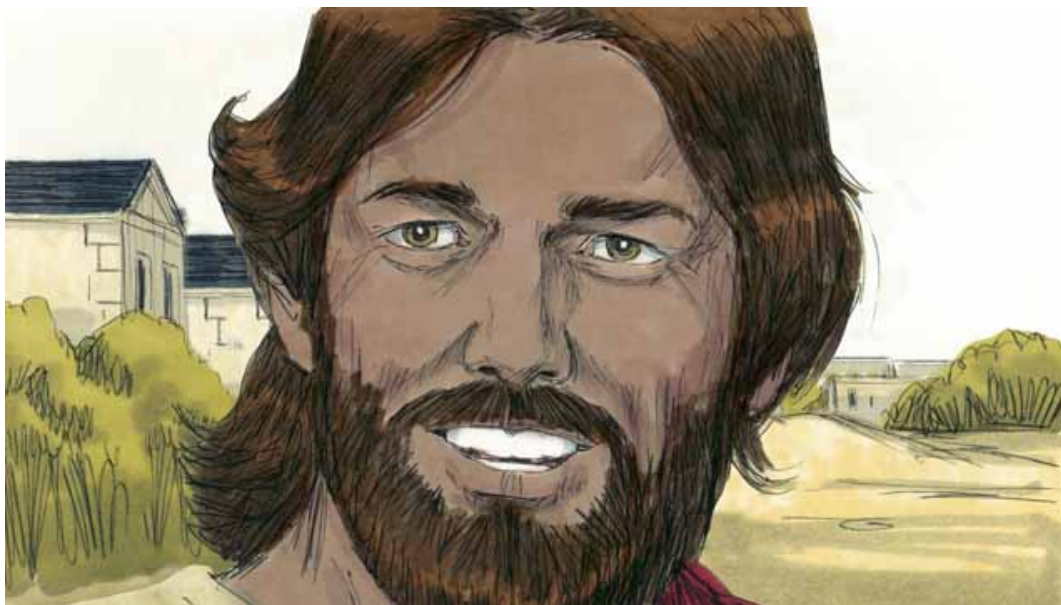
Followers of Jesus still sin sometimes. But because the Holy Spirit lives in them, they can now resist sinning. Therefore, they do not sin easily or often, like they did before God saved them.

49:16



If you are a follower of Jesus, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did. Now, God considers you to be a close friend instead of an enemy.
(No study notes for this frame)

49:17



If you are a friend of God and a servant of Jesus the Master, you will want to obey what Jesus teaches you. Even though you are a follower of Jesus, Satan will still tempt you to sin. But God always does what he says he will do. He says that if you **confess your sins**, he will forgive you. **He will give you strength to fight against sin.**

confess your sins

This could mean 'admit to God what you have done wrong.'

He will give you strength to fight against sin

God will give you spiritual strength to refuse to sin.

49:18



God tells you to pray and to study his word. He also tells you to worship him together with other followers of Jesus. You must also tell other people what he has done for you. If you do all these things, you will become a strong friend of his.

(No study notes for this frame)

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. How did Mary become pregnant with Jesus?

She was a virgin, but the Holy Spirit came to her and made her become pregnant (See: [49:01](#)).

2. What did Jesus say was better than anything else in the world?

He said to be in the kingdom of God was better than anything else in the world (See: [49:05](#)).

3. Who did Jesus say were like good soil?

People who receive the good news about Jesus are like good soil, and God will save them (See: [49:06](#)).

4. What does God want to do for sinners because he loves them very much?

He wants to forgive them and to make them his children (See: [49:07](#)).

5. How did God show that he loves everyone in the world?

He gave his only Son to receive the punishment due to sinners so that those who believe in him will escape the punishment and live with him forever (See: [49:09](#)).

6. How is Jesus the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins?

Jesus never sinned, but he took the place of all sinners, receiving the punishment for sin (See: [49:11](#)).

7. What do you need to do in order to become a follower of Jesus?

If you believe in Jesus and confess what he has done for you, you are a follower of Jesus (See: [49:15](#)).

8. Does Satan tempt followers of Jesus to sin?

Yes, Satan will still tempt followers of Jesus to sin. But if you confess your sins, God will forgive you (See: [49:17](#)).

9. How can you become a strong friend of Jesus?

You will be a strong friend of Jesus if you pray and study his word, worship together with other followers of Jesus, and tell other people what Jesus has done for you (See: [49:18](#)).

What the Story Means to Us

1. Why is it important to us that Jesus is human as well as God?

Because Jesus is human as well as divine he can understand our struggles and weaknesses and will help us to serve God.

2. Why can we be confident that Jesus is God?

He did many powerful miracles for many people that proved he was God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed sick people, drove out demons, and even raised dead people to life. If he were only a man, he would not have been able to do these things.

3. How can you know that you will be in God's kingdom?

If you believe in Jesus and ask him to forgive your sins, God will save you and invite you into his kingdom.

4. What kind of soil are you—good soil, or hard soil on a path?
Only you can answer that question.
5. Have you become a friend of God and a child of God, or are you still an enemy of God?
Only you can answer that question.
6. Will you pay for your own sins against God, or have you asked Jesus to pay for your sins?
Only you can answer that question.
7. What are you doing to become a strong friend of God?
Only you can answer that question.

Summary

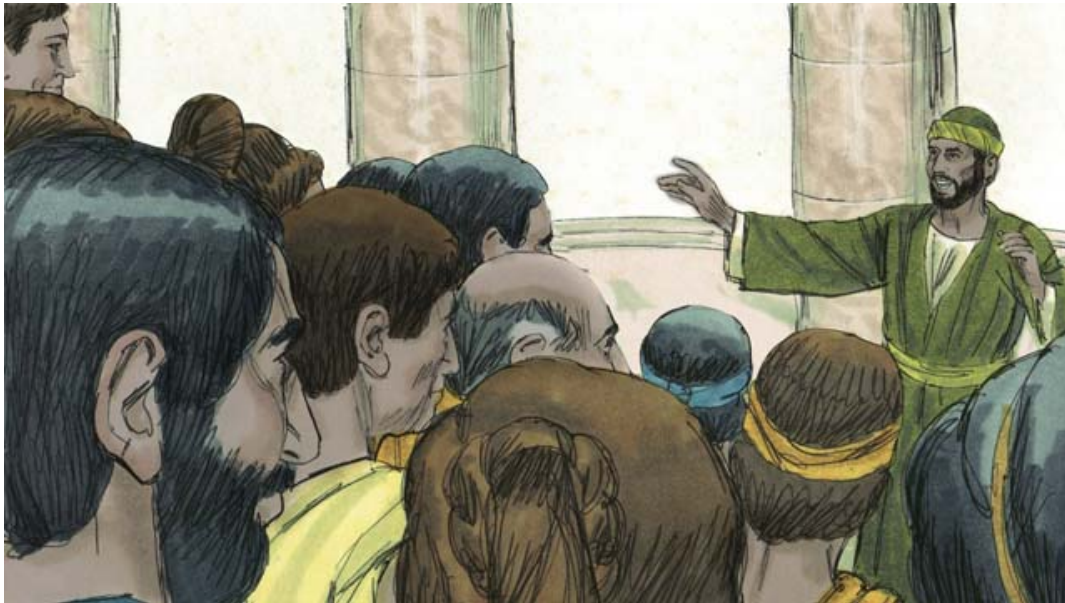
God sent his Son into the world to be human as well as divine. Jesus did many powerful miracles to prove he is the Son of God. Becoming human, he understood our weaknesses and struggles. Being divine, he is able to save us from our sins and make us friends and children of God. He taught us about God and his kingdom, and showed us how to live as his followers. He made it possible for all people to repent of their sins. We can ask God to forgive us because Jesus died for us. God wants every person to hear this message, and to believe in Jesus.

50. Jesus Returns

Study Notes

A Bible story from: Matthew 13:24-42; 22:13; 24:14; 28:18; John 4:35; 15:20; 16:33; 1 Thessalonians 4:13-5:11; James 1:12; Revelation 2:10; 20:10; 21-22

50:01



For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. **The Church has been growing.** Jesus promised he would return **at the end of the world.** Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

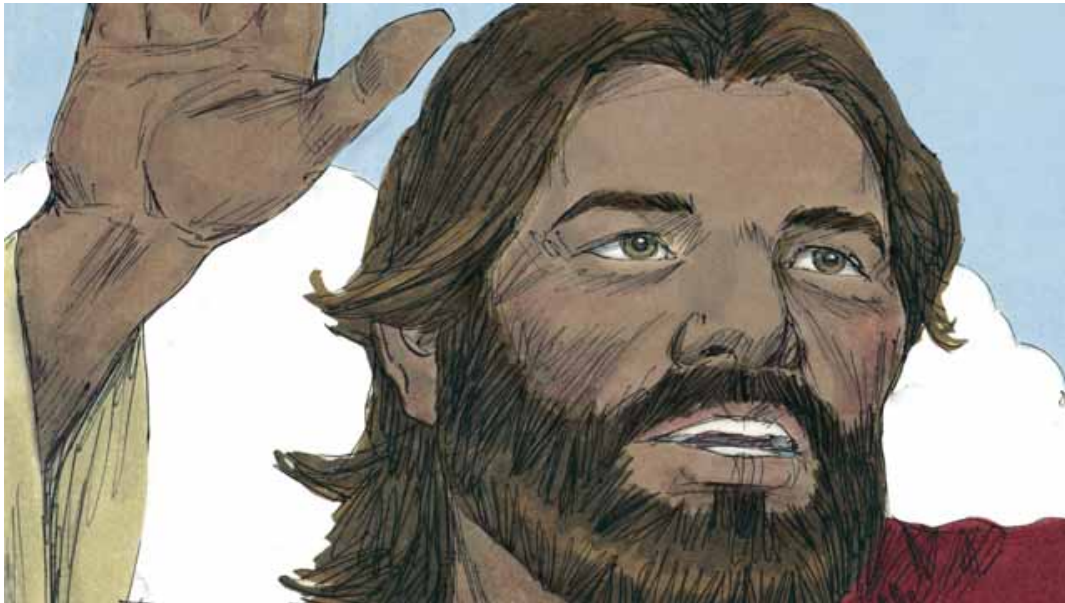
The Church has been growing

That is, the number of people who have believed in Jesus has been increasing.

at the end of the world

This refers to the final days of this world.

50:02



As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is holy and that honors him. He also wants us to tell others about his kingdom. When Jesus was living on earth, he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
(No study notes for this frame)

50:03



Many people groups still have not heard about Jesus. Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told his followers to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it. He said, "Go and **make disciples** in all people groups!" and "**The fields are ripe for harvest!**"

make disciples

This has the meaning 'help people to become my disciples.'

The fields are ripe for harvest

That is, people in many places are ready to be gathered and brought to God like crops that are ripe in fields and ready to be gathered.

The fields

In this expression, **The fields** represents the people in the world.

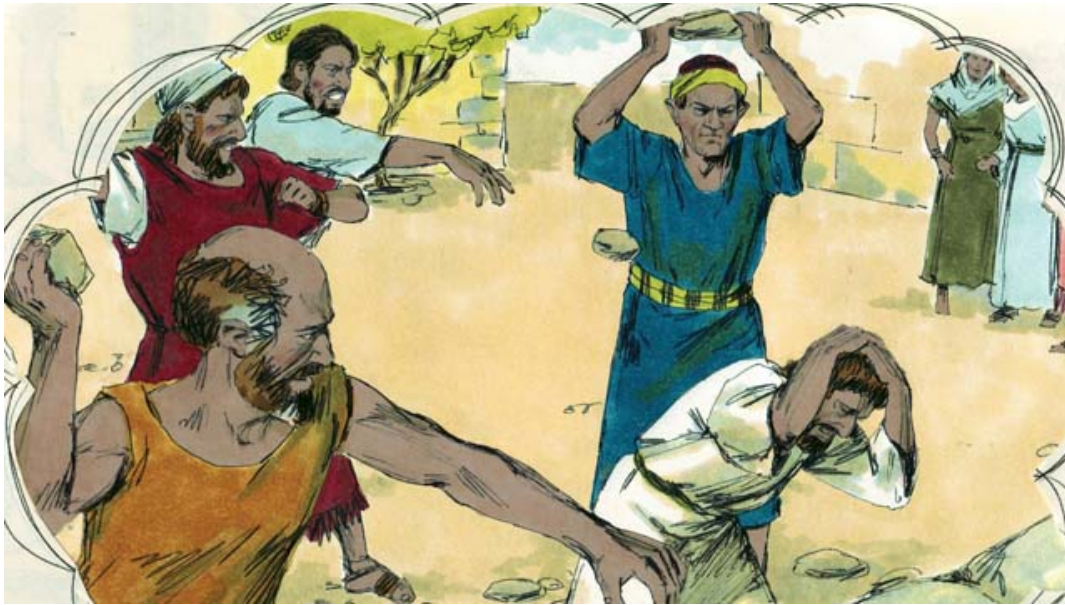
ripe

Ripe here represents being ready to believe in Jesus.

harvest

Harvest here represents the work of bringing people to God by teaching them about Jesus.

50:04



Jesus also said, "A man's servant is not greater than his master. The important people **in this world** have hated me, and they will also torture you and kill you because of me. In this world you will suffer, but be strong, because I have defeated Satan, the one who rules this world. If you **remain faithful to me to the end**, then God **will save you!**"

in this world

This could mean 'in this lifetime.'

remain faithful to me

This could mean 'Keep obeying me.'

to the end

This could mean 'to the end of your life.'

will save you

This refers to spiritual salvation rather than physical deliverance from harm. It has already been stated that many believers will be killed or tortured.

50:05



Jesus told his disciples a story to explain what will happen to people when the world ends. He said, "A man planted **good seed** in his field. While he was sleeping, his enemy came and planted **weed seeds** among the **wheat seeds**, and then he went away."

good seed

This seed was wheat grain.

weed seeds

The weed seeds that were planted would grow up as tall grass but could not be eaten. They were useless.

wheat seeds

Wheat is a kind of grain that grows like a tall grass. It has seeds that people use for food.

50:06



"When the plants sprouted, the servants of the man said, 'Master, you planted good seed in that field. So why are there weeds in it?' The man answered, 'Only my enemies would want to plant them. It is one of my enemies who did this.'"

(No study notes for this frame)

50:07



"The servants responded to their master, 'Should we pull out the weeds?' The master said, 'No. If you do that, **you will pull out some of the wheat as well**. Wait until the harvest. Then gather the weeds into piles so you can burn them. But bring the wheat into my **barn**.'"

you will pull out some of the wheat as well

It would be too difficult to distinguish young wheat from the weeds, and to pull the weeds without uprooting the wheat.

barn

This refers to the building where the harvested wheat grain was saved and stored.

50:08

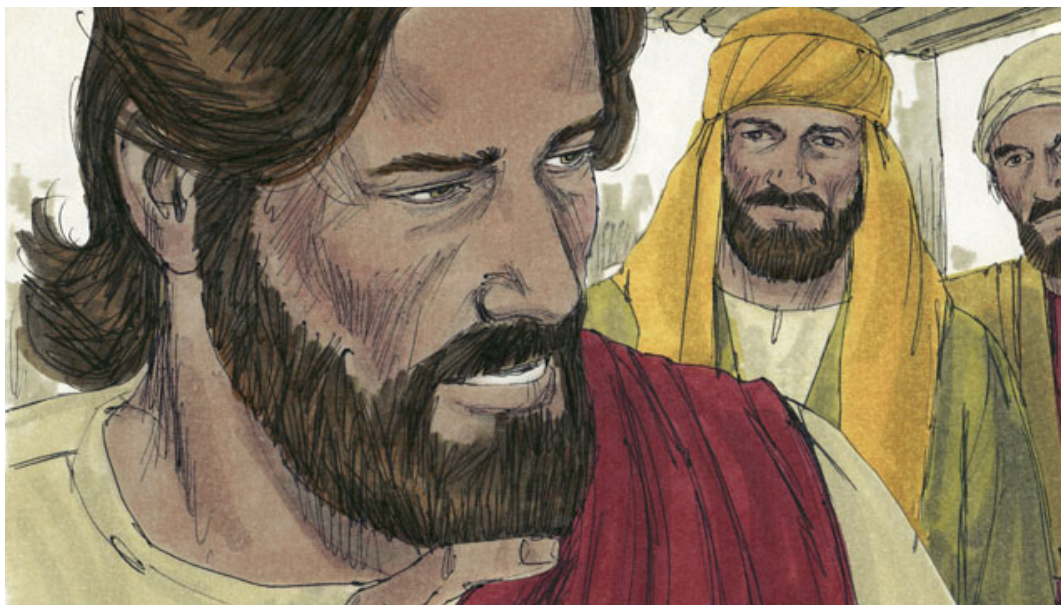


The disciples did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked Jesus to explain it to them. Jesus said, "The man who planted the good seed represents the Messiah. The field represents the world. The good seed represents **the people of God's kingdom.**"

the people of God's kingdom

This refers to the people whom God has chosen to live in his kingdom.

50:09



“The weeds represent the people **who belong to the devil, the evil one**. The man’s enemy, the one who planted the weeds, represents the devil. The harvest represents the end of the world, and **the harvesters** represent God’s angels.”

who belong to the devil

This refers to the people who are ruled by the devil.

the devil

The devil is also called “Satan.”

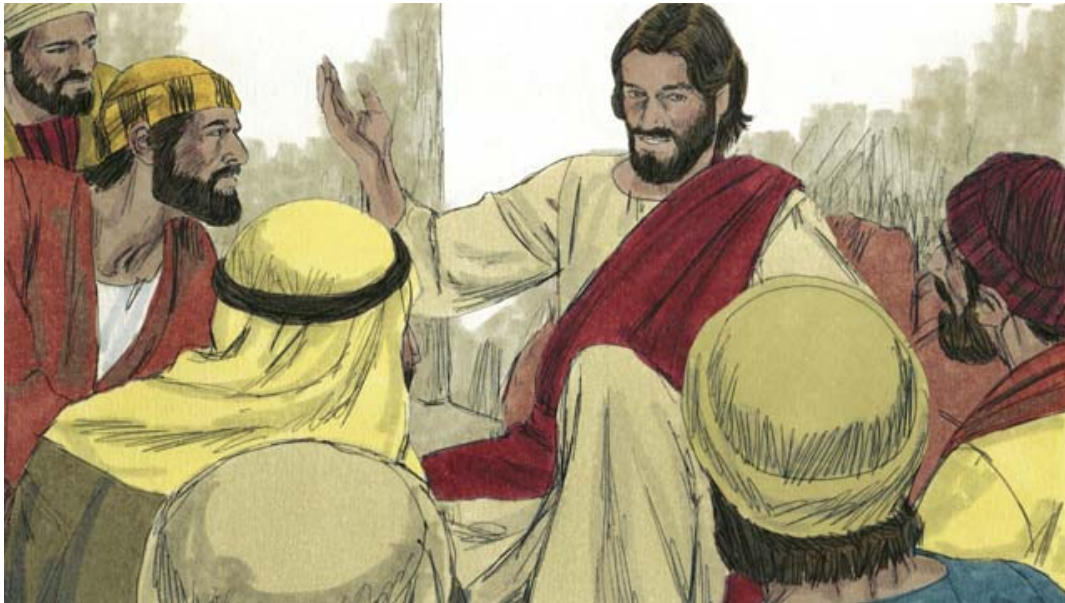
the evil one

This is another title for Satan. It describes his character.

the harvesters

This refers to the men who harvest the ripe grain.

50:10



“When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people **who belong to the devil**. The angels will throw them into a very hot fire. There those people will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering. But **the people who are righteous**, who have followed Jesus, will **shine like the sun** in the kingdom of God their Father.”

who belong to the devil

This refers to those who do not believe in Jesus, but follow the evil ways of the devil.

the people who are righteous

This refers to the people who belong to the Messiah (See: [50:08](#)).

shine like the sun

This means everyone in heaven will see that they are good.

50:11



Jesus also said that he would return to earth just before the world ends. He will come back the same way that he left. That is, **he will have a real body**, and he **will come on the clouds in the sky**. When Jesus returns, every follower of Jesus who has died will rise from the dead and **meet him in the sky**.

he will have a real body

Jesus will still have his physical body, but it will be different than the body he had while he was on earth. He will never be able to die again.

will come on the clouds in the sky

The clouds in the sky will surround Jesus as he comes.

meet him in the sky

Those who believe in Jesus will go up to be near Jesus while he is in the sky.

50:12

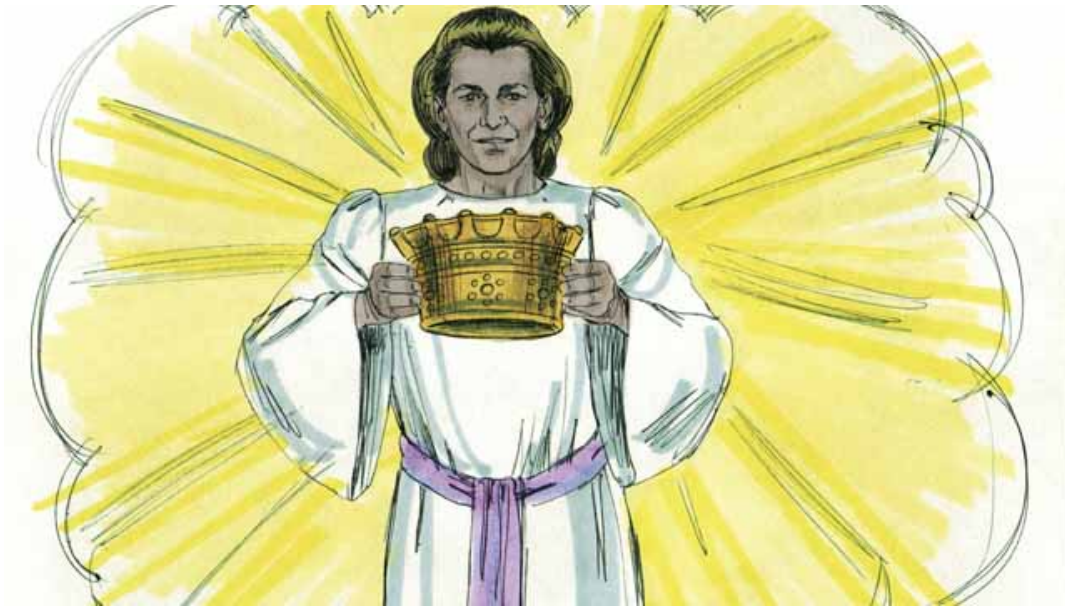


Then the followers of Jesus who are **still alive** will rise up into the sky and join with the other followers of Jesus who rose from the dead. They will all be with Jesus there. After that, Jesus will live with his people. They will have complete peace forever as they live together.

still alive

This refers to followers of Jesus who will still be alive when he returns to earth.

50:13



Jesus promised to give **a crown** to everyone who believes in him. They will rule with God over everything forever. They will have perfect peace.

a crown

This crown represents our reward for believing in Jesus and serving him in this life.

50:14



But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into **hell**. There they will **weep and grind their teeth**, and they will suffer forever. A fire that never goes out will **continually burn them**, and worms will never stop eating them.

hell

Hell is the place where God will punish forever all the people who do not believe in Jesus.

weep and grind their teeth

This is a symbol of their intense suffering (See: [50:10](#)).

continually burn them

The fire will never completely destroy them. They will continue to suffer forever.

50:15



When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and **his kingdom**. He will throw Satan into hell. Satan will burn there forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

his kingdom

This refers to all the evil things Satan does and the evil people he controls.

50:16



Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, **God cursed it** and decided to destroy it. But some day God will create **a new heaven** and **a new earth** that will be perfect.

God cursed it

See [02:11](#).

a new heaven

This refers to a new set of stars and everything else in the sky.

a new earth

This current earth on which we live will be replaced by a new and improved one.

50:17



Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything. He will **wipe away every tear** from people's eyes. No one will suffer or be sad any longer. They will not cry. **They will not be sick or die.** And there will be nothing evil there. Jesus will rule his kingdom justly and with peace. He will be with his people forever.

wipe away every tear

This means that Jesus will cause his people to never be sad again.

They will not be sick or die

The people in the new earth will no longer suffer the effects of the curse that Adam and Eve brought upon the people of this earth.

Study Questions

What the Story Says

1. When did Jesus say the end of the world would happen?

He said his disciples would preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end would come (See: [50:02](#)).

2. Will Jesus' servants be treated well in the world?

No, Jesus said the important people in this world would torture and kill them because of him (See: [50:03](#)).

3. What did an enemy do to the field where a man planted good seed?

His enemy planted weeds in the field to ruin his crop (See: [50:05](#)).

4. When the world ends, what will God's angels do to all the people who belong to the devil and not to God?

His angels will gather the people who belong to the devil together and throw them into a very hot fire where they will suffer terribly (See: [50:10](#)).

5. When the world ends, what will happen to the people who are righteous and have followed God?

They will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father (See: [50:10](#)).

6. When Jesus returns, what will happen to every follower of Jesus who has died?

They will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky (See: [50:11](#)).

7. What will Jesus give to everyone who believes in him?

He will give them a crown, and they will rule with God forever and have perfect peace (See: [50:13](#)).

8. Where will God throw everyone who does not believe in Jesus?

He will throw them into hell, where they will suffer forever and burn continually in a fire that never goes out (See: [50:14](#)).

9. What will happen to Satan when Jesus returns?

Jesus will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom and throw him into hell, where he will burn there forever (See: [50:15](#)).

10. What will happen to this earth when Jesus returns?

God will destroy the present heaven and earth and create a new heaven and earth that will be perfect.

What the Story Means to Us

1. Should we be concerned that Jesus has not come back to earth for almost 2,000 years?

No, we should not be worried. Jesus promised to return at the end of the world, and he will keep his promise.

2. What should followers of Jesus be doing as we wait for him to return?

We should be living in a holy way that honors Jesus, and telling other people about his kingdom.

3. What did Jesus want to say when he said, "The fields are ripe for harvest"?

He wanted to say that at any time, there are many people in the world who are ready to believe in Jesus.

4. Should we let persecution stop us from telling people about Jesus?

No, people killed Jesus, and he said they will also torture and kill his servants. Jesus expects us to be faithful just as he was faithful to God.

5. Why are there so many evil people in the world?

Jesus said Satan places evil people in the world just as an enemy placed weeds in a man's field. These people will grow up together with believers, but God's angels will separate them out at the judgement.

6. Why will Jesus give us a crown?

He will give a crown to everyone who believes in him as a sign that they will rule with him forever. This should encourage us in this life.

7. Will God always allow evil and Satan to be in the world?

No, God will throw Satan and every evil person into hell where they will suffer forever. He will even destroy this earth where sin has been, and create a new heaven and earth that will be perfect. That is where believers will live forever with God.

Summary

It has been almost 2,000 years since Jesus went up to heaven, but he will return just as he said he would. He is waiting for us to bring in the harvest by telling everyone about him. Some will believe in Jesus, but many will not believe in him and will even persecute us, his servants. But when the time is right, Jesus will return to judge those who did not believe in him, and will throw them into hell forever. However, he will create a new heaven and earth where he will rule forever together with everyone who believes in him. We will be with him in perfect peace forever.

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Notes Contributors

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Study Questions Contributors

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Open Bible Stories Contributors

unfoldingWord
Door43 World Missions Community